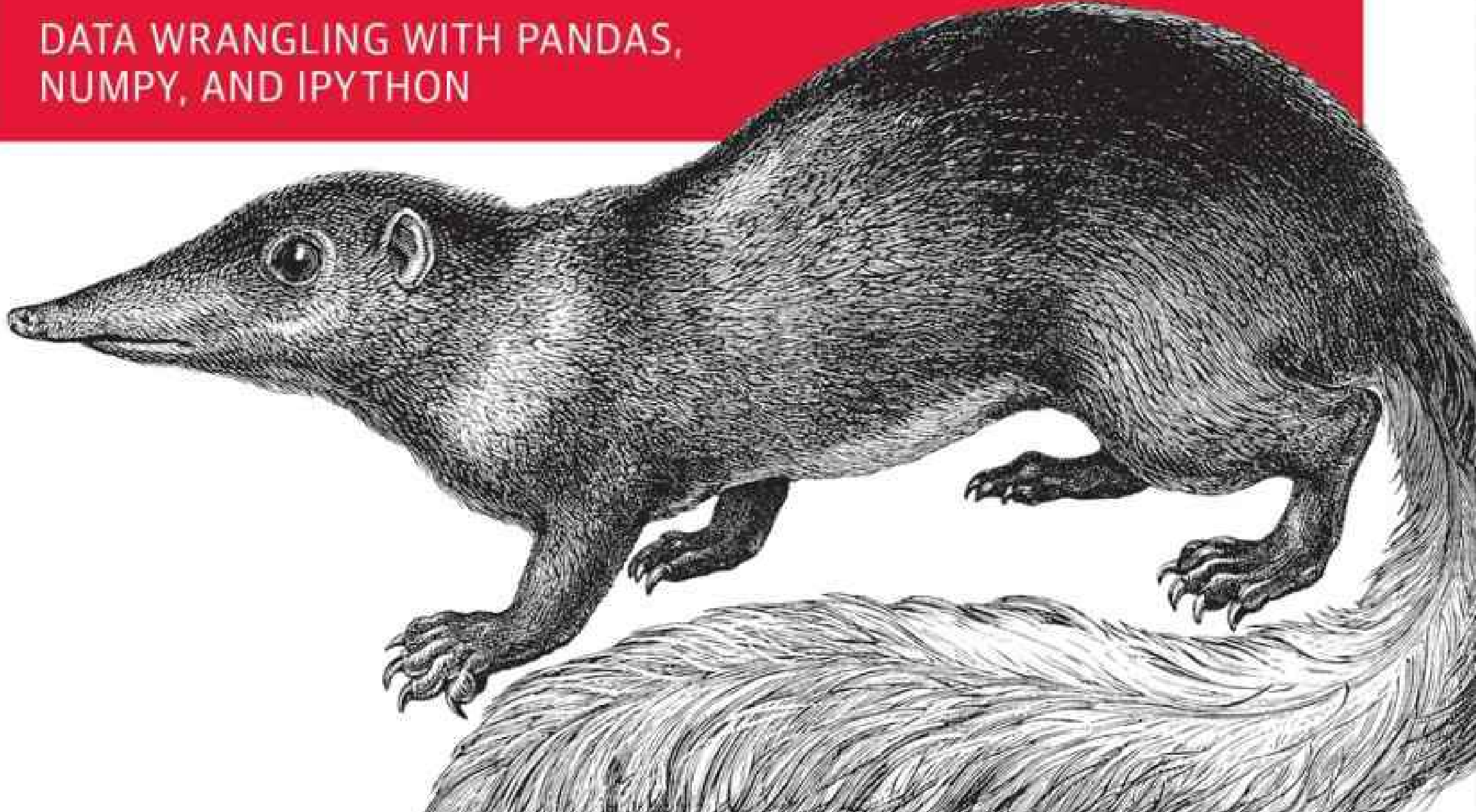
O'REILLY

2nd Edition

Python for Data Analysis

DATA WRANGLING WITH PANDAS, NUMPY, AND IPYTHON



powered by jupyter

Wes McKinney

Python for Data Analysis

SECOND EDITION

Data Wrangling with Pandas, NumPy, and IPython

Wes McKinney

Python for Data Analysis

by Wes McKinney

Printed in the United States of America.

Published by O'Reilly Media, Inc., 1005 Gravenstein Highway North, Sebastopol, CA 95472.

O'Reilly books may be purchased for educational, business, or sales promotional use. Online editions are also available for most titles (http://oreilly.com/safari). For more information, contact our corporate/institutional sales department: 800-998-9938 or *corporate@oreilly.com*.

- Editor: Marie Beaugureau
- Production Editor: Kristen Brown
- Copyeditor: Jasmine Kwityn
- Proofreader: Rachel Monaghan
- Indexer: Lucie Haskins
- Interior Designer: David Futato
- Cover Designer: Karen Montgomery
- Illustrator: Rebecca Demarest
- October 2012: First Edition
- October 2017: Second Edition

Revision History for the Second Edition

- 2017-09-25: First Release

See http://oreilly.com/catalog/errata.csp?isbn=9781491957660 for release details.

978-1-491-95766-0

[LSI]

Preface

Section 1. New for the Second Edition

The first edition of this book was published in 2012, during a time when open source data analysis libraries for Python (such as pandas) were very new and developing rapidly. In this updated and expanded second edition, I have overhauled the chapters to account both for incompatible changes and deprecations as well as new features that have occurred in the last five years. I've also added fresh content to introduce tools that either did not exist in 2012 or had not matured enough to make the first cut. Finally, I have tried to avoid writing about new or cutting-edge open source projects that may not have had a chance to mature. I would like readers of this edition to find that the content is still almost as relevant in 2020 or 2021 as it is in 2017.

The major updates in this second edition include:

- All code, including the Python tutorial, updated for Python 3.6 (the first edition used Python 2.7)
- Updated Python installation instructions for the Anaconda Python Distribution and other needed Python packages
- Updates for the latest versions of the pandas library in 2017
- A new chapter on some more advanced pandas tools, and some other usage tips
- A brief introduction to using statsmodels and scikit-learn

I also reorganized a significant portion of the content from the first edition to make the book more accessible to newcomers.

Section 2. Conventions Used in This Book

The following typographical conventions are used in this book:

Italic

Indicates new terms, URLs, email addresses, filenames, and file extensions.

`Constant width`

Used for program listings, as well as within paragraphs to refer to program elements such as variable or function names, databases, data types, environment variables, statements, and keywords.

`Constant width bold`

Shows commands or other text that should be typed literally by the user.

`Constant width italic`

Shows text that should be replaced with user-supplied values or by values determined by context.

TIP

This element signifies a tip or suggestion.

NOTE

This element signifies a general note.

CAUTION

This element indicates a warning or caution.

Section 3. Using Code Examples

You can find data files and related material for each chapter is available in this book's GitHub repository at *http://github.com/wesm/pydata-book*.

This book is here to help you get your job done. In general, if example code is offered with this book, you may use it in your programs and documentation. You do not need to contact us for permission unless you're reproducing a significant portion of the code. For example, writing a program that uses several chunks of code from this book does not require permission. Selling or distributing a CD-ROM of examples from O'Reilly books does require permission. Answering a question by citing this book and quoting example code does not require permission. Incorporating a significant amount of example code from this book into your product's documentation does require permission.

We appreciate, but do not require, attribution. An attribution usually includes the title, author, publisher, and ISBN. For example: "*Python for Data Analysis* by Wes McKinney (O'Reilly). Copyright 2017 Wes McKinney, 978-1-491-95766-0."

If you feel your use of code examples falls outside fair use or the permission given above, feel free to contact us at *permissions@oreilly.com*.

Section 4. O’Reilly Safari

NOTE

Safari (formerly Safari Books Online) is a membership-based training and reference platform for enterprise, government, educators, and individuals.

Members have access to thousands of books, training videos, Learning Paths, interactive tutorials, and curated playlists from over 250 publishers, including O’Reilly Media, Harvard Business Review, Prentice Hall Professional, Addison-Wesley Professional, Microsoft Press, Sams, Que, Peachpit Press, Adobe, Focal Press, Cisco Press, John Wiley & Sons, Syngress, Morgan Kaufmann, IBM Redbooks, Packt, Adobe Press, FT Press, Apress, Manning, New Riders, McGraw-Hill, Jones & Bartlett, and Course Technology, among others.

For more information, please visit *http://oreilly.com/safari*.

Section 5. How to Contact Us

Please address comments and questions concerning this book to the publisher:

- O’Reilly Media, Inc.
- 1005 Gravenstein Highway North
- Sebastopol, CA 95472
- 800-998-9938 (in the United States or Canada)
- 707-829-0515 (international or local)
- 707-829-0104 (fax)

We have a web page for this book, where we list errata, examples, and any additional information. You can access this page at *http://bit.ly/python_data_analysis_2e*.

To comment or ask technical questions about this book, send email to *bookquestions@oreilly.com*.

For more information about our books, courses, conferences, and news, see our website at *http://www.oreilly.com*.

Find us on Facebook: *http://facebook.com/oreilly*

Follow us on Twitter: *http://twitter.com/oreillymedia*

Watch us on YouTube: *http://www.youtube.com/oreillymedia*

Section 6. Acknowledgments

This work is the product of many years of fruitful discussions, collaborations, and assistance with and from many people around the world. I'd like to thank a few of them.

In Memoriam: John D. Hunter (1968–2012)

Our dear friend and colleague John D. Hunter passed away after a battle with colon cancer on August 28, 2012. This was only a short time after I'd completed the final manuscript for this book's first edition.

John's impact and legacy in the Python scientific and data communities would be hard to overstate. In addition to developing matplotlib in the early 2000s (a time when Python was not nearly so popular), he helped shape the culture of a critical generation of open source developers who've become pillars of the Python ecosystem that we now often take for granted.

I was lucky enough to connect with John early in my open source career in January 2010, just after releasing pandas 0.1. His inspiration and mentorship helped me push forward, even in the darkest of times, with my vision for pandas and Python as a first-class data analysis language.

John was very close with Fernando Pérez and Brian Granger, pioneers of IPython, Jupyter, and many other initiatives in the Python community. We had hoped to work on a book together, the four of us, but I ended up being the one with the most free time. I am sure he would be proud of what we've accomplished, as individuals and as a community, over the last five years.

Acknowledgments for the Second Edition (2017)

It has been five years almost to the day since I completed the manuscript for this book's first edition in July 2012. A lot has changed. The Python community has grown immensely, and the ecosystem of open source software around it has flourished.

This new edition of the book would not exist if not for the tireless efforts of the pandas core developers, who have grown the project and its user community into one of the cornerstones of the Python data science ecosystem. These include, but are not limited to, Tom Augspurger, Joris van den Bossche, Chris Bartak, Phillip Cloud, gfyoung, Andy Hayden, Masaaki Horikoshi, Stephan Hoyer, Adam Klein, Wouter Overmeire, Jeff Reback, Chang She, Skipper Seabold, Jeff Tratner, and y-p.

On the actual writing of this second edition, I would like to thank the O'Reilly staff who helped me patiently with the writing process. This includes Marie Beaugureau, Ben Lorica, and Colleen Toporek. I again had outstanding technical reviewers with Tom Augpurger, Paul Barry, Hugh Brown, Jonathan Coe, and Andreas Müller contributing. Thank you.

This book's first edition has been translated into many foreign languages, including Chinese, French, German, Japanese, Korean, and Russian. Translating all this content and making it available to a broader audience is a huge and often thankless effort. Thank you for helping more people in the world learn how to program and use data analysis tools.

I am also lucky to have had support for my continued open source development efforts from Cloudera and Two Sigma Investments over the last few years. With open source software projects more thinly resourced than ever relative to the size of user bases, it is becoming increasingly important for businesses to provide support for development of key open source projects. It's the right thing to do.

Acknowledgments for the First Edition (2012)

It would have been difficult for me to write this book without the support of a large number of people.

On the O'Reilly staff, I'm very grateful for my editors, Meghan Blanchette and Julie Steele, who guided me through the process. Mike Loukides also worked with me in the proposal stages and helped make the book a reality.

I received a wealth of technical review from a large cast of characters. In particular, Martin Blais and Hugh Brown were incredibly helpful in improving the book's examples, clarity, and organization from cover to cover. James Long, Drew Conway, Fernando Pérez, Brian Granger, Thomas Kluyver, Adam Klein, Josh Klein, Chang She, and Stéfan van der Walt each reviewed one or more chapters, providing pointed feedback from many different perspectives.

I got many great ideas for examples and datasets from friends and colleagues in the data community, among them: Mike Dewar, Jeff Hammerbacher, James Johndrow, Kristian Lum, Adam Klein, Hilary Mason, Chang She, and Ashley Williams.

I am of course indebted to the many leaders in the open source scientific Python community who've built the foundation for my development work and gave encouragement while I was writing this book: the IPython core team (Fernando Pérez, Brian Granger, Min Ragan-Kelly, Thomas Kluyver, and others), John Hunter, Skipper Seabold, Travis Oliphant, Peter Wang, Eric Jones, Robert Kern, Josef Perktold, Francesc Alted, Chris Fonnesbeck, and too many others to mention. Several other people provided a great deal of support, ideas, and encouragement along the way: Drew Conway, Sean Taylor, Giuseppe Paleologo, Jared Lander, David Epstein, John Krowas, Joshua Bloom, Den Pilsworth, John Myles-White, and many others I've forgotten.

I'd also like to thank a number of people from my formative years. First, my former AQR colleagues who've cheered me on in my pandas work over the years: Alex Reyfman, Michael Wong, Tim Sargen, Oktay Kurbanov, Matthew Tschantz, Roni Israelov, Michael Katz, Chris Uga, Prasad Ramanan, Ted Square, and Hoon Kim. Lastly, my academic advisors Haynes Miller (MIT) and Mike West (Duke).

I received significant help from Phillip Cloud and Joris Van den Bossche in 2014 to update the book’s code examples and fix some other inaccuracies due to changes in pandas.

On the personal side, Casey provided invaluable day-to-day support during the writing process, tolerating my highs and lows as I hacked together the final draft on top of an already overcommitted schedule. Lastly, my parents, Bill and Kim, taught me to always follow my dreams and to never settle for less.

Chapter 1. Preliminaries

1.1 What Is This Book About?

This book is concerned with the nuts and bolts of manipulating, processing, cleaning, and crunching data in Python. My goal is to offer a guide to the parts of the Python programming language and its data-oriented library ecosystem and tools that will equip you to become an effective data analyst. While “data analysis” is in the title of the book, the focus is specifically on Python programming, libraries, and tools as opposed to data analysis methodology. This is the Python programming you need *for* data analysis.

What Kinds of Data?

When I say “data,” what am I referring to exactly? The primary focus is on *structured data*, a deliberately vague term that encompasses many different common forms of data, such as:

- Tabular or spreadsheet-like data in which each column may be a different type (string, numeric, date, or otherwise). This includes most kinds of data commonly stored in relational databases or tab- or comma-delimited text files.

- Multidimensional arrays (matrices).

- Multiple tables of data interrelated by key columns (what would be primary or foreign keys for a SQL user).

- Evenly or unevenly spaced time series.

This is by no means a complete list. Even though it may not always be obvious, a large percentage of datasets can be transformed into a structured form that is more suitable for analysis and modeling. If not, it may be possible to extract features from a dataset into a structured form. As an example, a collection of news articles could be processed into a word frequency table, which could then be used to perform sentiment analysis.

Most users of spreadsheet programs like Microsoft Excel, perhaps the most widely used data analysis tool in the world, will not be strangers to these kinds of data.

1.2 Why Python for Data Analysis?

For many people, the Python programming language has strong appeal. Since its first appearance in 1991, Python has become one of the most popular interpreted programming languages, along with Perl, Ruby, and others. Python and Ruby have become especially popular since 2005 or so for building websites using their numerous web frameworks, like Rails (Ruby) and Django (Python). Such languages are often called *scripting* languages, as they can be used to quickly write small programs, or *scripts* to automate other tasks. I don't like the term "scripting language," as it carries a connotation that they cannot be used for building serious software. Among interpreted languages, for various historical and cultural reasons, Python has developed a large and active scientific computing and data analysis community. In the last 10 years, Python has gone from a bleeding-edge or "at your own risk" scientific computing language to one of the most important languages for data science, machine learning, and general software development in academia and industry.

For data analysis and interactive computing and data visualization, Python will inevitably draw comparisons with other open source and commercial programming languages and tools in wide use, such as R, MATLAB, SAS, Stata, and others. In recent years, Python's improved support for libraries (such as pandas and scikit-learn) has made it a popular choice for data analysis tasks. Combined with Python's overall strength for general-purpose software engineering, it is an excellent option as a primary language for building data applications.

Python as Glue

Part of Python’s success in scientific computing is the ease of integrating C, C++, and FORTRAN code. Most modern computing environments share a similar set of legacy FORTRAN and C libraries for doing linear algebra, optimization, integration, fast Fourier transforms, and other such algorithms. The same story has held true for many companies and national labs that have used Python to glue together decades’ worth of legacy software.

Many programs consist of small portions of code where most of the time is spent, with large amounts of “glue code” that doesn’t run often. In many cases, the execution time of the glue code is insignificant; effort is most fruitfully invested in optimizing the computational bottlenecks, sometimes by moving the code to a lower-level language like C.

Solving the “Two-Language” Problem

In many organizations, it is common to research, prototype, and test new ideas using a more specialized computing language like SAS or R and then later port those ideas to be part of a larger production system written in, say, Java, C#, or C++. What people are increasingly finding is that Python is a suitable language not only for doing research and prototyping but also for building the production systems. Why maintain two development environments when one will suffice? I believe that more and more companies will go down this path, as there are often significant organizational benefits to having both researchers and software engineers using the same set of programming tools.

Why Not Python?

While Python is an excellent environment for building many kinds of analytical applications and general-purpose systems, there are a number of uses for which Python may be less suitable.

As Python is an interpreted programming language, in general most Python code will run substantially slower than code written in a compiled language like Java or C++. As *programmer time* is often more valuable than *CPU time*, many are happy to make this trade-off. However, in an application with very low latency or demanding resource utilization requirements (e.g., a high-frequency trading system), the time spent programming in a lower-level (but also lower-productivity) language like C++ to achieve the maximum possible performance might be time well spent.

Python can be a challenging language for building highly concurrent, multithreaded applications, particularly applications with many CPU-bound threads. The reason for this is that it has what is known as the *global interpreter lock* (GIL), a mechanism that prevents the interpreter from executing more than one Python instruction at a time. The technical reasons for why the GIL exists are beyond the scope of this book. While it is true that in many big data processing applications, a cluster of computers may be required to process a dataset in a reasonable amount of time, there are still situations where a single-process, multithreaded system is desirable.

This is not to say that Python cannot execute truly multithreaded, parallel code. Python C extensions that use native multithreading (in C or C++) can run code in parallel without being impacted by the GIL, so long as they do not need to regularly interact with Python objects.

1.3 Essential Python Libraries

For those who are less familiar with the Python data ecosystem and the libraries used throughout the book, I will give a brief overview of some of them.

NumPy

NumPy, short for Numerical Python, has long been a cornerstone of numerical computing in Python. It provides the data structures, algorithms, and library glue needed for most scientific applications involving numerical data in Python. NumPy contains, among other things:

- A fast and efficient multidimensional array object *ndarray*
- Functions for performing element-wise computations with arrays or mathematical operations between arrays
- Tools for reading and writing array-based datasets to disk
- Linear algebra operations, Fourier transform, and random number generation
- A mature C API to enable Python extensions and native C or C++ code to access NumPy's data structures and computational facilities

Beyond the fast array-processing capabilities that NumPy adds to Python, one of its primary uses in data analysis is as a container for data to be passed between algorithms and libraries. For numerical data, NumPy arrays are more efficient for storing and manipulating data than the other built-in Python data structures. Also, libraries written in a lower-level language, such as C or Fortran, can operate on the data stored in a NumPy array without copying data into some other memory representation. Thus, many numerical computing tools for Python either assume NumPy arrays as a primary data structure or else target seamless interoperability with NumPy.

pandas

pandas provides high-level data structures and functions designed to make working with structured or tabular data fast, easy, and expressive. Since its emergence in 2010, it has helped enable Python to be a powerful and productive data analysis environment. The primary objects in pandas that will be used in this book are the `DataFrame`, a tabular, column-oriented data structure with both row and column labels, and the `Series`, a one-dimensional labeled array object.

pandas blends the high-performance, array-computing ideas of NumPy with the flexible data manipulation capabilities of spreadsheets and relational databases (such as SQL). It provides sophisticated indexing functionality to make it easy to reshape, slice and dice, perform aggregations, and select subsets of data. Since data manipulation, preparation, and cleaning is such an important skill in data analysis, pandas is one of the primary focuses of this book.

As a bit of background, I started building pandas in early 2008 during my tenure at AQR Capital Management, a quantitative investment management firm. At the time, I had a distinct set of requirements that were not well addressed by any single tool at my disposal:

- Data structures with labeled axes supporting automatic or explicit data alignment — this prevents common errors resulting from misaligned data and working with differently indexed data coming from different sources
- Integrated time series functionality
- The same data structures handle both time series data and non–time series data
- Arithmetic operations and reductions that preserve metadata
- Flexible handling of missing data

- Merge and other relational operations found in popular databases (SQL-based, for example)

I wanted to be able to do all of these things in one place, preferably in a language well suited to general-purpose software development. Python was a good candidate language for this, but at that time there was not an integrated set of data structures and tools providing this functionality. As a result of having been built initially to solve finance and business analytics problems, pandas features especially deep time series functionality and tools well suited for working with time-indexed data generated by business processes.

For users of the R language for statistical computing, the DataFrame name will be familiar, as the object was named after the similar R `data.frame` object. Unlike Python, data frames are built into the R programming language and its standard library. As a result, many features found in pandas are typically either part of the R core implementation or provided by add-on packages.

The pandas name itself is derived from *panel data*, an econometrics term for multidimensional structured datasets, and a play on the phrase *Python data analysis* itself.

matplotlib

matplotlib is the most popular Python library for producing plots and other two-dimensional data visualizations. It was originally created by John D. Hunter and is now maintained by a large team of developers. It is designed for creating plots suitable for publication. While there are other visualization libraries available to Python programmers, matplotlib is the most widely used and as such has generally good integration with the rest of the ecosystem. I think it is a safe choice as a default visualization tool.

IPython and Jupyter

The IPython project began in 2001 as Fernando Pérez's side project to make a better interactive Python interpreter. In the subsequent 16 years it has become one of the most important tools in the modern Python data stack. While it does not provide any computational or data analytical tools by itself, IPython is designed from the ground up to maximize your productivity in both interactive computing and software development. It encourages an *execute-explore* workflow instead of the typical *edit-compile-run* workflow of many other programming languages. It also provides easy access to your operating system's shell and filesystem. Since much of data analysis coding involves exploration, trial and error, and iteration, IPython can help you get the job done faster.

In 2014, Fernando and the IPython team announced the Jupyter project, a broader initiative to design language-agnostic interactive computing tools. The IPython web notebook became the Jupyter notebook, with support now for over 40 programming languages. The IPython system can now be used as a *kernel* (a programming language mode) for using Python with Jupyter.

IPython itself has become a component of the much broader Jupyter open source project, which provides a productive environment for interactive and exploratory computing. Its oldest and simplest "mode" is as an enhanced Python shell designed to accelerate the writing, testing, and debugging of Python code. You can also use the IPython system through the Jupyter Notebook, an interactive web-based code "notebook" offering support for dozens of programming languages. The IPython shell and Jupyter notebooks are especially useful for data exploration and visualization.

The Jupyter notebook system also allows you to author content in Markdown and HTML, providing you a means to create rich documents with code and text. Other programming languages have also implemented kernels for Jupyter to enable you to use languages other than Python in Jupyter.

For me personally, IPython is usually involved with the majority of my Python work, including running, debugging, and testing code.

In the accompanying book materials, you will find Jupyter notebooks containing all the code examples from each chapter.

SciPy

SciPy is a collection of packages addressing a number of different standard problem domains in scientific computing. Here is a sampling of the packages included:

`scipy.integrate`
: Numerical integration routines and differential equation solvers

`scipy.linalg`
: Linear algebra routines and matrix decompositions extending beyond those provided in `numpy.linalg`

`scipy.optimize`
: Function optimizers (minimizers) and root finding algorithms

`scipy.signal`
: Signal processing tools

`scipy.sparse`
: Sparse matrices and sparse linear system solvers

`scipy.special`
: Wrapper around SPECFUN, a Fortran library implementing many common mathematical functions, such as the `gamma` function

`scipy.stats`
: Standard continuous and discrete probability distributions (density functions, samplers, continuous distribution functions), various statistical tests, and more descriptive statistics

Together NumPy and SciPy form a reasonably complete and mature computational foundation for many traditional scientific computing applications.

scikit-learn

Since the project's inception in 2010, scikit-learn has become the premier general-purpose machine learning toolkit for Python programmers. In just seven years, it has had over 1,500 contributors from around the world. It includes submodules for such models as:

- Classification: SVM, nearest neighbors, random forest, logistic regression, etc.
- Regression: Lasso, ridge regression, etc.
- Clustering: *k*-means, spectral clustering, etc.
- Dimensionality reduction: PCA, feature selection, matrix factorization, etc.
- Model selection: Grid search, cross-validation, metrics
- Preprocessing: Feature extraction, normalization

Along with pandas, statsmodels, and IPython, scikit-learn has been critical for enabling Python to be a productive data science programming language. While I won't be able to include a comprehensive guide to scikit-learn in this book, I will give a brief introduction to some of its models and how to use them with the other tools presented in the book.

statsmodels

statsmodels is a statistical analysis package that was seeded by work from Stanford University statistics professor Jonathan Taylor, who implemented a number of regression analysis models popular in the R programming language. Skipper Seabold and Josef Perktold formally created the new statsmodels project in 2010 and since then have grown the project to a critical mass of engaged users and contributors. Nathaniel Smith developed the Patsy project, which provides a formula or model specification framework for statsmodels inspired by R's formula system.

Compared with scikit-learn, statsmodels contains algorithms for classical (primarily frequentist) statistics and econometrics. This includes such submodules as:

- Regression models: Linear regression, generalized linear models, robust linear models, linear mixed effects models, etc.
- Analysis of variance (ANOVA)
- Time series analysis: AR, ARMA, ARIMA, VAR, and other models
- Nonparametric methods: Kernel density estimation, kernel regression
- Visualization of statistical model results

statsmodels is more focused on statistical inference, providing uncertainty estimates and *p*-values for parameters. scikit-learn, by contrast, is more prediction-focused.

As with scikit-learn, I will give a brief introduction to statsmodels and how to use it with NumPy and pandas.

1.4 Installation and Setup

Since everyone uses Python for different applications, there is no single solution for setting up Python and required add-on packages. Many readers will not have a complete Python development environment suitable for following along with this book, so here I will give detailed instructions to get set up on each operating system. I recommend using the free Anaconda distribution. At the time of this writing, Anaconda is offered in both Python 2.7 and 3.6 forms, though this might change at some point in the future. This book uses Python 3.6, and I encourage you to use Python 3.6 or higher.

Windows

To get started on Windows, download the Anaconda installer. I recommend following the installation instructions for Windows available on the Anaconda download page, which may have changed between the time this book was published and when you are reading this.

Now, let's verify that things are configured correctly. To open the Command Prompt application (also known as *cmd.exe*), right-click the Start menu and select Command Prompt. Try starting the Python interpreter by typing **`python`**. You should see a message that matches the version of Anaconda you installed:

```
C:\Users\wesm>python
Python 3.5.2 |Anaconda 4.1.1 (64-bit)| (default, Jul  5 2016, 11:41:13)
[MSC v.1900 64 bit (AMD64)] on win32
>>>
```

To exit the shell, press Ctrl-D (on Linux or macOS), Ctrl-Z (on Windows), or type the command **`exit()`** and press Enter.

Apple (OS X, macOS)

Download the OS X Anaconda installer, which should be named something like *Anaconda3-4.1.0-MacOSX-x86_64.pkg*. Double-click the *.pkg* file to run the installer. When the installer runs, it automatically appends the Anaconda executable path to your *.bash_profile* file. This is located at */Users/$USER/.bash_profile*.

To verify everything is working, try launching IPython in the system shell (open the Terminal application to get a command prompt):

```
$ ipython
```

To exit the shell, press Ctrl-D or type **`exit()`** and press Enter.

GNU/Linux

Linux details will vary a bit depending on your Linux flavor, but here I give details for such distributions as Debian, Ubuntu, CentOS, and Fedora. Setup is similar to OS X with the exception of how Anaconda is installed. The installer is a shell script that must be executed in the terminal. Depending on whether you have a 32-bit or 64-bit system, you will either need to install the x86 (32-bit) or x86_64 (64-bit) installer. You will then have a file named something similar to *Anaconda3-4.1.0-Linux-x86_64.sh*. To install it, execute this script with bash:

```
$ bash Anaconda3-4.1.0-Linux-x86_64.sh
```

> **NOTE**
>
> Some Linux distributions have versions of all the required Python packages in their package managers and can be installed using a tool like apt. The setup described here uses Anaconda, as it's both easily reproducible across distributions and simpler to upgrade packages to their latest versions.

After accepting the license, you will be presented with a choice of where to put the Anaconda files. I recommend installing the files in the default location in your home directory — for example, */home/$USER/anaconda* (with your username, naturally).

The Anaconda installer may ask if you wish to prepend its *bin/* directory to your `$PATH` variable. If you have any problems after installation, you can do this yourself by modifying your *.bashrc* (or *.zshrc*, if you are using the zsh shell) with something akin to:

```
export PATH=/home/$USER/anaconda/bin:$PATH
```

After doing this you can either start a new terminal process or execute your *.bashrc* again with `source ~/.bashrc`.

Installing or Updating Python Packages

At some point while reading, you may wish to install additional Python packages that are not included in the Anaconda distribution. In general, these can be installed with the following command:

```
conda install package_name
```

If this does not work, you may also be able to install the package using the pip package management tool:

```
pip install package_name
```

You can update packages by using the `conda update` command:

```
conda update package_name
```

pip also supports upgrades using the `--upgrade` flag:

```
pip install --upgrade package_name
```

You will have several opportunities to try out these commands throughout the book.

> **CAUTION**
>
> While you can use both conda and pip to install packages, you should not attempt to update conda packages with pip, as doing so can lead to environment problems. When using Anaconda or Miniconda, it's best to first try updating with conda.

Python 2 and Python 3

The first version of the Python 3.x line of interpreters was released at the end of 2008. It included a number of changes that made some previously written Python 2.x code incompatible. Because 17 years had passed since the very first release of Python in 1991, creating a "breaking" release of Python 3 was viewed to be for the greater good given the lessons learned during that time.

In 2012, much of the scientific and data analysis community was still using Python 2.x because many packages had not been made fully Python 3 compatible. Thus, the first edition of this book used Python 2.7. Now, users are free to choose between Python 2.x and 3.x and in general have full library support with either flavor.

However, Python 2.x will reach its development end of life in 2020 (including critical security patches), and so it is no longer a good idea to start new projects in Python 2.7. Therefore, this book uses Python 3.6, a widely deployed, well-supported stable release. We have begun to call Python 2.x "Legacy Python" and Python 3.x simply "Python." I encourage you to do the same.

This book uses Python 3.6 as its basis. Your version of Python may be newer than 3.6, but the code examples should be forward compatible. Some code examples may work differently or not at all in Python 2.7.

Integrated Development Environments (IDEs) and Text Editors

When asked about my standard development environment, I almost always say "IPython plus a text editor." I typically write a program and iteratively test and debug each piece of it in IPython or Jupyter notebooks. It is also useful to be able to play around with data interactively and visually verify that a particular set of data manipulations is doing the right thing. Libraries like pandas and NumPy are designed to be easy to use in the shell.

When building software, however, some users may prefer to use a more richly featured IDE rather than a comparatively primitive text editor like Emacs or Vim. Here are some that you can explore:

- PyDev (free), an IDE built on the Eclipse platform
- PyCharm from JetBrains (subscription-based for commercial users, free for open source developers)
- Python Tools for Visual Studio (for Windows users)
- Spyder (free), an IDE currently shipped with Anaconda
- Komodo IDE (commercial)

Due to the popularity of Python, most text editors, like Atom and Sublime Text 2, have excellent Python support.

1.5 Community and Conferences

Outside of an internet search, the various scientific and data-related Python mailing lists are generally helpful and responsive to questions. Some to take a look at include:

- pydata: A Google Group list for questions related to Python for data analysis and pandas
- pystatsmodels: For statsmodels or pandas-related questions
- Mailing list for scikit-learn (*scikit-learn@python.org*) and machine learning in Python, generally
- numpy-discussion: For NumPy-related questions
- scipy-user: For general SciPy or scientific Python questions

I deliberately did not post URLs for these in case they change. They can be easily located via an internet search.

Each year many conferences are held all over the world for Python programmers. If you would like to connect with other Python programmers who share your interests, I encourage you to explore attending one, if possible. Many conferences have financial support available for those who cannot afford admission or travel to the conference. Here are some to consider:

- PyCon and EuroPython: The two main general Python conferences in North America and Europe, respectively
- SciPy and EuroSciPy: Scientific-computing-oriented conferences in North America and Europe, respectively
- PyData: A worldwide series of regional conferences targeted at data science and data analysis use cases
- International and regional PyCon conferences (see *http://pycon.org* for a

complete listing)

1.6 Navigating This Book

If you have never programmed in Python before, you will want to spend some time in Chapters 2 and 3, where I have placed a condensed tutorial on Python language features and the IPython shell and Jupyter notebooks. These things are prerequisite knowledge for the remainder of the book. If you have Python experience already, you may instead choose to skim or skip these chapters.

Next, I give a short introduction to the key features of NumPy, leaving more advanced NumPy use for Appendix A. Then, I introduce pandas and devote the rest of the book to data analysis topics applying pandas, NumPy, and matplotlib (for visualization). I have structured the material in the most incremental way possible, though there is occasionally some minor crossover between chapters, with a few isolated cases where concepts are used that haven't necessarily been introduced yet.

While readers may have many different end goals for their work, the tasks required generally fall into a number of different broad groups:

Interacting with the outside world
: Reading and writing with a variety of file formats and data stores

Preparation
: Cleaning, munging, combining, normalizing, reshaping, slicing and dicing, and transforming data for analysis

Transformation
: Applying mathematical and statistical operations to groups of datasets to derive new datasets (e.g., aggregating a large table by group variables)

Modeling and computation
: Connecting your data to statistical models, machine learning algorithms, or other computational tools

Presentation

Creating interactive or static graphical visualizations or textual summaries

Code Examples

Most of the code examples in the book are shown with input and output as it would appear executed in the IPython shell or in Jupyter notebooks:

```
In [5]: CODE EXAMPLE
Out[5]: OUTPUT
```

When you see a code example like this, the intent is for you to type in the example code in the `In` block in your coding environment and execute it by pressing the Enter key (or Shift-Enter in Jupyter). You should see output similar to what is shown in the `Out` block.

Data for Examples

Datasets for the examples in each chapter are hosted in a GitHub repository. You can download this data either by using the Git version control system on the command line or by downloading a zip file of the repository from the website. If you run into problems, navigate to my website for up-to-date instructions about obtaining the book materials.

I have made every effort to ensure that it contains everything necessary to reproduce the examples, but I may have made some mistakes or omissions. If so, please send me an email: *book@wesmckinney.com*. The best way to report errors in the book is on the errata page on the O'Reilly website.

Import Conventions

The Python community has adopted a number of naming conventions for commonly used modules:

```
import numpy as np
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
import pandas as pd
import seaborn as sns
import statsmodels as sm
```

This means that when you see `np.arange`, this is a reference to the `arange` function in NumPy. This is done because it's considered bad practice in Python software development to import everything (`from numpy import *`) from a large package like NumPy.

Jargon

I’ll use some terms common both to programming and data science that you may not be familiar with. Thus, here are some brief definitions:

Munge/munging/wrangling

Describes the overall process of manipulating unstructured and/or messy data into a structured or clean form. The word has snuck its way into the jargon of many modern-day data hackers. “Munge” rhymes with “grunge.”

Pseudocode

A description of an algorithm or process that takes a code-like form while likely not being actual valid source code.

Syntactic sugar

Programming syntax that does not add new features, but makes something more convenient or easier to type.

Chapter 2. Python Language Basics, IPython, and Jupyter Notebooks

When I wrote the first edition of this book in 2011 and 2012, there were fewer resources available for learning about doing data analysis in Python. This was partially a chicken-and-egg problem; many libraries that we now take for granted, like pandas, scikit-learn, and statsmodels, were comparatively immature back then. In 2017, there is now a growing literature on data science, data analysis, and machine learning, supplementing the prior works on general-purpose scientific computing geared toward computational scientists, physicists, and professionals in other research fields. There are also excellent books about learning the Python programming language itself and becoming an effective software engineer.

As this book is intended as an introductory text in working with data in Python, I feel it is valuable to have a self-contained overview of some of the most important features of Python's built-in data structures and libraries from the perspective of data manipulation. So, I will only present roughly enough information in this chapter and Chapter 3 to enable you to follow along with the rest of the book.

In my opinion, it is *not* necessary to become proficient at building good software in Python to be able to productively do data analysis. I encourage you to use the IPython shell and Jupyter notebooks to experiment with the code examples and to explore the documentation for the various types, functions, and methods. While I've made best efforts to present the book material in an incremental form, you may occasionally encounter things that have not yet been fully introduced.

Much of this book focuses on table-based analytics and data preparation tools for working with large datasets. In order to use those tools you must often first do some munging to corral messy data into a more nicely tabular (or *structured*) form. Fortunately, Python is an ideal language for rapidly whipping your data into shape. The greater your facility with Python the language, the easier it will be for you to prepare new datasets for analysis.

Some of the tools in this book are best explored from a live IPython or Jupyter session. Once you learn how to start up IPython and Jupyter, I recommend that you follow along with the examples so you can experiment and try different things. As with any keyboard-driven console-like environment, developing muscle-memory for the common commands is also part of the learning curve.

> **NOTE**
>
> There are introductory Python concepts that this chapter does not cover, like classes and object-oriented programming, which you may find useful in your foray into data analysis in Python.
>
> To deepen your Python language knowledge, I recommend that you supplement this chapter with the official Python tutorial and potentially one of the many excellent books on general-purpose Python programming. Some recommendations to get you started include:
>
> - *Python Cookbook*, Third Edition, by David Beazley and Brian K. Jones (O'Reilly)
> - *Fluent Python* by Luciano Ramalho (O'Reilly)
> - *Effective Python* by Brett Slatkin (Pearson)

2.1 The Python Interpreter

Python is an *interpreted* language. The Python interpreter runs a program by executing one statement at a time. The standard interactive Python interpreter can be invoked on the command line with the `python` command:

```
$ python
Python 3.6.0 | packaged by conda-forge | (default, Jan 13 2017, 23:17:12)
[GCC 4.8.2 20140120 (Red Hat 4.8.2-15)] on linux
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
>>> a = 5
>>> print(a)
5
```

The >>> you see is the *prompt* where you'll type code expressions. To exit the Python interpreter and return to the command prompt, you can either type **`exit()`** or press Ctrl-D.

Running Python programs is as simple as calling `python` with a *.py* file as its first argument. Suppose we had created *hello_world.py* with these contents:

```
print('Hello world')
```

You can run it by executing the following command (the *hello_world.py* file must be in your current working terminal directory):

```
$ python hello_world.py
Hello world
```

While some Python programmers execute all of their Python code in this way, those doing data analysis or scientific computing make use of IPython, an enhanced Python interpreter, or Jupyter notebooks, web-based code notebooks originally created within the IPython project. I give an introduction to using IPython and Jupyter in this chapter and have included a deeper look at IPython functionality in Appendix A. When you use the `%run` command, IPython executes the code in the specified file in the same process, enabling you to explore the results interactively when it's done:

```
$ ipython
Python 3.6.0 | packaged by conda-forge | (default, Jan 13 2017, 23:17:12)
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.

IPython 5.1.0 -- An enhanced Interactive Python.
?         -> Introduction and overview of IPython's features.
%quickref -> Quick reference.
help      -> Python's own help system.
object?   -> Details about 'object', use 'object??' for extra details.

In [1]: %run hello_world.py
Hello world

In [2]:
```

The default IPython prompt adopts the numbered `In [2]:` style compared with the standard `>>>` prompt.

2.2 IPython Basics

In this section, we'll get you up and running with the IPython shell and Jupyter notebook, and introduce you to some of the essential concepts.

Running the IPython Shell

You can launch the IPython shell on the command line just like launching the regular Python interpreter except with the `ipython` command:

```
$ ipython
Python 3.6.0 | packaged by conda-forge | (default, Jan 13 2017, 23:17:12)
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.

IPython 5.1.0 -- An enhanced Interactive Python.
?         -> Introduction and overview of IPython's features.
%quickref -> Quick reference.
help      -> Python's own help system.
object?   -> Details about 'object', use 'object??' for extra details.

In [1]: a = 5

In [2]: a
Out[2]: 5
```

You can execute arbitrary Python statements by typing them in and pressing Return (or Enter). When you type just a variable into IPython, it renders a string representation of the object:

```
In [5]: import numpy as np

In [6]: data = {i : np.random.randn() for i in range(7)}

In [7]: data
Out[7]:
{0: -0.20470765948471295,
 1: 0.47894333805754824,
 2: -0.5194387150567381,
 3: -0.55573030434749,
 4: 1.9657805725027142,
 5: 1.3934058329729904,
 6: 0.09290787674371767}
```

The first two lines are Python code statements; the second statement creates a variable named `data` that refers to a newly created Python dictionary. The last line prints the value of `data` in the console.

Many kinds of Python objects are formatted to be more readable, or *pretty-printed*, which is distinct from normal printing with `print`. If you printed the above `data` variable in the standard Python interpreter, it would be much less readable:

```
>>> from numpy.random import randn
>>> data = {i : randn() for i in range(7)}
>>> print(data)
{0: -1.5948255432744511, 1: 0.10569006472787983, 2: 1.972367135977295,
3: 0.15455217573074576, 4: -0.24058577449429575, 5: -1.2904897053651216,
6: 0.3308507317325902}
```

IPython also provides facilities to execute arbitrary blocks of code (via a somewhat glorified copy-and-paste approach) and whole Python scripts. You can also use the Jupyter notebook to work with larger blocks of code, as we'll soon see.

Running the Jupyter Notebook

One of the major components of the Jupyter project is the *notebook*, a type of interactive document for code, text (with or without markup), data visualizations, and other output. The Jupyter notebook interacts with *kernels*, which are implementations of the Jupyter interactive computing protocol in any number of programming languages. Python's Jupyter kernel uses the IPython system for its underlying behavior.

To start up Jupyter, run the command `jupyter notebook` in a terminal:

```
$ jupyter notebook
[I 15:20:52.739 NotebookApp] Serving notebooks from local directory:
/home/wesm/code/pydata-book
[I 15:20:52.739 NotebookApp] 0 active kernels
[I 15:20:52.739 NotebookApp] The Jupyter Notebook is running at:
http://localhost:8888/
[I 15:20:52.740 NotebookApp] Use Control-C to stop this server and shut down
all kernels (twice to skip confirmation).
Created new window in existing browser session.
```

On many platforms, Jupyter will automatically open up in your default web browser (unless you start it with `--no-browser`). Otherwise, you can navigate to the HTTP address printed when you started the notebook, here `http://localhost:8888/`. See Figure 2-1 for what this looks like in Google Chrome.

> **NOTE**
>
> Many people use Jupyter as a local computing environment, but it can also be deployed on servers and accessed remotely. I won't cover those details here, but encourage you to explore this topic on the internet if it's relevant to your needs.

Figure 2-1. Jupyter notebook landing page

To create a new notebook, click the New button and select the "Python 3" or "conda [default]" option. You should see something like Figure 2-2. If this is your first time, try clicking on the empty code "cell" and entering a line of Python code. Then press Shift-Enter to execute it.

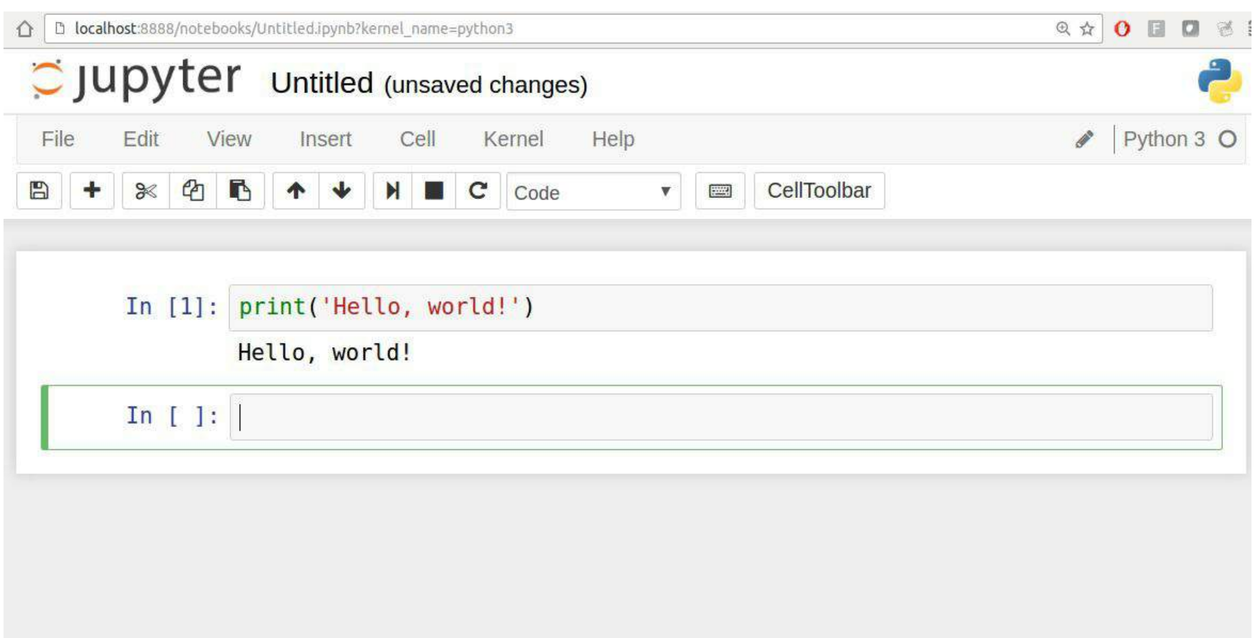


Figure 2-2. Jupyter new notebook view

When you save the notebook (see "Save and Checkpoint" under the notebook File menu), it creates a file with the extension *.ipynb*. This is a self-contained file format that contains all of the content (including any evaluated code output) currently in the notebook. These can be loaded and edited by other Jupyter users. To load an existing notebook, put the file in the same directory where you started the notebook process (or in a subfolder within it), then double-click the name from the landing page. You can try it out with the notebooks from my *wesm/pydata-book* repository on GitHub. See Figure 2-3.

While the Jupyter notebook can feel like a distinct experience from the IPython shell, nearly all of the commands and tools in this chapter can be used in either environment.

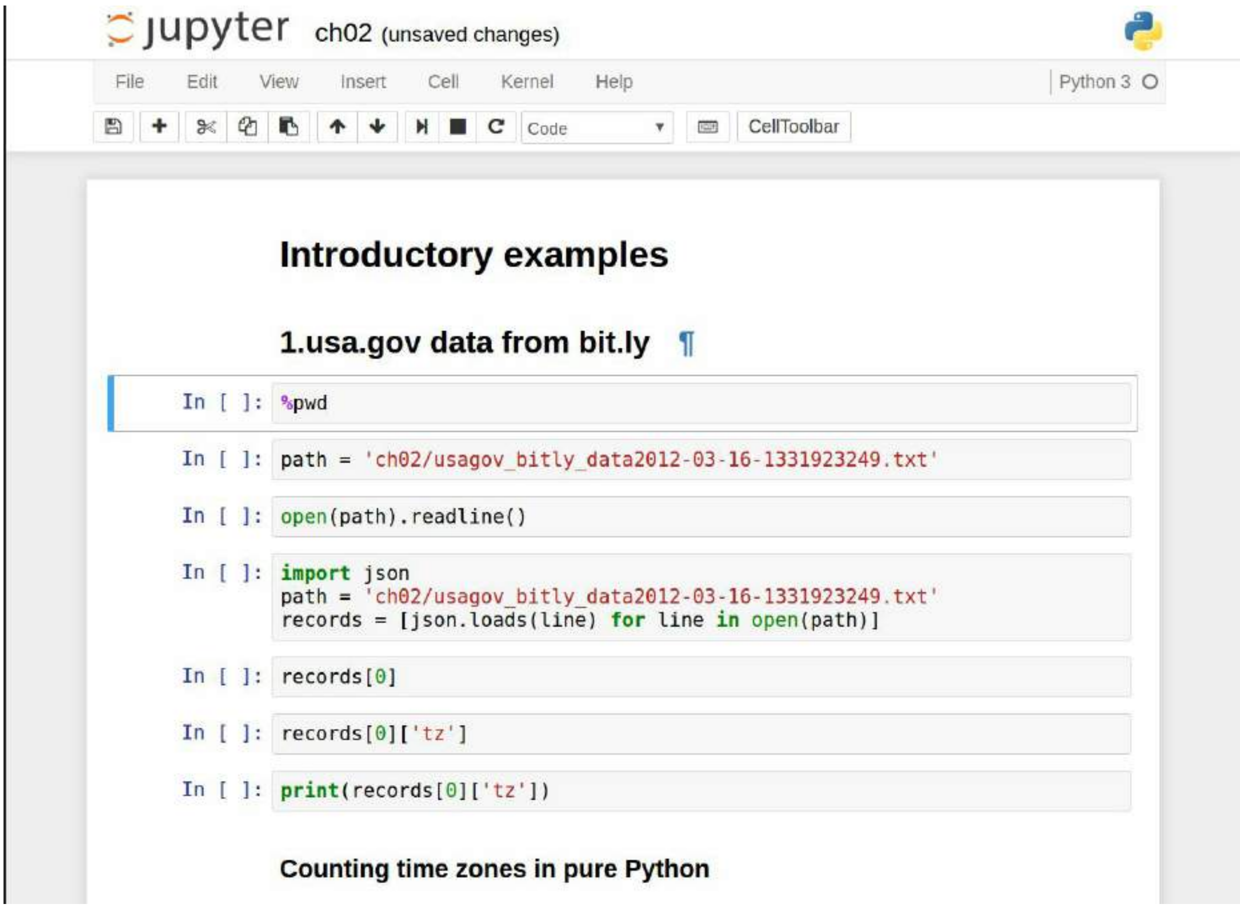


Figure 2-3. Jupyter example view for an existing notebook

Tab Completion

On the surface, the IPython shell looks like a cosmetically different version of the standard terminal Python interpreter (invoked with `python`). One of the major improvements over the standard Python shell is *tab completion*, found in many IDEs or other interactive computing analysis environments. While entering expressions in the shell, pressing the Tab key will search the namespace for any variables (objects, functions, etc.) matching the characters you have typed so far:

```
In [1]: an_apple = 27

In [2]: an_example = 42

In [3]: an<Tab>
an_apple    and         an_example  any
```

In this example, note that IPython displayed both the two variables I defined as well as the Python keyword `and` and built-in function `any`. Naturally, you can also complete methods and attributes on any object after typing a period:

```
In [3]: b = [1, 2, 3]

In [4]: b.<Tab>
b.append  b.count   b.insert  b.reverse
b.clear   b.extend  b.pop     b.sort
b.copy    b.index   b.remove
```

The same goes for modules:

```
In [1]: import datetime

In [2]: datetime.<Tab>
datetime.date          datetime.MAXYEAR       datetime.timedelta
datetime.datetime      datetime.MINYEAR       datetime.timezone
datetime.datetime_CAPI datetime.time          datetime.tzinfo
```

In the Jupyter notebook and newer versions of IPython (5.0 and higher), the autocompletions show up in a drop-down box rather than as text output.

NOTE

Note that IPython by default hides methods and attributes starting with underscores, such as magic methods and internal “private” methods and attributes, in order to avoid cluttering the display (and confusing novice users!). These, too, can be tab-completed, but you must first type an underscore to see them. If you prefer to always see such methods in tab completion, you can change this setting in the IPython configuration. See the IPython documentation to find out how to do this.

Tab completion works in many contexts outside of searching the interactive namespace and completing object or module attributes. When typing anything that looks like a file path (even in a Python string), pressing the Tab key will complete anything on your computer’s filesystem matching what you’ve typed:

```
In [7]: datasets/movielens/<Tab>
datasets/movielens/movies.dat    datasets/movielens/README
datasets/movielens/ratings.dat   datasets/movielens/users.dat

In [7]: path = 'datasets/movielens/<Tab>
datasets/movielens/movies.dat    datasets/movielens/README
datasets/movielens/ratings.dat   datasets/movielens/users.dat
```

Combined with the `%run` command (see “The %run Command”), this functionality can save you many keystrokes.

Another area where tab completion saves time is in the completion of function keyword arguments (and including the `=` sign!). See Figure 2-4.

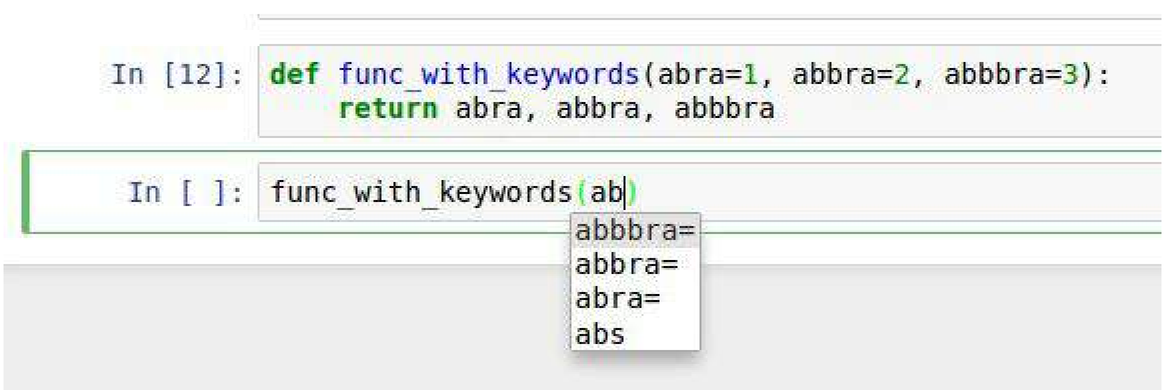


Figure 2-4. Autocomplete function keywords in Jupyter notebook

We’ll have a closer look at functions in a little bit.

Introspection

Using a question mark (`?`) before or after a variable will display some general information about the object:

```
In [8]: b = [1, 2, 3]

In [9]: b?
Type:       list
String Form:[1, 2, 3]
Length:     3
Docstring:
list() -> new empty list
list(iterable) -> new list initialized from iterable's items

In [10]: print?
Docstring:
print(value, ..., sep=' ', end='\n', file=sys.stdout, flush=False)

Prints the values to a stream, or to sys.stdout by default.
Optional keyword arguments:
file:  a file-like object (stream); defaults to the current sys.stdout.
sep:   string inserted between values, default a space.
end:   string appended after the last value, default a newline.
flush: whether to forcibly flush the stream.
Type:      builtin_function_or_method
```

This is referred to as *object introspection*. If the object is a function or instance method, the docstring, if defined, will also be shown. Suppose we'd written the following function (which you can reproduce in IPython or Jupyter):

```
def add_numbers(a, b):
    """
    Add two numbers together

    Returns
    -------
    the_sum : type of arguments
    """
    return a + b
```

Then using `?` shows us the docstring:

```
In [11]: add_numbers?
Signature: add_numbers(a, b)
```

```
Docstring:
Add two numbers together

Returns
-------
the_sum : type of arguments
File:      <ipython-input-9-6a548a216e27>
Type:      function
```

Using `??` will also show the function's source code if possible:

```
In [12]: add_numbers??
Signature: add_numbers(a, b)
Source:
def add_numbers(a, b):
    """
    Add two numbers together

    Returns
    -------
    the_sum : type of arguments
    """
    return a + b
File:      <ipython-input-9-6a548a216e27>
Type:      function
```

`?` has a final usage, which is for searching the IPython namespace in a manner similar to the standard Unix or Windows command line. A number of characters combined with the wildcard (`*`) will show all names matching the wildcard expression. For example, we could get a list of all functions in the top-level NumPy namespace containing `load`:

```
In [13]: np.*load*?
np.__loader__
np.load
np.loads
np.loadtxt
np.pkgload
```

The %run Command

You can run any file as a Python program inside the environment of your IPython session using the `%run` command. Suppose you had the following simple script stored in *ipython_script_test.py*:

```
def f(x, y, z):
    return (x + y) / z

a = 5
b = 6
c = 7.5

result = f(a, b, c)
```

You can execute this by passing the filename to `%run`:

```
In [14]: %run ipython_script_test.py
```

The script is run in an *empty namespace* (with no imports or other variables defined) so that the behavior should be identical to running the program on the command line using `python script.py`. All of the variables (imports, functions, and globals) defined in the file (up until an exception, if any, is raised) will then be accessible in the IPython shell:

```
In [15]: c
Out [15]: 7.5

In [16]: result
Out[16]: 1.4666666666666666
```

If a Python script expects command-line arguments (to be found in `sys.argv`), these can be passed after the file path as though run on the command line.

> **NOTE**
>
> Should you wish to give a script access to variables already defined in the interactive IPython namespace, use `%run -i` instead of plain `%run`.

In the Jupyter notebook, you may also use the related `%load` magic function, which imports a script into a code cell:

```
>>> %load ipython_script_test.py

    def f(x, y, z):
        return (x + y) / z

    a = 5
    b = 6
    c = 7.5

    result = f(a, b, c)
```

Interrupting running code

Pressing Ctrl-C while any code is running, whether a script through `%run` or a long-running command, will cause a `KeyboardInterrupt` to be raised. This will cause nearly all Python programs to stop immediately except in certain unusual cases.

> **WARNING**
>
> When a piece of Python code has called into some compiled extension modules, pressing Ctrl-C will not always cause the program execution to stop immediately. In such cases, you will have to either wait until control is returned to the Python interpreter, or in more dire circumstances, forcibly terminate the Python process.

Executing Code from the Clipboard

If you are using the Jupyter notebook, you can copy and paste code into any code cell and execute it. It is also possible to run code from the clipboard in the IPython shell. Suppose you had the following code in some other application:

```
x = 5
y = 7
if x > 5:
    x += 1

    y = 8
```

The most foolproof methods are the `%paste` and `%cpaste` magic functions. `%paste` takes whatever text is in the clipboard and executes it as a single block in the shell:

```
In [17]: %paste
x = 5
y = 7
if x > 5:
    x += 1

    y = 8
## -- End pasted text --
```

`%cpaste` is similar, except that it gives you a special prompt for pasting code into:

```
In [18]: %cpaste
Pasting code; enter '--' alone on the line to stop or use Ctrl-D.
:x = 5
:y = 7
:if x > 5:
:    x += 1
:
:    y = 8
:--
```

With the `%cpaste` block, you have the freedom to paste as much code as you like before executing it. You might decide to use `%cpaste` in order to look at the pasted code before executing it. If you accidentally paste the wrong code, you can break out of the `%cpaste` prompt by pressing Ctrl-C.

Terminal Keyboard Shortcuts

IPython has many keyboard shortcuts for navigating the prompt (which will be familiar to users of the Emacs text editor or the Unix bash shell) and interacting with the shell's command history. Table 2-1 summarizes some of the most commonly used shortcuts. See Figure 2-5 for an illustration of a few of these, such as cursor movement.

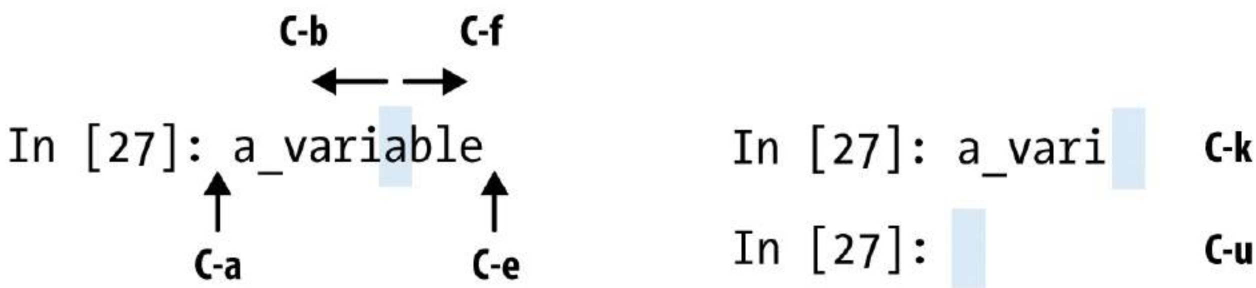


Figure 2-5. Illustration of some keyboard shortcuts in the IPython shell

Table 2-1. Standard IPython keyboard shortcuts

Keyboard shortcut	Description
Ctrl-P or up-arrow	Search backward in command history for commands starting with currently entered text
Ctrl-N or down-arrow	Search forward in command history for commands starting with currently entered text
Ctrl-R	Readline-style reverse history search (partial matching)
Ctrl-Shift-V	Paste text from clipboard
Ctrl-C	Interrupt currently executing code
Ctrl-A	Move cursor to beginning of line
Ctrl-E	Move cursor to end of line
Ctrl-K	Delete text from cursor until end of line
Ctrl-U	Discard all text on current line
Ctrl-F	Move cursor forward one character

Ctrl-B	Move cursor back one character
Ctrl-L	Clear screen

Note that Jupyter notebooks have a largely separate set of keyboard shortcuts for navigation and editing. Since these shortcuts have evolved more rapidly than IPython's, I encourage you to explore the integrated help system in the Jupyter notebook's menus.

About Magic Commands

IPython's special commands (which are not built into Python itself) are known as "magic" commands. These are designed to facilitate common tasks and enable you to easily control the behavior of the IPython system. A magic command is any command prefixed by the percent symbol `%`. For example, you can check the execution time of any Python statement, such as a matrix multiplication, using the `%timeit` magic function (which will be discussed in more detail later):

```
In [20]: a = np.random.randn(100, 100)

In [20]: %timeit np.dot(a, a)
10000 loops, best of 3: 20.9 µs per loop
```

Magic commands can be viewed as command-line programs to be run within the IPython system. Many of them have additional "command-line" options, which can all be viewed (as you might expect) using `?`:

```
In [21]: %debug?
Docstring:
::

  %debug [--breakpoint FILE:LINE] [statement [statement ...]]

Activate the interactive debugger.

This magic command support two ways of activating debugger.
One is to activate debugger before executing code.  This way, you
can set a break point, to step through the code from the point.
You can use this mode by giving statements to execute and optionally
a breakpoint.

The other one is to activate debugger in post-mortem mode.  You can
activate this mode simply running %debug without any argument.
If an exception has just occurred, this lets you inspect its stack
frames interactively.  Note that this will always work only on the last
traceback that occurred, so you must call this quickly after an
exception that you wish to inspect has fired, because if another one
occurs, it clobbers the previous one.

If you want IPython to automatically do this on every exception, see
the %pdb magic for more details.

positional arguments:
```

```
  statement             Code to run in debugger. You can omit this in cell
                        magic mode.

optional arguments:
  --breakpoint <FILE:LINE>, -b <FILE:LINE>
                        Set break point at LINE in FILE.
```

Magic functions can be used by default without the percent sign, as long as no variable is defined with the same name as the magic function in question. This feature is called *automagic* and can be enabled or disabled with `%automagic`.

Some magic functions behave like Python functions and their output can be assigned to a variable:

```
In [22]: %pwd
Out[22]: '/home/wesm/code/pydata-book

In [23]: foo = %pwd

In [24]: foo
Out[24]: '/home/wesm/code/pydata-book'
```

Since IPython's documentation is accessible from within the system, I encourage you to explore all of the special commands available by typing `%quickref` or `%magic`. Table 2-2 highlights some of the most critical ones for being productive in interactive computing and Python development in IPython.

Table 2-2. Some frequently used IPython magic commands

Command	Description
`%quickref`	Display the IPython Quick Reference Card
`%magic`	Display detailed documentation for all of the available magic commands
`%debug`	Enter the interactive debugger at the bottom of the last exception traceback
`%hist`	Print command input (and optionally output) history
`%pdb`	Automatically enter debugger after any exception
`%paste`	Execute preformatted Python code from clipboard
`%cpaste`	Open a special prompt for manually pasting Python code to be executed

`%reset`	Delete all variables/names defined in interactive namespace
`%page` *`OBJECT`*	Pretty-print the object and display it through a pager
`%run` *`script.py`*	Run a Python script inside IPython
`%prun` *`statement`*	Execute *`statement`* with `cProfile` and report the profiler output
`%time` *`statement`*	Report the execution time of a single statement
`%timeit` *`statement`*	Run a statement multiple times to compute an ensemble average execution time; useful for timing code with very short execution time
`%who`, `%who_ls`, `%whos`	Display variables defined in interactive namespace, with varying levels of information/verbosity
`%xdel` *`variable`*	Delete a variable and attempt to clear any references to the object in the IPython internals

Matplotlib Integration

One reason for IPython's popularity in analytical computing is that it integrates well with data visualization and other user interface libraries like matplotlib. Don't worry if you have never used matplotlib before; it will be discussed in more detail later in this book. The `%matplotlib` magic function configures its integration with the IPython shell or Jupyter notebook. This is important, as otherwise plots you create will either not appear (notebook) or take control of the session until closed (shell).

In the IPython shell, running `%matplotlib` sets up the integration so you can create multiple plot windows without interfering with the console session:

```
In [26]: %matplotlib
Using matplotlib backend: Qt4Agg
```

In Jupyter, the command is a little different (Figure 2-6):

```
In [26]: %matplotlib inline
```

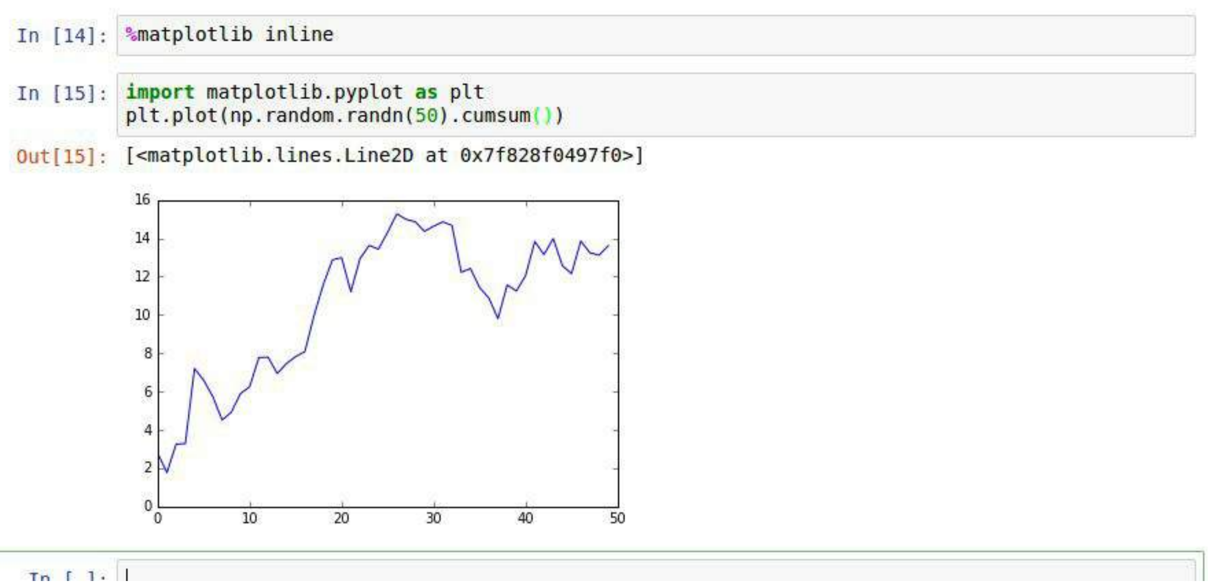


Figure 2-6. Jupyter inline matplotlib plotting

2.3 Python Language Basics

In this section, I will give you an overview of essential Python programming concepts and language mechanics. In the next chapter, I will go into more detail about Python's data structures, functions, and other built-in tools.

Language Semantics

The Python language design is distinguished by its emphasis on readability, simplicity, and explicitness. Some people go so far as to liken it to "executable pseudocode."

Indentation, not braces

Python uses whitespace (tabs or spaces) to structure code instead of using braces as in many other languages like R, C++, Java, and Perl. Consider a `for` loop from a sorting algorithm:

```
for x in array:
    if x < pivot:
        less.append(x)
    else:
        greater.append(x)
```

A colon denotes the start of an indented code block after which all of the code must be indented by the same amount until the end of the block.

Love it or hate it, significant whitespace is a fact of life for Python programmers, and in my experience it can make Python code more readable than other languages I've used. While it may seem foreign at first, you will hopefully grow accustomed in time.

> **NOTE**
>
> I strongly recommend using *four spaces* as your default indentation and replacing tabs with four spaces. Many text editors have a setting that will replace tab stops with spaces automatically (do this!). Some people use tabs or a different number of spaces, with two spaces not being terribly uncommon. By and large, four spaces is the standard adopted by the vast majority of Python programmers, so I recommend doing that in the absence of a compelling reason otherwise.

As you can see by now, Python statements also do not need to be terminated by semicolons. Semicolons can be used, however, to separate multiple statements on a single line:

```
a = 5; b = 6; c = 7
```

Putting multiple statements on one line is generally discouraged in Python as it often makes code less readable.

Everything is an object

An important characteristic of the Python language is the consistency of its *object model*. Every number, string, data structure, function, class, module, and so on exists in the Python interpreter in its own "box," which is referred to as a *Python object*. Each object has an associated *type* (e.g., *string* or *function*) and internal data. In practice this makes the language very flexible, as even functions can be treated like any other object.

Comments

Any text preceded by the hash mark (pound sign) `#` is ignored by the Python interpreter. This is often used to add comments to code. At times you may also want to exclude certain blocks of code without deleting them. An easy solution is to *comment out* the code:

```
results = []
for line in file_handle:
    # keep the empty lines for now
    # if len(line) == 0:
    #   continue
    results.append(line.replace('foo', 'bar'))
```

Comments can also occur after a line of executed code. While some programmers prefer comments to be placed in the line preceding a particular line of code, this can be useful at times:

```
print("Reached this line")  # Simple status report
```

Function and object method calls

You call functions using parentheses and passing zero or more arguments, optionally assigning the returned value to a variable:

```
result = f(x, y, z)
g()
```

Almost every object in Python has attached functions, known as *methods*, that have access to the object's internal contents. You can call them using the following syntax:

```
obj.some_method(x, y, z)
```

Functions can take both *positional* and *keyword* arguments:

```
result = f(a, b, c, d=5, e='foo')
```

More on this later.

Variables and argument passing

When assigning a variable (or *name*) in Python, you are creating a *reference* to the object on the righthand side of the equals sign. In practical terms, consider a list of integers:

```
In [8]: a = [1, 2, 3]
```

Suppose we assign `a` to a new variable `b`:

```
In [9]: b = a
```

In some languages, this assignment would cause the data `[1, 2, 3]` to be copied. In Python, `a` and `b` actually now refer to the same object, the original list `[1, 2, 3]` (see Figure 2-7 for a mockup). You can prove this to yourself by appending an element to `a` and then examining `b`:

```
In [10]: a.append(4)

In [11]: b
Out[11]: [1, 2, 3, 4]
```

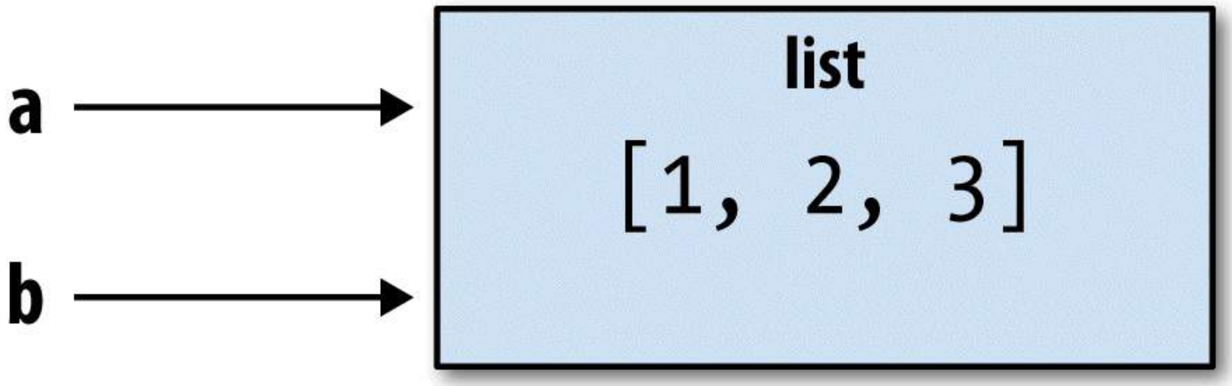


Figure 2-7. Two references for the same object

Understanding the semantics of references in Python and when, how, and why data is copied is especially critical when you are working with larger datasets in Python.

> **NOTE**
>
> Assignment is also referred to as *binding*, as we are binding a name to an object. Variable names that have been assigned may occasionally be referred to as bound variables.

When you pass objects as arguments to a function, new local variables are created referencing the original objects without any copying. If you bind a new object to a variable inside a function, that change will not be reflected in the parent scope. It is therefore possible to alter the internals of a mutable argument. Suppose we had the following function:

```
def append_element(some_list, element):
    some_list.append(element)
```

Then we have:

```
In [27]: data = [1, 2, 3]

In [28]: append_element(data, 4)
```

```
In [29]: data
Out[29]: [1, 2, 3, 4]
```

Dynamic references, strong types

In contrast with many compiled languages, such as Java and C++, object *references* in Python have no type associated with them. There is no problem with the following:

```
In [12]: a = 5

In [13]: type(a)
Out[13]: int

In [14]: a = 'foo'

In [15]: type(a)
Out[15]: str
```

Variables are names for objects within a particular namespace; the type information is stored in the object itself. Some observers might hastily conclude that Python is not a "typed language." This is not true; consider this example:

```
In [16]: '5' + 5
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
TypeError                                 Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-16-f9dbf5f0b234> in <module>()
----> 1 '5' + 5
TypeError: must be str, not int
```

In some languages, such as Visual Basic, the string `'5'` might get implicitly converted (or *casted*) to an integer, thus yielding 10. Yet in other languages, such as JavaScript, the integer `5` might be casted to a string, yielding the concatenated string `'55'`. In this regard Python is considered a *strongly typed* language, which means that every object has a specific type (or *class*), and implicit conversions will occur only in certain obvious circumstances, such as the following:

```
In [17]: a = 4.5

In [18]: b = 2
```

```
# String formatting, to be visited later
In [19]: print('a is {0}, b is {1}'.format(type(a), type(b)))
a is <class 'float'>, b is <class 'int'>

In [20]: a / b
Out[20]: 2.25
```

Knowing the type of an object is important, and it's useful to be able to write functions that can handle many different kinds of input. You can check that an object is an instance of a particular type using the `isinstance` function:

```
In [21]: a = 5

In [22]: isinstance(a, int)
Out[22]: True
```

`isinstance` can accept a tuple of types if you want to check that an object's type is among those present in the tuple:

```
In [23]: a = 5; b = 4.5

In [24]: isinstance(a, (int, float))
Out[24]: True

In [25]: isinstance(b, (int, float))
Out[25]: True
```

Attributes and methods

Objects in Python typically have both attributes (other Python objects stored "inside" the object) and methods (functions associated with an object that can have access to the object's internal data). Both of them are accessed via the syntax *`obj.attribute_name`*:

```
In [1]: a = 'foo'

In [2]: a.<Press Tab>
a.capitalize  a.format      a.isupper     a.rindex      a.strip
a.center      a.index       a.join        a.rjust       a.swapcase
a.count       a.isalnum     a.ljust       a.rpartition  a.title
a.decode      a.isalpha     a.lower       a.rsplit      a.translate
a.encode      a.isdigit     a.lstrip      a.rstrip      a.upper
a.endswith    a.islower     a.partition   a.split       a.zfill
a.expandtabs  a.isspace     a.replace     a.splitlines
a.find        a.istitle     a.rfind       a.startswith
```

Attributes and methods can also be accessed by name via the `getattr` function:

```
In [27]: getattr(a, 'split')
Out[27]: <function str.split>
```

In other languages, accessing objects by name is often referred to as "reflection." While we will not extensively use the functions `getattr` and related functions `hasattr` and `setattr` in this book, they can be used very effectively to write generic, reusable code.

Duck typing

Often you may not care about the type of an object but rather only whether it has certain methods or behavior. This is sometimes called "duck typing," after the saying "If it walks like a duck and quacks like a duck, then it's a duck." For example, you can verify that an object is iterable if it implemented the *iterator protocol*. For many objects, this means it has a `__iter__` "magic method," though an alternative and better way to check is to try using the `iter` function:

```
def isiterable(obj):
    try:
        iter(obj)
        return True
    except TypeError: # not iterable
        return False
```

This function would return `True` for strings as well as most Python collection types:

```
In [29]: isiterable('a string')
Out[29]: True

In [30]: isiterable([1, 2, 3])
Out[30]: True

In [31]: isiterable(5)
Out[31]: False
```

A place where I use this functionality all the time is to write functions that can accept multiple kinds of input. A common case is writing a function that can accept any kind of sequence (list, tuple, ndarray) or even an iterator. You can first check if the object is a list (or a NumPy array) and, if it is not, convert it to be one:

```
if not isinstance(x, list) and isiterable(x):
    x = list(x)
```

Imports

In Python a *module* is simply a file with the *.py* extension containing Python code. Suppose that we had the following module:

```
# some_module.py
PI = 3.14159

def f(x):
    return x + 2

def g(a, b):
    return a + b
```

If we wanted to access the variables and functions defined in *some_module.py*, from another file in the same directory we could do:

```
import some_module
result = some_module.f(5)
pi = some_module.PI
```

Or equivalently:

```
from some_module import f, g, PI
result = g(5, PI)
```

By using the `as` keyword you can give imports different variable names:

```
import some_module as sm
from some_module import PI as pi, g as gf

r1 = sm.f(pi)
r2 = gf(6, pi)
```

Binary operators and comparisons

Most of the binary math operations and comparisons are as you might expect:

```
In [32]: 5 - 7
Out[32]: -2

In [33]: 12 + 21.5
Out[33]: 33.5

In [34]: 5 <= 2
Out[34]: False
```

See Table 2-3 for all of the available binary operators.

To check if two references refer to the same object, use the `is` keyword. `is not` is also perfectly valid if you want to check that two objects are not the same:

```
In [35]: a = [1, 2, 3]

In [36]: b = a

In [37]: c = list(a)

In [38]: a is b
Out[38]: True

In [39]: a is not c
Out[39]: True
```

Since `list` always creates a new Python list (i.e., a copy), we can be sure that `c` is distinct from `a`. Comparing with `is` is not the same as the `==` operator, because in this case we have:

```
In [40]: a == c
Out[40]: True
```

A very common use of `is` and `is not` is to check if a variable is `None`, since there is only one instance of `None`:

```
In [41]: a = None

In [42]: a is None
Out[42]: True
```

Table 2-3. Binary operators

Operation	Description
`a + b`	Add `a` and `b`
`a - b`	Subtract `b` from `a`
`a * b`	Multiply `a` by `b`
`a / b`	Divide `a` by `b`
`a // b`	Floor-divide `a` by `b`, dropping any fractional remainder
`a ** b`	Raise `a` to the `b` power
`a & b`	`True` if both `a` and `b` are `True`; for integers, take the bitwise `AND`
`a | b`	`True` if either `a` or `b` is `True`; for integers, take the bitwise `OR`
`a ^ b`	For booleans, `True` if `a` or `b` is `True`, but not both; for integers, take the bitwise `EXCLUSIVE-OR`
`a == b`	`True` if `a` equals `b`
`a != b`	`True` if `a` is not equal to `b`
`a <= b, a < b`	`True` if `a` is less than (less than or equal) to `b`
`a > b, a >= b`	`True` if `a` is greater than (greater than or equal) to `b`
`a is b`	`True` if `a` and `b` reference the same Python object
`a is not b`	`True` if `a` and `b` reference different Python objects

Mutable and immutable objects

Most objects in Python, such as lists, dicts, NumPy arrays, and most user-defined types (classes), are mutable. This means that the object or values that they contain can be modified:

```
In [43]: a_list = ['foo', 2, [4, 5]]

In [44]: a_list[2] = (3, 4)

In [45]: a_list
Out[45]: ['foo', 2, (3, 4)]
```

Others, like strings and tuples, are immutable:

```
In [46]: a_tuple = (3, 5, (4, 5))

In [47]: a_tuple[1] = 'four'
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
TypeError                                 Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-47-b7966a9ae0f1> in <module>()
----> 1 a_tuple[1] = 'four'
TypeError: 'tuple' object does not support item assignment
```

Remember that just because you *can* mutate an object does not mean that you always *should*. Such actions are known as *side effects*. For example, when writing a function, any side effects should be explicitly communicated to the user in the function's documentation or comments. If possible, I recommend trying to avoid side effects and *favor immutability*, even though there may be mutable objects involved.

Scalar Types

Python along with its standard library has a small set of built-in types for handling numerical data, strings, boolean (`True` or `False`) values, and dates and time. These "single value" types are sometimes called *scalar types* and we refer to them in this book as scalars. See Table 2-4 for a list of the main scalar types. Date and time handling will be discussed separately, as these are provided by the `datetime` module in the standard library.

Table 2-4. Standard Python scalar types

Type	Description
`None`	The Python "null" value (only one instance of the `None` object exists)
`str`	String type; holds Unicode (UTF-8 encoded) strings
`bytes`	Raw ASCII bytes (or Unicode encoded as bytes)
`float`	Double-precision (64-bit) floating-point number (note there is no separate `double` type)
`bool`	A `True` or `False` value
`int`	Arbitrary precision signed integer

Numeric types

The primary Python types for numbers are `int` and `float`. An `int` can store arbitrarily large numbers:

```
In [48]: ival = 17239871

In [49]: ival ** 6
Out[49]: 26254519291092456596965462913230729701102721
```

Floating-point numbers are represented with the Python `float` type. Under the hood each one is a double-precision (64-bit) value. They can also be expressed with scientific notation:

```
In [50]: fval = 7.243
```

```
In [51]: fval2 = 6.78e-5
```

Integer division not resulting in a whole number will always yield a floating-point number:

```
In [52]: 3 / 2
Out[52]: 1.5
```

To get C-style integer division (which drops the fractional part if the result is not a whole number), use the floor division operator `//`:

```
In [53]: 3 // 2
Out[53]: 1
```

Strings

Many people use Python for its powerful and flexible built-in string processing capabilities. You can write *string literals* using either single quotes `'` or double quotes `"`:

```
a = 'one way of writing a string'
b = "another way"
```

For multiline strings with line breaks, you can use triple quotes, either `'''` or `"""`:

```
c = """
This is a longer string that
spans multiple lines
"""
```

It may surprise you that this string `c` actually contains four lines of text; the line breaks after `"""` and after `lines` are included in the string. We can count the new line characters with the `count` method on `c`:

```
In [55]: c.count('\n')
Out[55]: 3
```

Python strings are immutable; you cannot modify a string:

```
In [56]: a = 'this is a string'

In [57]: a[10] = 'f'
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
TypeError                                 Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-57-5ca625d1e504> in <module>()
----> 1 a[10] = 'f'
TypeError: 'str' object does not support item assignment

In [58]: b = a.replace('string', 'longer string')

In [59]: b
Out[59]: 'this is a longer string'
```

Afer this operation, the variable `a` is unmodified:

```
In [60]: a
Out[60]: 'this is a string'
```

Many Python objects can be converted to a string using the `str` function:

```
In [61]: a = 5.6

In [62]: s = str(a)

In [63]: print(s)
5.6
```

Strings are a sequence of Unicode characters and therefore can be treated like other sequences, such as lists and tuples (which we will explore in more detail in the next chapter):

```
In [64]: s = 'python'

In [65]: list(s)
Out[65]: ['p', 'y', 't', 'h', 'o', 'n']

In [66]: s[:3]
Out[66]: 'pyt'
```

The syntax `s[:3]` is called *slicing* and is implemented for many kinds of Python sequences. This will be explained in more detail later on, as it is used extensively in this book.

The backslash character \ is an *escape character*, meaning that it is used to specify special characters like newline `\n` or Unicode characters. To write a string literal with backslashes, you need to escape them:

```
In [67]: s = '12\\34'

In [68]: print(s)
12\34
```

If you have a string with a lot of backslashes and no special characters, you might find this a bit annoying. Fortunately you can preface the leading quote of the string with `r`, which means that the characters should be interpreted as is:

```
In [69]: s = r'this\has\no\special\characters'

In [70]: s
Out[70]: 'this\\has\\no\\special\\characters'
```

The `r` stands for *raw*.

Adding two strings together concatenates them and produces a new string:

```
In [71]: a = 'this is the first half '

In [72]: b = 'and this is the second half'

In [73]: a + b
Out[73]: 'this is the first half and this is the second half'
```

String templating or formatting is another important topic. The number of ways to do so has expanded with the advent of Python 3, and here I will briefly describe the mechanics of one of the main interfaces. String objects have a `format` method that can be used to substitute formatted arguments into the string, producing a new string:

```
In [74]: template = '{0:.2f} {1:s} are worth US${2:d}'
```

In this string,

- `{0:.2f}` means to format the first argument as a floating-point number with two decimal places.

- `{1:s}` means to format the second argument as a string.
- `{2:d}` means to format the third argument as an exact integer.

To substitute arguments for these format parameters, we pass a sequence of arguments to the `format` method:

```
In [75]: template.format(4.5560, 'Argentine Pesos', 1)
Out[75]: '4.56 Argentine Pesos are worth US$1'
```

String formatting is a deep topic; there are multiple methods and numerous options and tweaks available to control how values are formatted in the resulting string. To learn more, I recommend consulting the official Python documentation.

I discuss general string processing as it relates to data analysis in more detail in Chapter 8.

Bytes and Unicode

In modern Python (i.e., Python 3.0 and up), Unicode has become the first-class string type to enable more consistent handling of ASCII and non-ASCII text. In older versions of Python, strings were all bytes without any explicit Unicode encoding. You could convert to Unicode assuming you knew the character encoding. Let's look at an example:

```
In [76]: val = "español"

In [77]: val
Out[77]: 'español'
```

We can convert this Unicode string to its UTF-8 bytes representation using the `encode` method:

```
In [78]: val_utf8 = val.encode('utf-8')

In [79]: val_utf8
Out[79]: b'espa\xc3\xb1ol'

In [80]: type(val_utf8)
Out[80]: bytes
```

Assuming you know the Unicode encoding of a `bytes` object, you can go back using the `decode` method:

```
In [81]: val_utf8.decode('utf-8')
Out[81]: 'español'
```

While it's become preferred to use UTF-8 for any encoding, for historical reasons you may encounter data in any number of different encodings:

```
In [82]: val.encode('latin1')
Out[82]: b'espa\xf1ol'

In [83]: val.encode('utf-16')
Out[83]: b'\xff\xfee\x00s\x00p\x00a\x00\xf1\x00o\x00l\x00'

In [84]: val.encode('utf-16le')
Out[84]: b'e\x00s\x00p\x00a\x00\xf1\x00o\x00l\x00'
```

It is most common to encounter `bytes` objects in the context of working with files, where implicitly decoding all data to Unicode strings may not be desired.

Though you may seldom need to do so, you can define your own byte literals by prefixing a string with `b`:

```
In [85]: bytes_val = b'this is bytes'

In [86]: bytes_val
Out[86]: b'this is bytes'

In [87]: decoded = bytes_val.decode('utf8')

In [88]: decoded  # this is str (Unicode) now
Out[88]: 'this is bytes'
```

Booleans

The two boolean values in Python are written as `True` and `False`. Comparisons and other conditional expressions evaluate to either `True` or `False`. Boolean values are combined with the `and` and `or` keywords:

```
In [89]: True and True
Out[89]: True
```

```
In [90]: False or True
Out[90]: True
```

Type casting

The `str`, `bool`, `int`, and `float` types are also functions that can be used to cast values to those types:

```
In [91]: s = '3.14159'

In [92]: fval = float(s)

In [93]: type(fval)
Out[93]: float

In [94]: int(fval)
Out[94]: 3

In [95]: bool(fval)
Out[95]: True

In [96]: bool(0)
Out[96]: False
```

None

`None` is the Python null value type. If a function does not explicitly return a value, it implicitly returns `None`:

```
In [97]: a = None

In [98]: a is None
Out[98]: True

In [99]: b = 5

In [100]: b is not None
Out[100]: True
```

`None` is also a common default value for function arguments:

```
def add_and_maybe_multiply(a, b, c=None):
    result = a + b

    if c is not None:
        result = result * c

    return result
```

While a technical point, it's worth bearing in mind that `None` is not only a reserved keyword but also a unique instance of `NoneType`:

```
In [101]: type(None)
Out[101]: NoneType
```

Dates and times

The built-in Python `datetime` module provides `datetime`, `date`, and `time` types. The `datetime` type, as you may imagine, combines the information stored in `date` and `time` and is the most commonly used:

```
In [102]: from datetime import datetime, date, time

In [103]: dt = datetime(2011, 10, 29, 20, 30, 21)

In [104]: dt.day
Out[104]: 29

In [105]: dt.minute
Out[105]: 30
```

Given a `datetime` instance, you can extract the equivalent `date` and `time` objects by calling methods on the `datetime` of the same name:

```
In [106]: dt.date()
Out[106]: datetime.date(2011, 10, 29)

In [107]: dt.time()
Out[107]: datetime.time(20, 30, 21)
```

The `strftime` method formats a `datetime` as a string:

```
In [108]: dt.strftime('%m/%d/%Y %H:%M')
Out[108]: '10/29/2011 20:30'
```

Strings can be converted (parsed) into `datetime` objects with the `strptime` function:

```
In [109]: datetime.strptime('20091031', '%Y%m%d')
Out[109]: datetime.datetime(2009, 10, 31, 0, 0)
```

See Table 2-5 for a full list of format specifications.

When you are aggregating or otherwise grouping time series data, it will occasionally be useful to replace time fields of a series of `datetime`s — for example, replacing the minute and second fields with zero:

```
In [110]: dt.replace(minute=0, second=0)
Out[110]: datetime.datetime(2011, 10, 29, 20, 0)
```

Since `datetime.datetime` is an immutable type, methods like these always produce new objects.

The difference of two `datetime` objects produces a `datetime.timedelta` type:

```
In [111]: dt2 = datetime(2011, 11, 15, 22, 30)

In [112]: delta = dt2 - dt

In [113]: delta
Out[113]: datetime.timedelta(17, 7179)

In [114]: type(delta)
Out[114]: datetime.timedelta
```

The output `timedelta(17, 7179)` indicates that the timedelta encodes an offset of 17 days and 7,179 seconds.

Adding a `timedelta` to a `datetime` produces a new shifted `datetime`:

```
In [115]: dt
Out[115]: datetime.datetime(2011, 10, 29, 20, 30, 21)

In [116]: dt + delta
Out[116]: datetime.datetime(2011, 11, 15, 22, 30)
```

Table 2-5. Datetime format specification (ISO C89 compatible)

Type	Description
`%Y`	Four-digit year
`%y`	Two-digit year
`%m`	Two-digit month [01, 12]

`%d`	Two-digit day [01, 31]
`%H`	Hour (24-hour clock) [00, 23]
`%I`	Hour (12-hour clock) [01, 12]
`%M`	Two-digit minute [00, 59]
`%S`	Second [00, 61] (seconds 60, 61 account for leap seconds)
`%w`	Weekday as integer [0 (Sunday), 6]
`%U`	Week number of the year [00, 53]; Sunday is considered the first day of the week, and days before the first Sunday of the year are “week 0”
`%W`	Week number of the year [00, 53]; Monday is considered the first day of the week, and days before the first Monday of the year are “week 0”
`%z`	UTC time zone offset as `+HHMM` or `-HHMM`; empty if time zone naive
`%F`	Shortcut for `%Y-%m-%d` (e.g., `2012-4-18`)
`%D`	Shortcut for `%m/%d/%y` (e.g., `04/18/12`)

Control Flow

Python has several built-in keywords for conditional logic, loops, and other standard *control flow* concepts found in other programming languages.

if, elif, and else

The `if` statement is one of the most well-known control flow statement types. It checks a condition that, if `True`, evaluates the code in the block that follows:

```
if x < 0:
    print('It's negative')
```

An `if` statement can be optionally followed by one or more `elif` blocks and a catch-all `else` block if all of the conditions are `False`:

```
if x < 0:
    print('It's negative')
elif x == 0:
    print('Equal to zero')
elif 0 < x < 5:
    print('Positive but smaller than 5')
else:
    print('Positive and larger than or equal to 5')
```

If any of the conditions is `True`, no further `elif` or `else` blocks will be reached. With a compound condition using `and` or `or`, conditions are evaluated left to right and will short-circuit:

```
In [117]: a = 5; b = 7

In [118]: c = 8; d = 4

In [119]: if a < b or c > d:
   .....:     print('Made it')
Made it
```

In this example, the comparison `c > d` never gets evaluated because the first comparison was `True`.

It is also possible to chain comparisons:

```
In [120]: 4 > 3 > 2 > 1
Out[120]: True
```

for loops

`for` loops are for iterating over a collection (like a list or tuple) or an iterater. The standard syntax for a `for` loop is:

```
for value in collection:
    # do something with value
```

You can advance a `for` loop to the next iteration, skipping the remainder of the block, using the `continue` keyword. Consider this code, which sums up integers in a list and skips `None` values:

```
sequence = [1, 2, None, 4, None, 5]
total = 0
for value in sequence:
    if value is None:
        continue
    total += value
```

A `for` loop can be exited altogether with the `break` keyword. This code sums elements of the list until a 5 is reached:

```
sequence = [1, 2, 0, 4, 6, 5, 2, 1]
total_until_5 = 0
for value in sequence:
    if value == 5:
        break
    total_until_5 += value
```

The `break` keyword only terminates the innermost `for` loop; any outer `for` loops will continue to run:

```
In [121]: for i in range(4):
   .....:     for j in range(4):
   .....:         if j > i:
   .....:             break
   .....:         print((i, j))
   .....:
```

```
(0, 0)
(1, 0)
(1, 1)
(2, 0)
(2, 1)
(2, 2)
(3, 0)
(3, 1)
(3, 2)
(3, 3)
```

As we will see in more detail, if the elements in the collection or iterator are sequences (tuples or lists, say), they can be conveniently *unpacked* into variables in the `for` loop statement:

```
for a, b, c in iterator:
    # do something
```

while loops

A `while` loop specifies a condition and a block of code that is to be executed until the condition evaluates to `False` or the loop is explicitly ended with `break`:

```
x = 256
total = 0
while x > 0:
    if total > 500:
        break
    total += x
    x = x // 2
```

pass

`pass` is the "no-op" statement in Python. It can be used in blocks where no action is to be taken (or as a placeholder for code not yet implemented); it is only required because Python uses whitespace to delimit blocks:

```
if x < 0:
    print('negative!')
elif x == 0:
    # TODO: put something smart here
    pass
else:
    print('positive!')
```

range

The `range` function returns an iterator that yields a sequence of evenly spaced integers:

```
In [122]: range(10)
Out[122]: range(0, 10)

In [123]: list(range(10))
Out[123]: [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
```

Both a start, end, and step (which may be negative) can be given:

```
In [124]: list(range(0, 20, 2))
Out[124]: [0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18]

In [125]: list(range(5, 0, -1))
Out[125]: [5, 4, 3, 2, 1]
```

As you can see, `range` produces integers up to but not including the endpoint. A common use of `range` is for iterating through sequences by index:

```
seq = [1, 2, 3, 4]
for i in range(len(seq)):
    val = seq[i]
```

While you can use functions like `list` to store all the integers generated by `range` in some other data structure, often the default iterator form will be what you want. This snippet sums all numbers from 0 to 99,999 that are multiples of 3 or 5:

```
sum = 0
for i in range(100000):
    # % is the modulo operator
    if i % 3 == 0 or i % 5 == 0:
        sum += i
```

While the range generated can be arbitrarily large, the memory use at any given time may be very small.

Ternary expressions

A *ternary expression* in Python allows you to combine an `if-else` block that produces a value into a single line or expression. The syntax for this in Python is:

```
value = true-expr if condition else false-expr
```

Here, `true-expr` and `false-expr` can be any Python expressions. It has the identical effect as the more verbose:

```
if condition:
    value = true-expr
else:
    value = false-expr
```

This is a more concrete example:

```
In [126]: x = 5

In [127]: 'Non-negative' if x >= 0 else 'Negative'
Out[127]: 'Non-negative'
```

As with `if-else` blocks, only one of the expressions will be executed. Thus, the "if" and "else" sides of the ternary expression could contain costly computations, but only the true branch is ever evaluated.

While it may be tempting to always use ternary expressions to condense your code, realize that you may sacrifice readability if the condition as well as the true and false expressions are very complex.

Chapter 3. Built-in Data Structures, Functions, and Files

This chapter discusses capabilities built into the Python language that will be used ubiquitously throughout the book. While add-on libraries like pandas and NumPy add advanced computational functionality for larger datasets, they are designed to be used together with Python's built-in data manipulation tools.

We'll start with Python's workhorse data structures: tuples, lists, dicts, and sets. Then, we'll discuss creating your own reusable Python functions. Finally, we'll look at the mechanics of Python file objects and interacting with your local hard drive.

3.1 Data Structures and Sequences

Python’s data structures are simple but powerful. Mastering their use is a critical part of becoming a proficient Python programmer.

Tuple

A tuple is a fixed-length, immutable sequence of Python objects. The easiest way to create one is with a comma-separated sequence of values:

```
In [1]: tup = 4, 5, 6

In [2]: tup
Out[2]: (4, 5, 6)
```

When you're defining tuples in more complicated expressions, it's often necessary to enclose the values in parentheses, as in this example of creating a tuple of tuples:

```
In [3]: nested_tup = (4, 5, 6), (7, 8)

In [4]: nested_tup
Out[4]: ((4, 5, 6), (7, 8))
```

You can convert any sequence or iterator to a tuple by invoking `tuple`:

```
In [5]: tuple([4, 0, 2])
Out[5]: (4, 0, 2)

In [6]: tup = tuple('string')

In [7]: tup
Out[7]: ('s', 't', 'r', 'i', 'n', 'g')
```

Elements can be accessed with square brackets `[]` as with most other sequence types. As in C, C++, Java, and many other languages, sequences are 0-indexed in Python:

```
In [8]: tup[0]
Out[8]: 's'
```

While the objects stored in a tuple may be mutable themselves, once the tuple is created it's not possible to modify which object is stored in each slot:

```
In [9]: tup = tuple(['foo', [1, 2], True])
```

```
In [10]: tup[2] = False
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
TypeError                                 Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-10-c7308343b841> in <module>()
----> 1 tup[2] = False
TypeError: 'tuple' object does not support item assignment
```

If an object inside a tuple is mutable, such as a list, you can modify it in-place:

```
In [11]: tup[1].append(3)

In [12]: tup
Out[12]: ('foo', [1, 2, 3], True)
```

You can concatenate tuples using the + operator to produce longer tuples:

```
In [13]: (4, None, 'foo') + (6, 0) + ('bar',)
Out[13]: (4, None, 'foo', 6, 0, 'bar')
```

Multiplying a tuple by an integer, as with lists, has the effect of concatenating together that many copies of the tuple:

```
In [14]: ('foo', 'bar') * 4
Out[14]: ('foo', 'bar', 'foo', 'bar', 'foo', 'bar', 'foo', 'bar')
```

Note that the objects themselves are not copied, only the references to them.

Unpacking tuples

If you try to *assign* to a tuple-like expression of variables, Python will attempt to *unpack* the value on the righthand side of the equals sign:

```
In [15]: tup = (4, 5, 6)

In [16]: a, b, c = tup

In [17]: b
Out[17]: 5
```

Even sequences with nested tuples can be unpacked:

```
In [18]: tup = 4, 5, (6, 7)
```

```
In [19]: a, b, (c, d) = tup

In [20]: d
Out[20]: 7
```

Using this functionality you can easily swap variable names, a task which in many languages might look like:

```
tmp = a
a = b
b = tmp
```

But, in Python, the swap can be done like this:

```
In [21]: a, b = 1, 2

In [22]: a
Out[22]: 1

In [23]: b
Out[23]: 2

In [24]: b, a = a, b

In [25]: a
Out[25]: 2

In [26]: b
Out[26]: 1
```

A common use of variable unpacking is iterating over sequences of tuples or lists:

```
In [27]: seq = [(1, 2, 3), (4, 5, 6), (7, 8, 9)]

In [28]: for a, b, c in seq:
   ....:     print('a={0}, b={1}, c={2}'.format(a, b, c))
a=1, b=2, c=3
a=4, b=5, c=6
a=7, b=8, c=9
```

Another common use is returning multiple values from a function. I’ll cover this in more detail later.

The Python language recently acquired some more advanced tuple unpacking to help with situations where you may want to “pluck” a few elements from the beginning of a tuple. This uses the special syntax `*rest`, which is also used in function signatures to capture an arbitrarily long list of positional arguments:

```
In [29]: values = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

In [30]: a, b, *rest = values

In [31]: a, b
Out[31]: (1, 2)

In [32]: rest
Out[32]: [3, 4, 5]
```

This `rest` bit is sometimes something you want to discard; there is nothing special about the `rest` name. As a matter of convention, many Python programmers will use the underscore (_) for unwanted variables:

```
In [33]: a, b, *_ = values
```

Tuple methods

Since the size and contents of a tuple cannot be modified, it is very light on instance methods. A particularly useful one (also available on lists) is `count`, which counts the number of occurrences of a value:

```
In [34]: a = (1, 2, 2, 2, 3, 4, 2)

In [35]: a.count(2)
Out[35]: 4
```

List

In contrast with tuples, lists are variable-length and their contents can be modified in-place. You can define them using square brackets `[]` or using the `list` type function:

```
In [36]: a_list = [2, 3, 7, None]

In [37]: tup = ('foo', 'bar', 'baz')

In [38]: b_list = list(tup)

In [39]: b_list
Out[39]: ['foo', 'bar', 'baz']

In [40]: b_list[1] = 'peekaboo'

In [41]: b_list
Out[41]: ['foo', 'peekaboo', 'baz']
```

Lists and tuples are semantically similar (though tuples cannot be modified) and can be used interchangeably in many functions.

The `list` function is frequently used in data processing as a way to materialize an iterator or generator expression:

```
In [42]: gen = range(10)

In [43]: gen
Out[43]: range(0, 10)

In [44]: list(gen)
Out[44]: [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
```

Adding and removing elements

Elements can be appended to the end of the list with the `append` method:

```
In [45]: b_list.append('dwarf')

In [46]: b_list
Out[46]: ['foo', 'peekaboo', 'baz', 'dwarf']
```

Using `insert` you can insert an element at a specific location in the list:

```
In [47]: b_list.insert(1, 'red')

In [48]: b_list
Out[48]: ['foo', 'red', 'peekaboo', 'baz', 'dwarf']
```

The insertion index must be between 0 and the length of the list, inclusive.

> **WARNING**
>
> `insert` is computationally expensive compared with `append`, because references to subsequent elements have to be shifted internally to make room for the new element. If you need to insert elements at both the beginning and end of a sequence, you may wish to explore `collections.deque`, a double-ended queue, for this purpose.

The inverse operation to `insert` is `pop`, which removes and returns an element at a particular index:

```
In [49]: b_list.pop(2)
Out[49]: 'peekaboo'

In [50]: b_list
Out[50]: ['foo', 'red', 'baz', 'dwarf']
```

Elements can be removed by value with `remove`, which locates the first such value and removes it from the last:

```
In [51]: b_list.append('foo')

In [52]: b_list
Out[52]: ['foo', 'red', 'baz', 'dwarf', 'foo']

In [53]: b_list.remove('foo')

In [54]: b_list
Out[54]: ['red', 'baz', 'dwarf', 'foo']
```

If performance is not a concern, by using `append` and `remove`, you can use a Python list as a perfectly suitable “multiset” data structure.

Check if a list contains a value using the `in` keyword:

```
In [55]: 'dwarf' in b_list
Out[55]: True
```

The keyword `not` can be used to negate `in`:

```
In [56]: 'dwarf' not in b_list
Out[56]: False
```

Checking whether a list contains a value is a lot slower than doing so with dicts and sets (to be introduced shortly), as Python makes a linear scan across the values of the list, whereas it can check the others (based on hash tables) in constant time.

Concatenating and combining lists

Similar to tuples, adding two lists together with `+` concatenates them:

```
In [57]: [4, None, 'foo'] + [7, 8, (2, 3)]
Out[57]: [4, None, 'foo', 7, 8, (2, 3)]
```

If you have a list already defined, you can append multiple elements to it using the `extend` method:

```
In [58]: x = [4, None, 'foo']

In [59]: x.extend([7, 8, (2, 3)])

In [60]: x
Out[60]: [4, None, 'foo', 7, 8, (2, 3)]
```

Note that list concatenation by addition is a comparatively expensive operation since a new list must be created and the objects copied over. Using `extend` to append elements to an existing list, especially if you are building up a large list, is usually preferable. Thus,

```
everything = []
for chunk in list_of_lists:
    everything.extend(chunk)
```

is faster than the concatenative alternative:

```
everything = []
for chunk in list_of_lists:
    everything = everything + chunk
```

Sorting

You can sort a list in-place (without creating a new object) by calling its `sort` function:

```
In [61]: a = [7, 2, 5, 1, 3]

In [62]: a.sort()

In [63]: a
Out[63]: [1, 2, 3, 5, 7]
```

`sort` has a few options that will occasionally come in handy. One is the ability to pass a secondary *sort key* — that is, a function that produces a value to use to sort the objects. For example, we could sort a collection of strings by their lengths:

```
In [64]: b = ['saw', 'small', 'He', 'foxes', 'six']

In [65]: b.sort(key=len)

In [66]: b
Out[66]: ['He', 'saw', 'six', 'small', 'foxes']
```

Soon, we'll look at the `sorted` function, which can produce a sorted copy of a general sequence.

Binary search and maintaining a sorted list

The built-in `bisect` module implements binary search and insertion into a sorted list. `bisect.bisect` finds the location where an element should be inserted to keep it sorted, while `bisect.insort` actually inserts the element into that location:

```
In [67]: import bisect

In [68]: c = [1, 2, 2, 2, 3, 4, 7]

In [69]: bisect.bisect(c, 2)
```

```
Out[69]: 4

In [70]: bisect.bisect(c, 5)
Out[70]: 6

In [71]: bisect.insort(c, 6)

In [72]: c
Out[72]: [1, 2, 2, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7]
```

> **CAUTION**
>
> The `bisect` module functions do not check whether the list is sorted, as doing so would be computationally expensive. Thus, using them with an unsorted list will succeed without error but may lead to incorrect results.

Slicing

You can select sections of most sequence types by using slice notation, which in its basic form consists of `start:stop` passed to the indexing operator `[]`:

```
In [73]: seq = [7, 2, 3, 7, 5, 6, 0, 1]

In [74]: seq[1:5]
Out[74]: [2, 3, 7, 5]
```

Slices can also be assigned to with a sequence:

```
In [75]: seq[3:4] = [6, 3]

In [76]: seq
Out[76]: [7, 2, 3, 6, 3, 5, 6, 0, 1]
```

While the element at the `start` index is included, the `stop` index is *not included*, so that the number of elements in the result is `stop - start`.

Either the `start` or `stop` can be omitted, in which case they default to the start of the sequence and the end of the sequence, respectively:

```
In [77]: seq[:5]
Out[77]: [7, 2, 3, 6, 3]

In [78]: seq[3:]
```

```
Out[78]: [6, 3, 5, 6, 0, 1]
```

Negative indices slice the sequence relative to the end:

```
In [79]: seq[-4:]
Out[79]: [5, 6, 0, 1]

In [80]: seq[-6:-2]
Out[80]: [6, 3, 5, 6]
```

Slicing semantics takes a bit of getting used to, especially if you're coming from R or MATLAB. See Figure 3-1 for a helpful illustration of slicing with positive and negative integers. In the figure, the indices are shown at the "bin edges" to help show where the slice selections start and stop using positive or negative indices.

A `step` can also be used after a second colon to, say, take every other element:

```
In [81]: seq[::2]
Out[81]: [7, 3, 3, 6, 1]
```

A clever use of this is to pass `-1`, which has the useful effect of reversing a list or tuple:

```
In [82]: seq[::-1]
Out[82]: [1, 0, 6, 5, 3, 6, 3, 2, 7]
```

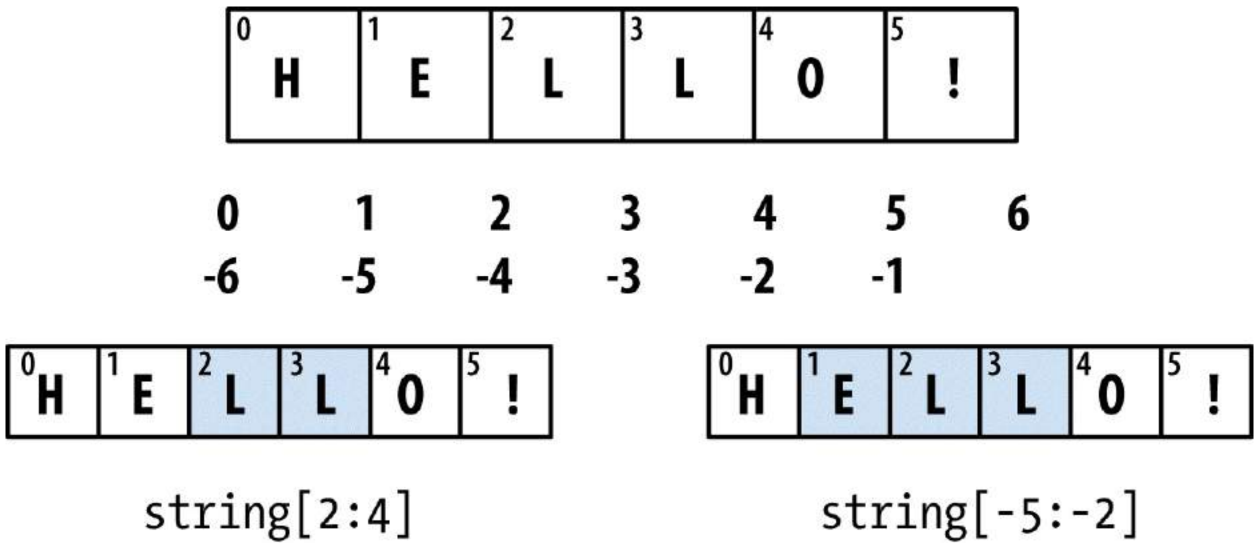


Figure 3-1. Illustration of Python slicing conventions

Built-in Sequence Functions

Python has a handful of useful sequence functions that you should familiarize yourself with and use at any opportunity.

enumerate

It's common when iterating over a sequence to want to keep track of the index of the current item. A do-it-yourself approach would look like:

```
i = 0
for value in collection:
   # do something with value
   i += 1
```

Since this is so common, Python has a built-in function, `enumerate`, which returns a sequence of `(i, value)` tuples:

```
for i, value in enumerate(collection):
   # do something with value
```

When you are indexing data, a helpful pattern that uses `enumerate` is computing a `dict` mapping the values of a sequence (which are assumed to be unique) to their locations in the sequence:

```
In [83]: some_list = ['foo', 'bar', 'baz']

In [84]: mapping = {}

In [85]: for i, v in enumerate(some_list):
   ....:     mapping[v] = i

In [86]: mapping
Out[86]: {'bar': 1, 'baz': 2, 'foo': 0}
```

sorted

The `sorted` function returns a new sorted list from the elements of any sequence:

```
In [87]: sorted([7, 1, 2, 6, 0, 3, 2])
```

```
Out[87]: [0, 1, 2, 2, 3, 6, 7]

In [88]: sorted('horse race')
Out[88]: [' ', 'a', 'c', 'e', 'e', 'h', 'o', 'r', 'r', 's']
```

The `sorted` function accepts the same arguments as the `sort` method on lists.

zip

`zip` "pairs" up the elements of a number of lists, tuples, or other sequences to create a list of tuples:

```
In [89]: seq1 = ['foo', 'bar', 'baz']

In [90]: seq2 = ['one', 'two', 'three']

In [91]: zipped = zip(seq1, seq2)

In [92]: list(zipped)
Out[92]: [('foo', 'one'), ('bar', 'two'), ('baz', 'three')]
```

`zip` can take an arbitrary number of sequences, and the number of elements it produces is determined by the *shortest* sequence:

```
In [93]: seq3 = [False, True]

In [94]: list(zip(seq1, seq2, seq3))
Out[94]: [('foo', 'one', False), ('bar', 'two', True)]
```

A very common use of `zip` is simultaneously iterating over multiple sequences, possibly also combined with `enumerate`:

```
In [95]: for i, (a, b) in enumerate(zip(seq1, seq2)):
   ....:     print('{0}: {1}, {2}'.format(i, a, b))
   ....:
0: foo, one
1: bar, two
2: baz, three
```

Given a "zipped" sequence, `zip` can be applied in a clever way to "unzip" the sequence. Another way to think about this is converting a list of *rows* into a list of *columns*. The syntax, which looks a bit magical, is:

```
In [96]: pitchers = [('Nolan', 'Ryan'), ('Roger', 'Clemens'),
```

```
   ....:            ('Schilling', 'Curt')]

In [97]: first_names, last_names = zip(*pitchers)

In [98]: first_names
Out[98]: ('Nolan', 'Roger', 'Schilling')

In [99]: last_names
Out[99]: ('Ryan', 'Clemens', 'Curt')
```

reversed

`reversed` iterates over the elements of a sequence in reverse order:

```
In [100]: list(reversed(range(10)))
Out[100]: [9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0]
```

Keep in mind that `reversed` is a generator (to be discussed in some more detail later), so it does not create the reversed sequence until materialized (e.g., with `list` or a `for` loop).

dict

`dict` is likely the most important built-in Python data structure. A more common name for it is *hash map* or *associative array*. It is a flexibly sized collection of *key-value* pairs, where *key* and *value* are Python objects. One approach for creating one is to use curly braces `{}` and colons to separate keys and values:

```
In [101]: empty_dict = {}

In [102]: d1 = {'a' : 'some value', 'b' : [1, 2, 3, 4]}

In [103]: d1
Out[103]: {'a': 'some value', 'b': [1, 2, 3, 4]}
```

You can access, insert, or set elements using the same syntax as for accessing elements of a list or tuple:

```
In [104]: d1[7] = 'an integer'

In [105]: d1
Out[105]: {'a': 'some value', 'b': [1, 2, 3, 4], 7: 'an integer'}

In [106]: d1['b']
Out[106]: [1, 2, 3, 4]
```

You can check if a dict contains a key using the same syntax used for checking whether a list or tuple contains a value:

```
In [107]: 'b' in d1
Out[107]: True
```

You can delete values either using the `del` keyword or the `pop` method (which simultaneously returns the value and deletes the key):

```
In [108]: d1[5] = 'some value'

In [109]: d1
Out[109]:
{'a': 'some value',
 'b': [1, 2, 3, 4],
 7: 'an integer',
```

```
 5: 'some value'}

In [110]: d1['dummy'] = 'another value'

In [111]: d1
Out[111]:
{'a': 'some value',
 'b': [1, 2, 3, 4],
 7: 'an integer',
 5: 'some value',
 'dummy': 'another value'}

In [112]: del d1[5]

In [113]: d1
Out[113]:
{'a': 'some value',
 'b': [1, 2, 3, 4],
 7: 'an integer',
 'dummy': 'another value'}

In [114]: ret = d1.pop('dummy')

In [115]: ret
Out[115]: 'another value'

In [116]: d1
Out[116]: {'a': 'some value', 'b': [1, 2, 3, 4], 7: 'an integer'}
```

The `keys` and `values` method give you iterators of the dict's keys and values, respectively. While the key-value pairs are not in any particular order, these functions output the keys and values in the same order:

```
In [117]: list(d1.keys())
Out[117]: ['a', 'b', 7]

In [118]: list(d1.values())
Out[118]: ['some value', [1, 2, 3, 4], 'an integer']
```

You can merge one dict into another using the `update` method:

```
In [119]: d1.update({'b' : 'foo', 'c' : 12})

In [120]: d1
Out[120]: {'a': 'some value', 'b': 'foo', 7: 'an integer', 'c': 12}
```

The `update` method changes dicts in-place, so any existing keys in the data passed to `update` will have their old values discarded.

Creating dicts from sequences

It's common to occasionally end up with two sequences that you want to pair up element-wise in a dict. As a first cut, you might write code like this:

```
mapping = {}
for key, value in zip(key_list, value_list):
    mapping[key] = value
```

Since a dict is essentially a collection of 2-tuples, the `dict` function accepts a list of 2-tuples:

```
In [121]: mapping = dict(zip(range(5), reversed(range(5))))

In [122]: mapping
Out[122]: {0: 4, 1: 3, 2: 2, 3: 1, 4: 0}
```

Later we'll talk about *dict comprehensions*, another elegant way to construct dicts.

Default values

It's very common to have logic like:

```
if key in some_dict:
    value = some_dict[key]
else:
    value = default_value
```

Thus, the dict methods `get` and `pop` can take a default value to be returned, so that the above `if-else` block can be written simply as:

```
value = some_dict.get(key, default_value)
```

`get` by default will return `None` if the key is not present, while `pop` will raise an exception. With *setting* values, a common case is for the values in a dict to be other collections, like lists. For example, you could imagine categorizing a list of words by their first letters as a dict of lists:

```
In [123]: words = ['apple', 'bat', 'bar', 'atom', 'book']
```

```
In [124]: by_letter = {}

In [125]: for word in words:
   .....:     letter = word[0]
   .....:     if letter not in by_letter:
   .....:         by_letter[letter] = [word]
   .....:     else:
   .....:         by_letter[letter].append(word)
   .....:

In [126]: by_letter
Out[126]: {'a': ['apple', 'atom'], 'b': ['bat', 'bar', 'book']}
```

The `setdefault` dict method is for precisely this purpose. The preceding `for` loop can be rewritten as:

```
for word in words:
    letter = word[0]
    by_letter.setdefault(letter, []).append(word)
```

The built-in `collections` module has a useful class, `defaultdict`, which makes this even easier. To create one, you pass a type or function for generating the default value for each slot in the dict:

```
from collections import defaultdict
by_letter = defaultdict(list)
for word in words:
    by_letter[word[0]].append(word)
```

Valid dict key types

While the values of a dict can be any Python object, the keys generally have to be immutable objects like scalar types (int, float, string) or tuples (all the objects in the tuple need to be immutable, too). The technical term here is *hashability*. You can check whether an object is hashable (can be used as a key in a dict) with the `hash` function:

```
In [127]: hash('string')
Out[127]: 5023931463650008331

In [128]: hash((1, 2, (2, 3)))
Out[128]: 1097636502276347782

In [129]: hash((1, 2, [2, 3])) # fails because lists are mutable
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
TypeError                                 Traceback (most recent call last)
```

```
<ipython-input-129-800cd14ba8be> in <module>()
----> 1 hash((1, 2, [2, 3])) # fails because lists are mutable
TypeError: unhashable type: 'list'
```

To use a list as a key, one option is to convert it to a tuple, which can be hashed as long as its elements also can:

```
In [130]: d = {}

In [131]: d[tuple([1, 2, 3])] = 5

In [132]: d
Out[132]: {(1, 2, 3): 5}
```

set

A set is an unordered collection of unique elements. You can think of them like dicts, but keys only, no values. A set can be created in two ways: via the `set` function or via a *set literal* with curly braces:

```
In [133]: set([2, 2, 2, 1, 3, 3])
Out[133]: {1, 2, 3}

In [134]: {2, 2, 2, 1, 3, 3}
Out[134]: {1, 2, 3}
```

Sets support mathematical *set operations* like union, intersection, difference, and symmetric difference. Consider these two example sets:

```
In [135]: a = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5}

In [136]: b = {3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8}
```

The union of these two sets is the set of distinct elements occurring in either set. This can be computed with either the `union` method or the `|` binary operator:

```
In [137]: a.union(b)
Out[137]: {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8}

In [138]: a | b
Out[138]: {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8}
```

The intersection contains the elements occurring in both sets. The `&` operator or the `intersection` method can be used:

```
In [139]: a.intersection(b)
Out[139]: {3, 4, 5}

In [140]: a & b
Out[140]: {3, 4, 5}
```

See Table 3-1 for a list of commonly used set methods.

Table 3-1. Python set operations

Table 3-1. Python set operations

Function	Alternative syntax	Description
`a.add(x)`	N/A	Add element `x` to the set `a`
`a.clear()`	N/A	Reset the set `a` to an empty state, discarding all of its elements
`a.remove(x)`	N/A	Remove element `x` from the set `a`
`a.pop()`	N/A	Remove an arbitrary element from the set `a`, raising `KeyError` if the set is empty
`a.union(b)`	`a | b`	All of the unique elements in `a` and `b`
`a.update(b)`	`a |= b`	Set the contents of `a` to be the union of the elements in `a` and `b`
`a.intersection(b)`	`a & b`	All of the elements in *both* `a` and `b`
`a.intersection_update(b)`	`a &= b`	Set the contents of `a` to be the intersection of the elements in `a` and `b`
`a.difference(b)`	`a - b`	The elements in `a` that are not in `b`
`a.difference_update(b)`	`a -= b`	Set `a` to the elements in `a` that are not in `b`
`a.symmetric_difference(b)`	`a ^ b`	All of the elements in either `a` or `b` but *not both*
`a.symmetric_difference_update(b)`	`a ^= b`	Set `a` to contain the elements in either `a` or `b` but *not both*
`a.issubset(b)`	N/A	`True` if the elements of `a` are all contained in `b`
`a.issuperset(b)`	N/A	`True` if the elements of `b` are all contained in `a`
`a.isdisjoint(b)`	N/A	`True` if `a` and `b` have no elements in common

All of the logical set operations have in-place counterparts, which enable you to replace the contents of the set on the left side of the operation with the result. For very large sets, this may be more efficient:

```
In [141]: c = a.copy()

In [142]: c |= b
```

```
In [143]: c
Out[143]: {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8}

In [144]: d = a.copy()

In [145]: d &= b

In [146]: d
Out[146]: {3, 4, 5}
```

Like dicts, set elements generally must be immutable. To have list-like elements, you must convert it to a tuple:

```
In [147]: my_data = [1, 2, 3, 4]

In [148]: my_set = {tuple(my_data)}

In [149]: my_set
Out[149]: {(1, 2, 3, 4)}
```

You can also check if a set is a subset of (is contained in) or a superset of (contains all elements of) another set:

```
In [150]: a_set = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5}

In [151]: {1, 2, 3}.issubset(a_set)
Out[151]: True

In [152]: a_set.issuperset({1, 2, 3})
Out[152]: True
```

Sets are equal if and only if their contents are equal:

```
In [153]: {1, 2, 3} == {3, 2, 1}
Out[153]: True
```

List, Set, and Dict Comprehensions

List comprehensions are one of the most-loved Python language features. They allow you to concisely form a new list by filtering the elements of a collection, transforming the elements passing the filter in one concise expression. They take the basic form:

```
[expr for val in collection if condition]
```

This is equivalent to the following `for` loop:

```
result = []
for val in collection:
    if condition:
        result.append(expr)
```

The filter condition can be omitted, leaving only the expression. For example, given a list of strings, we could filter out strings with length 2 or less and also convert them to uppercase like this:

```
In [154]: strings = ['a', 'as', 'bat', 'car', 'dove', 'python']

In [155]: [x.upper() for x in strings if len(x) > 2]
Out[155]: ['BAT', 'CAR', 'DOVE', 'PYTHON']
```

Set and dict comprehensions are a natural extension, producing sets and dicts in an idiomatically similar way instead of lists. A dict comprehension looks like this:

```
dict_comp = {key-expr : value-expr for value in collection
             if condition}
```

A set comprehension looks like the equivalent list comprehension except with curly braces instead of square brackets:

```
set_comp = {expr for value in collection if condition}
```

Like list comprehensions, set and dict comprehensions are mostly conveniences, but they similarly can make code both easier to write and read. Consider the list of strings from before. Suppose we wanted a set containing just the lengths of the strings contained in the collection; we could easily compute this using a set comprehension:

```
In [156]: unique_lengths = {len(x) for x in strings}

In [157]: unique_lengths
Out[157]: {1, 2, 3, 4, 6}
```

We could also express this more functionally using the `map` function, introduced shortly:

```
In [158]: set(map(len, strings))
Out[158]: {1, 2, 3, 4, 6}
```

As a simple dict comprehension example, we could create a lookup map of these strings to their locations in the list:

```
In [159]: loc_mapping = {val : index for index, val in enumerate(strings)}

In [160]: loc_mapping
Out[160]: {'a': 0, 'as': 1, 'bat': 2, 'car': 3, 'dove': 4, 'python': 5}
```

Nested list comprehensions

Suppose we have a list of lists containing some English and Spanish names:

```
In [161]: all_data = [['John', 'Emily', 'Michael', 'Mary', 'Steven'],
   .....:             ['Maria', 'Juan', 'Javier', 'Natalia', 'Pilar']]
```

You might have gotten these names from a couple of files and decided to organize them by language. Now, suppose we wanted to get a single list containing all names with two or more `e`'s in them. We could certainly do this with a simple `for` loop:

```
names_of_interest = []
for names in all_data:
    enough_es = [name for name in names if name.count('e') >= 2]
    names_of_interest.extend(enough_es)
```

You can actually wrap this whole operation up in a single *nested list comprehension*, which will look like:

```
In [162]: result = [name for names in all_data for name in names
   .....:            if name.count('e') >= 2]

In [163]: result
Out[163]: ['Steven']
```

At first, nested list comprehensions are a bit hard to wrap your head around. The `for` parts of the list comprehension are arranged according to the order of nesting, and any filter condition is put at the end as before. Here is another example where we "flatten" a list of tuples of integers into a simple list of integers:

```
In [164]: some_tuples = [(1, 2, 3), (4, 5, 6), (7, 8, 9)]

In [165]: flattened = [x for tup in some_tuples for x in tup]

In [166]: flattened
Out[166]: [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
```

Keep in mind that the order of the `for` expressions would be the same if you wrote a nested `for` loop instead of a list comprehension:

```
flattened = []

for tup in some_tuples:
    for x in tup:
        flattened.append(x)
```

You can have arbitrarily many levels of nesting, though if you have more than two or three levels of nesting you should probably start to question whether this makes sense from a code readability standpoint. It's important to distinguish the syntax just shown from a list comprehension inside a list comprehension, which is also perfectly valid:

```
In [167]: [[x for x in tup] for tup in some_tuples]
Out[167]: [[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6], [7, 8, 9]]
```

This produces a list of lists, rather than a flattened list of all of the inner elements.

3.2 Functions

Functions are the primary and most important method of code organization and reuse in Python. As a rule of thumb, if you anticipate needing to repeat the same or very similar code more than once, it may be worth writing a reusable function. Functions can also help make your code more readable by giving a name to a group of Python statements.

Functions are declared with the `def` keyword and returned from with the `return` keyword:

```
def my_function(x, y, z=1.5):
    if z > 1:
        return z * (x + y)
    else:
        return z / (x + y)
```

There is no issue with having multiple `return` statements. If Python reaches the end of a function without encountering a `return` statement, `None` is returned automatically.

Each function can have *positional* arguments and *keyword* arguments. Keyword arguments are most commonly used to specify default values or optional arguments. In the preceding function, `x` and `y` are positional arguments while `z` is a keyword argument. This means that the function can be called in any of these ways:

```
my_function(5, 6, z=0.7)
my_function(3.14, 7, 3.5)
my_function(10, 20)
```

The main restriction on function arguments is that the keyword arguments *must* follow the positional arguments (if any). You can specify keyword arguments in any order; this frees you from having to remember which order the function arguments were specified in and only what their names are.

NOTE

It is possible to use keywords for passing positional arguments as well. In the preceding example, we could also have written:

```
my_function(x=5, y=6, z=7)
my_function(y=6, x=5, z=7)
```

In some cases this can help with readability.

Namespaces, Scope, and Local Functions

Functions can access variables in two different scopes: *global* and *local*. An alternative and more descriptive name describing a variable scope in Python is a *namespace*. Any variables that are assigned within a function by default are assigned to the local namespace. The local namespace is created when the function is called and immediately populated by the function's arguments. After the function is finished, the local namespace is destroyed (with some exceptions that are outside the purview of this chapter). Consider the following function:

```
def func():
    a = []
    for i in range(5):
        a.append(i)
```

When `func()` is called, the empty list `a` is created, five elements are appended, and then `a` is destroyed when the function exits. Suppose instead we had declared `a` as follows:

```
a = []
def func():
    for i in range(5):
        a.append(i)
```

Assigning variables outside of the function's scope is possible, but those variables must be declared as global via the `global` keyword:

```
In [168]: a = None

In [169]: def bind_a_variable():
   .....:     global a
   .....:     a = []
   .....: bind_a_variable()
   .....:

In [170]: print(a)
[]
```

CAUTION

I generally discourage use of the `global` keyword. Typically global variables are used to store some kind of state in a system. If you find yourself using a lot of them, it may indicate a need for object-oriented programming (using classes).

Returning Multiple Values

When I first programmed in Python after having programmed in Java and C++, one of my favorite features was the ability to return multiple values from a function with simple syntax. Here's an example:

```
def f():
    a = 5
    b = 6
    c = 7
    return a, b, c

a, b, c = f()
```

In data analysis and other scientific applications, you may find yourself doing this often. What's happening here is that the function is actually just returning *one* object, namely a tuple, which is then being unpacked into the result variables. In the preceding example, we could have done this instead:

```
return_value = f()
```

In this case, `return_value` would be a 3-tuple with the three returned variables. A potentially attractive alternative to returning multiple values like before might be to return a dict instead:

```
def f():
    a = 5
    b = 6
    c = 7
    return {'a' : a, 'b' : b, 'c' : c}
```

This alternative technique can be useful depending on what you are trying to do.

Functions Are Objects

Since Python functions are objects, many constructs can be easily expressed that are difficult to do in other languages. Suppose we were doing some data cleaning and needed to apply a bunch of transformations to the following list of strings:

```
In [171]: states = ['   Alabama ', 'Georgia!', 'Georgia', 'georgia',
'FlOrIda',
   .....:           'south   carolina##', 'West virginia?']
```

Anyone who has ever worked with user-submitted survey data has seen messy results like these. Lots of things need to happen to make this list of strings uniform and ready for analysis: stripping whitespace, removing punctuation symbols, and standardizing on proper capitalization. One way to do this is to use built-in string methods along with the `re` standard library module for regular expressions:

```
import re

def clean_strings(strings):
    result = []
    for value in strings:
        value = value.strip()
        value = re.sub('[!#?]', '', value)
        value = value.title()
        result.append(value)
    return result
```

The result looks like this:

```
In [173]: clean_strings(states)
Out[173]:
['Alabama',
 'Georgia',
 'Georgia',
 'Georgia',
 'Florida',
 'South   Carolina',
 'West Virginia']
```

An alternative approach that you may find useful is to make a list of the operations you want to apply to a particular set of strings:

```
def remove_punctuation(value):
    return re.sub('[!#?]', '', value)

clean_ops = [str.strip, remove_punctuation, str.title]

def clean_strings(strings, ops):
    result = []
    for value in strings:
        for function in ops:
            value = function(value)
        result.append(value)
    return result
```

Then we have the following:

```
In [175]: clean_strings(states, clean_ops)
Out[175]:
['Alabama',
 'Georgia',
 'Georgia',
 'Georgia',
 'Florida',
 'South   Carolina',
 'West Virginia']
```

A more *functional* pattern like this enables you to easily modify how the strings are transformed at a very high level. The `clean_strings` function is also now more reusable and generic.

You can use functions as arguments to other functions like the built-in `map` function, which applies a function to a sequence of some kind:

```
In [176]: for x in map(remove_punctuation, states):
   .....:     print(x)
Alabama
Georgia
Georgia
georgia
FlOrIda
south   carolina
West virginia
```

Anonymous (Lambda) Functions

Python has support for so-called *anonymous* or *lambda* functions, which are a way of writing functions consisting of a single statement, the result of which is the return value. They are defined with the `lambda` keyword, which has no meaning other than "we are declaring an anonymous function":

```
def short_function(x):
    return x * 2

equiv_anon = lambda x: x * 2
```

I usually refer to these as lambda functions in the rest of the book. They are especially convenient in data analysis because, as you'll see, there are many cases where data transformation functions will take functions as arguments. It's often less typing (and clearer) to pass a lambda function as opposed to writing a full-out function declaration or even assigning the lambda function to a local variable. For example, consider this silly example:

```
def apply_to_list(some_list, f):
    return [f(x) for x in some_list]

ints = [4, 0, 1, 5, 6]
apply_to_list(ints, lambda x: x * 2)
```

You could also have written `[x * 2 for x in ints]`, but here we were able to succinctly pass a custom operator to the `apply_to_list` function.

As another example, suppose you wanted to sort a collection of strings by the number of distinct letters in each string:

```
In [177]: strings = ['foo', 'card', 'bar', 'aaaa', 'abab']
```

Here we could pass a lambda function to the list's `sort` method:

```
In [178]: strings.sort(key=lambda x: len(set(list(x))))

In [179]: strings
Out[179]: ['aaaa', 'foo', 'abab', 'bar', 'card']
```

NOTE

One reason lambda functions are called anonymous functions is that , unlike functions declared with the `def` keyword, the function object itself is never given an explicit `__name__` attribute.

Currying: Partial Argument Application

Currying is computer science jargon (named after the mathematician Haskell Curry) that means deriving new functions from existing ones by *partial argument application*. For example, suppose we had a trivial function that adds two numbers together:

```
def add_numbers(x, y):
    return x + y
```

Using this function, we could derive a new function of one variable, `add_five`, that adds 5 to its argument:

```
add_five = lambda y: add_numbers(5, y)
```

The second argument to `add_numbers` is said to be *curried*. There's nothing very fancy here, as all we've really done is define a new function that calls an existing function. The built-in `functools` module can simplify this process using the `partial` function:

```
from functools import partial
add_five = partial(add_numbers, 5)
```

Generators

Having a consistent way to iterate over sequences, like objects in a list or lines in a file, is an important Python feature. This is accomplished by means of the *iterator protocol*, a generic way to make objects iterable. For example, iterating over a dict yields the dict keys:

```
In [180]: some_dict = {'a': 1, 'b': 2, 'c': 3}

In [181]: for key in some_dict:
   .....:     print(key)
a
b
c
```

When you write `for key in some_dict`, the Python interpreter first attempts to create an iterator out of `some_dict`:

```
In [182]: dict_iterator = iter(some_dict)

In [183]: dict_iterator
Out[183]: <dict_keyiterator at 0x7fbbd5a9f908>
```

An iterator is any object that will yield objects to the Python interpreter when used in a context like a `for` loop. Most methods expecting a list or list-like object will also accept any iterable object. This includes built-in methods such as `min`, `max`, and `sum`, and type constructors like `list` and `tuple`:

```
In [184]: list(dict_iterator)
Out[184]: ['a', 'b', 'c']
```

A *generator* is a concise way to construct a new iterable object. Whereas normal functions execute and return a single result at a time, generators return a sequence of multiple results lazily, pausing after each one until the next one is requested. To create a generator, use the `yield` keyword instead of `return` in a function:

```
def squares(n=10):
    print('Generating squares from 1 to {0}'.format(n ** 2))
```

```
    for i in range(1, n + 1):
        yield i ** 2
```

When you actually call the generator, no code is immediately executed:

```
In [186]: gen = squares()

In [187]: gen
Out[187]: <generator object squares at 0x7fbbd5ab4570>
```

It is not until you request elements from the generator that it begins executing its code:

```
In [188]: for x in gen:
   .....:     print(x, end=' ')
Generating squares from 1 to 100
1 4 9 16 25 36 49 64 81 100
```

Generator expresssions

Another even more concise way to make a generator is by using a *generator expression*. This is a generator analogue to list, dict, and set comprehensions; to create one, enclose what would otherwise be a list comprehension within parentheses instead of brackets:

```
In [189]: gen = (x ** 2 for x in range(100))

In [190]: gen
Out[190]: <generator object <genexpr> at 0x7fbbd5ab29e8>
```

This is completely equivalent to the following more verbose generator:

```
def _make_gen():
    for x in range(100):
        yield x ** 2
gen = _make_gen()
```

Generator expressions can be used instead of list comprehensions as function arguments in many cases:

```
In [191]: sum(x ** 2 for x in range(100))
Out[191]: 328350

In [192]: dict((i, i **2) for i in range(5))
```

```
Out[192]: {0: 0, 1: 1, 2: 4, 3: 9, 4: 16}
```

itertools module

The standard library `itertools` module has a collection of generators for many common data algorithms. For example, `groupby` takes any sequence and a function, grouping consecutive elements in the sequence by return value of the function. Here's an example:

```
In [193]: import itertools

In [194]: first_letter = lambda x: x[0]

In [195]: names = ['Alan', 'Adam', 'Wes', 'Will', 'Albert', 'Steven']

In [196]: for letter, names in itertools.groupby(names, first_letter):
   .....:     print(letter, list(names)) # names is a generator
A ['Alan', 'Adam']
W ['Wes', 'Will']
A ['Albert']
S ['Steven']
```

See Table 3-2 for a list of a few other `itertools` functions I've frequently found helpful. You may like to check out the official Python documentation for more on this useful built-in utility module.

Table 3-2. Some useful itertools functions

Function	Description
`combinations(iterable, k)`	Generates a sequence of all possible `k`-tuples of elements in the iterable, ignoring order and without replacement (see also the companion function `combinations_with_replacement`)
`permutations(iterable, k)`	Generates a sequence of all possible `k`-tuples of elements in the iterable, respecting order
`groupby(iterable[, keyfunc])`	Generates `(key, sub-iterator)` for each unique key
`product(*iterables, repeat=1)`	Generates the Cartesian product of the input iterables as tuples, similar to a nested `for` loop

Errors and Exception Handling

Handling Python errors or *exceptions* gracefully is an important part of building robust programs. In data analysis applications, many functions only work on certain kinds of input. As an example, Python's `float` function is capable of casting a string to a floating-point number, but fails with `ValueError` on improper inputs:

```
In [197]: float('1.2345')
Out[197]: 1.2345

In [198]: float('something')
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
ValueError                                Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-198-439904410854> in <module>()
----> 1 float('something')
ValueError: could not convert string to float: 'something'
```

Suppose we wanted a version of `float` that fails gracefully, returning the input argument. We can do this by writing a function that encloses the call to `float` in a `try/except` block:

```
def attempt_float(x):
    try:
        return float(x)
    except:
        return x
```

The code in the `except` part of the block will only be executed if `float(x)` raises an exception:

```
In [200]: attempt_float('1.2345')
Out[200]: 1.2345

In [201]: attempt_float('something')
Out[201]: 'something'
```

You might notice that `float` can raise exceptions other than `ValueError`:

```
In [202]: float((1, 2))
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

```
TypeError                                 Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-202-842079ebb635> in <module>()
----> 1 float((1, 2))
TypeError: float() argument must be a string or a number, not 'tuple'
```

You might want to only suppress `ValueError`, since a `TypeError` (the input was not a string or numeric value) might indicate a legitimate bug in your program. To do that, write the exception type after `except`:

```
def attempt_float(x):
    try:
        return float(x)
    except ValueError:
        return x
```

We have then:

```
In [204]: attempt_float((1, 2))
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
TypeError                                 Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-204-9bdfd730cead> in <module>()
----> 1 attempt_float((1, 2))
<ipython-input-203-3e06b8379b6b> in attempt_float(x)
      1 def attempt_float(x):
      2     try:
----> 3         return float(x)
      4     except ValueError:
      5         return x
TypeError: float() argument must be a string or a number, not 'tuple'
```

You can catch multiple exception types by writing a tuple of exception types instead (the parentheses are required):

```
def attempt_float(x):
    try:
        return float(x)
    except (TypeError, ValueError):
        return x
```

In some cases, you may not want to suppress an exception, but you want some code to be executed regardless of whether the code in the `try` block succeeds or not. To do this, use `finally`:

```
f = open(path, 'w')
```

```python
try:
    write_to_file(f)
finally:
    f.close()
```

Here, the file handle `f` will *always* get closed. Similarly, you can have code that executes only if the `try:` block succeeds using `else`:

```python
f = open(path, 'w')

try:
    write_to_file(f)
except:
    print('Failed')
else:
    print('Succeeded')
finally:
    f.close()
```

Exceptions in IPython

If an exception is raised while you are `%run`-ing a script or executing any statement, IPython will by default print a full call stack trace (traceback) with a few lines of context around the position at each point in the stack:

```
In [10]: %run examples/ipython_bug.py
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
AssertionError                            Traceback (most recent call last)
/home/wesm/code/pydata-book/examples/ipython_bug.py in <module>()
     13     throws_an_exception()
     14
---> 15 calling_things()

/home/wesm/code/pydata-book/examples/ipython_bug.py in calling_things()
     11 def calling_things():
     12     works_fine()
---> 13     throws_an_exception()
     14
     15 calling_things()

/home/wesm/code/pydata-book/examples/ipython_bug.py in throws_an_exception()
      7     a = 5
      8     b = 6
----> 9     assert(a + b == 10)
     10
     11 def calling_things():

AssertionError:
```

Having additional context by itself is a big advantage over the standard Python interpreter (which does not provide any additional context). You can control the amount of context shown using the `%xmode` magic command, from `Plain` (same as the standard Python interpreter) to `Verbose` (which inlines function argument values and more). As you will see later in the chapter, you can step *into the stack* (using the `%debug` or `%pdb` magics) after an error has occurred for interactive post-mortem debugging.

3.3 Files and the Operating System

Most of this book uses high-level tools like `pandas.read_csv` to read data files from disk into Python data structures. However, it's important to understand the basics of how to work with files in Python. Fortunately, it's very simple, which is one reason why Python is so popular for text and file munging.

To open a file for reading or writing, use the built-in `open` function with either a relative or absolute file path:

```
In [207]: path = 'examples/segismundo.txt'

In [208]: f = open(path)
```

By default, the file is opened in read-only mode `'r'`. We can then treat the file handle `f` like a list and iterate over the lines like so:

```
for line in f:
    pass
```

The lines come out of the file with the end-of-line (EOL) markers intact, so you'll often see code to get an EOL-free list of lines in a file like:

```
In [209]: lines = [x.rstrip() for x in open(path)]

In [210]: lines
Out[210]:
['Sueña el rico en su riqueza,',
 'que más cuidados le ofrece;',
 '',
 'sueña el pobre que padece',
 'su miseria y su pobreza;',
 '',
 'sueña el que a medrar empieza,',
 'sueña el que afana y pretende,',
 'sueña el que agravia y ofende,',
 '',
 'y en el mundo, en conclusión,',
 'todos sueñan lo que son,',
 'aunque ninguno lo entiende.',
 '']
```

When you use `open` to create file objects, it is important to explicitly close the file when you are finished with it. Closing the file releases its resources back to the operating system:

```
In [211]: f.close()
```

One of the ways to make it easier to clean up open files is to use the `with` statement:

```
In [212]: with open(path) as f:
   .....:     lines = [x.rstrip() for x in f]
```

This will automatically close the file `f` when exiting the `with` block.

If we had typed `f = open(path, 'w')`, a *new file* at *examples/segismundo.txt* would have been created (be careful!), overwriting any one in its place. There is also the `'x'` file mode, which creates a writable file but fails if the file path already exists. See Table 3-3 for a list of all valid file read/write modes.

For readable files, some of the most commonly used methods are `read`, `seek`, and `tell`. `read` returns a certain number of characters from the file. What constitutes a "character" is determined by the file's encoding (e.g., UTF-8) or simply raw bytes if the file is opened in binary mode:

```
In [213]: f = open(path)

In [214]: f.read(10)
Out[214]: 'Sueña el r'

In [215]: f2 = open(path, 'rb')  # Binary mode

In [216]: f2.read(10)
Out[216]: b'Sue\xc3\xb1a el '
```

The `read` method advances the file handle's position by the number of bytes read. `tell` gives you the current position:

```
In [217]: f.tell()
Out[217]: 11

In [218]: f2.tell()
```

```
Out[218]: 10
```

Even though we read 10 characters from the file, the position is 11 because it took that many bytes to decode 10 characters using the default encoding. You can check the default encoding in the `sys` module:

```
In [219]: import sys

In [220]: sys.getdefaultencoding()
Out[220]: 'utf-8'
```

`seek` changes the file position to the indicated byte in the file:

```
In [221]: f.seek(3)
Out[221]: 3

In [222]: f.read(1)
Out[222]: 'ñ'
```

Lastly, we remember to close the files:

```
In [223]: f.close()

In [224]: f2.close()
```

Table 3-3. Python file modes

Mode	Description
`r`	Read-only mode
`w`	Write-only mode; creates a new file (erasing the data for any file with the same name)
`x`	Write-only mode; creates a new file, but fails if the file path already exists
`a`	Append to existing file (create the file if it does not already exist)
`r+`	Read and write
`b`	Add to mode for binary files (i.e., `'rb'` or `'wb'`)
`t`	Text mode for files (automatically decoding bytes to Unicode). This is the default if not specified. Add `t` to other modes to use this (i.e., `'rt'` or `'xt'`)

To write text to a file, you can use the file's `write` or `writelines` methods. For example, we could create a version of *prof_mod.py* with no blank lines like so:

```
In [225]: with open('tmp.txt', 'w') as handle:
   .....:     handle.writelines(x for x in open(path) if len(x) > 1)

In [226]: with open('tmp.txt') as f:
   .....:     lines = f.readlines()

In [227]: lines
Out[227]:
['Sueña el rico en su riqueza,\n',
 'que más cuidados le ofrece;\n',
 'sueña el pobre que padece\n',
 'su miseria y su pobreza;\n',
 'sueña el que a medrar empieza,\n',
 'sueña el que afana y pretende,\n',
 'sueña el que agravia y ofende,\n',
 'y en el mundo, en conclusión,\n',
 'todos sueñan lo que son,\n',
 'aunque ninguno lo entiende.\n']
```

See Table 3-4 for many of the most commonly used file methods.

Table 3-4. Important Python file methods or attributes

Method	Description
`read([size])`	Return data from file as a string, with optional `size` argument indicating the number of bytes to read
`readlines([size])`	Return list of lines in the file, with optional `size` argument
`write(str)`	Write passed string to file
`writelines(strings)`	Write passed sequence of strings to the file
`close()`	Close the handle
`flush()`	Flush the internal I/O buffer to disk
`seek(pos)`	Move to indicated file position (integer)
`tell()`	Return current file position as integer
`closed`	`True` if the file is closed

Bytes and Unicode with Files

The default behavior for Python files (whether readable or writable) is *text mode*, which means that you intend to work with Python strings (i.e., Unicode). This contrasts with *binary mode*, which you can obtain by appending `b` onto the file mode. Let's look at the file (which contains non-ASCII characters with UTF-8 encoding) from the previous section:

```
In [230]: with open(path) as f:
   .....:     chars = f.read(10)

In [231]: chars
Out[231]: 'Sueña el r'
```

UTF-8 is a variable-length Unicode encoding, so when I requested some number of characters from the file, Python reads enough bytes (which could be as few as 10 or as many as 40 bytes) from the file to decode that many characters. If I open the file in `'rb'` mode instead, `read` requests exact numbers of bytes:

```
In [232]: with open(path, 'rb') as f:
   .....:     data = f.read(10)

In [233]: data
Out[233]: b'Sue\xc3\xb1a el '
```

Depending on the text encoding, you may be able to decode the bytes to a `str` object yourself, but only if each of the encoded Unicode characters is fully formed:

```
In [234]: data.decode('utf8')
Out[234]: 'Sueña el '

In [235]: data[:4].decode('utf8')
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
UnicodeDecodeError                        Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-235-300e0af10bb7> in <module>()
----> 1 data[:4].decode('utf8')
UnicodeDecodeError: 'utf-8' codec can't decode byte 0xc3 in position 3:
unexpecte
d end of data
```

Text mode, combined with the `encoding` option of `open`, provides a convenient way to convert from one Unicode encoding to another:

```
In [236]: sink_path = 'sink.txt'

In [237]: with open(path) as source:
   .....:     with open(sink_path, 'xt', encoding='iso-8859-1') as sink:
   .....:         sink.write(source.read())

In [238]: with open(sink_path, encoding='iso-8859-1') as f:
   .....:     print(f.read(10))
Sueña el r
```

Beware using `seek` when opening files in any mode other than binary. If the file position falls in the middle of the bytes defining a Unicode character, then subsequent reads will result in an error:

```
In [240]: f = open(path)

In [241]: f.read(5)
Out[241]: 'Sueña'

In [242]: f.seek(4)
Out[242]: 4

In [243]: f.read(1)
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
UnicodeDecodeError                        Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-243-7841103e33f5> in <module>()
----> 1 f.read(1)
/miniconda/envs/book-env/lib/python3.6/codecs.py in decode(self, input,
final)
    319         # decode input (taking the buffer into account)
    320         data = self.buffer + input
--> 321         (result, consumed) = self._buffer_decode(data, self.errors,
final
)
    322         # keep undecoded input until the next call
    323         self.buffer = data[consumed:]
UnicodeDecodeError: 'utf-8' codec can't decode byte 0xb1 in position 0:
invalid s
tart byte

In [244]: f.close()
```

If you find yourself regularly doing data analysis on non-ASCII text data, mastering Python’s Unicode functionality will prove valuable. See Python’s online documentation for much more.

3.4 Conclusion

With some of the basics and the Python environment and language now under our belt, it’s time to move on and learn about NumPy and array-oriented computing in Python.

Chapter 4. NumPy Basics: Arrays and Vectorized Computation

NumPy, short for Numerical Python, is one of the most important foundational packages for numerical computing in Python. Most computational packages providing scientific functionality use NumPy's array objects as the *lingua franca* for data exchange.

Here are some of the things you'll find in NumPy:

- ndarray, an efficient multidimensional array providing fast array-oriented arithmetic operations and flexible *broadcasting* capabilities.

- Mathematical functions for fast operations on entire arrays of data without having to write loops.

- Tools for reading/writing array data to disk and working with memory-mapped files.

- Linear algebra, random number generation, and Fourier transform capabilities.

- A C API for connecting NumPy with libraries written in C, C++, or FORTRAN.

Because NumPy provides an easy-to-use C API, it is straightforward to pass data to external libraries written in a low-level language and also for external libraries to return data to Python as NumPy arrays. This feature has made Python a language of choice for wrapping legacy C/C++/Fortran codebases and giving them a dynamic and easy-to-use interface.

While NumPy by itself does not provide modeling or scientific functionality, having an understanding of NumPy arrays and array-oriented computing will help you use tools with array-oriented semantics, like pandas, much more effectively. Since NumPy is a large topic, I will cover many advanced

NumPy features like broadcasting in more depth later (see Appendix A).

For most data analysis applications, the main areas of functionality I'll focus on are:

- Fast vectorized array operations for data munging and cleaning, subsetting and filtering, transformation, and any other kinds of computations
- Common array algorithms like sorting, unique, and set operations
- Efficient descriptive statistics and aggregating/summarizing data
- Data alignment and relational data manipulations for merging and joining together heterogeneous datasets
- Expressing conditional logic as array expressions instead of loops with `if-elif-else` branches
- Group-wise data manipulations (aggregation, transformation, function application)

While NumPy provides a computational foundation for general numerical data processing, many readers will want to use pandas as the basis for most kinds of statistics or analytics, especially on tabular data. pandas also provides some more domain-specific functionality like time series manipulation, which is not present in NumPy.

> **NOTE**
>
> Array-oriented computing in Python traces its roots back to 1995, when Jim Hugunin created the Numeric library. Over the next 10 years, many scientific programming communities began doing array programming in Python, but the library ecosystem had become fragmented in the early 2000s. In 2005, Travis Oliphant was able to forge the NumPy project from the then Numeric and Numarray projects to bring the community together around a single array computing framework.

One of the reasons NumPy is so important for numerical computations in Python is because it is designed for efficiency on large arrays of data. There are a number of reasons for this:

- NumPy internally stores data in a contiguous block of memory, independent of other built-in Python objects. NumPy's library of algorithms written in the C language can operate on this memory without any type checking or other overhead. NumPy arrays also use much less memory than built-in Python sequences.

- NumPy operations perform complex computations on entire arrays without the need for Python `for` loops.

To give you an idea of the performance difference, consider a NumPy array of one million integers, and the equivalent Python list:

```
In [7]: import numpy as np

In [8]: my_arr = np.arange(1000000)

In [9]: my_list = list(range(1000000))
```

Now let's multiply each sequence by 2:

```
In [10]: %time for _ in range(10): my_arr2 = my_arr * 2
CPU times: user 20 ms, sys: 50 ms, total: 70 ms
Wall time: 72.4 ms

In [11]: %time for _ in range(10): my_list2 = [x * 2 for x in my_list]
CPU times: user 760 ms, sys: 290 ms, total: 1.05 s
Wall time: 1.05 s
```

NumPy-based algorithms are generally 10 to 100 times faster (or more) than their pure Python counterparts and use significantly less memory.

4.1 The NumPy ndarray: A Multidimensional Array Object

One of the key features of NumPy is its N-dimensional array object, or ndarray, which is a fast, flexible container for large datasets in Python. Arrays enable you to perform mathematical operations on whole blocks of data using similar syntax to the equivalent operations between scalar elements.

To give you a flavor of how NumPy enables batch computations with similar syntax to scalar values on built-in Python objects, I first import NumPy and generate a small array of random data:

```
In [12]: import numpy as np

# Generate some random data
In [13]: data = np.random.randn(2, 3)

In [14]: data
Out[14]:
array([[-0.2047,  0.4789, -0.5194],
       [-0.5557,  1.9658,  1.3934]])
```

I then write mathematical operations with `data`:

```
In [15]: data * 10
Out[15]:
array([[ -2.0471,   4.7894,  -5.1944],
       [ -5.5573,  19.6578,  13.9341]])

In [16]: data + data
Out[16]:
array([[-0.4094,  0.9579, -1.0389],
       [-1.1115,  3.9316,  2.7868]])
```

In the first example, all of the elements have been multiplied by 10. In the second, the corresponding values in each “cell” in the array have been added to each other.

NOTE

In this chapter and throughout the book, I use the standard NumPy convention of always using `import numpy as np`. You are, of course, welcome to put `from numpy import *` in your code to avoid having to write `np.`, but I advise against making a habit of this. The `numpy` namespace is large and contains a number of functions whose names conflict with built-in Python functions (like `min` and `max`).

An ndarray is a generic multidimensional container for homogeneous data; that is, all of the elements must be the same type. Every array has a `shape`, a tuple indicating the size of each dimension, and a `dtype`, an object describing the *data type* of the array:

```
In [17]: data.shape
Out[17]: (2, 3)

In [18]: data.dtype
Out[18]: dtype('float64')
```

This chapter will introduce you to the basics of using NumPy arrays, and should be sufficient for following along with the rest of the book. While it's not necessary to have a deep understanding of NumPy for many data analytical applications, becoming proficient in array-oriented programming and thinking is a key step along the way to becoming a scientific Python guru.

NOTE

Whenever you see "array," "NumPy array," or "ndarray" in the text, with few exceptions they all refer to the same thing: the ndarray object.

Creating ndarrays

The easiest way to create an array is to use the `array` function. This accepts any sequence-like object (including other arrays) and produces a new NumPy array containing the passed data. For example, a list is a good candidate for conversion:

```
In [19]: data1 = [6, 7.5, 8, 0, 1]

In [20]: arr1 = np.array(data1)

In [21]: arr1
Out[21]: array([ 6. ,  7.5,  8. ,  0. ,  1. ])
```

Nested sequences, like a list of equal-length lists, will be converted into a multidimensional array:

```
In [22]: data2 = [[1, 2, 3, 4], [5, 6, 7, 8]]

In [23]: arr2 = np.array(data2)

In [24]: arr2
Out[24]:
array([[1, 2, 3, 4],
       [5, 6, 7, 8]])
```

Since `data2` was a list of lists, the NumPy array `arr2` has two dimensions with shape inferred from the data. We can confirm this by inspecting the `ndim` and `shape` attributes:

```
In [25]: arr2.ndim
Out[25]: 2

In [26]: arr2.shape
Out[26]: (2, 4)
```

Unless explicitly specified (more on this later), `np.array` tries to infer a good data type for the array that it creates. The data type is stored in a special `dtype` metadata object; for example, in the previous two examples we have:

```
In [27]: arr1.dtype
```

```
Out[27]: dtype('float64')

In [28]: arr2.dtype
Out[28]: dtype('int64')
```

In addition to `np.array`, there are a number of other functions for creating new arrays. As examples, `zeros` and `ones` create arrays of 0s or 1s, respectively, with a given length or shape. `empty` creates an array without initializing its values to any particular value. To create a higher dimensional array with these methods, pass a tuple for the shape:

```
In [29]: np.zeros(10)
Out[29]: array([ 0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.])

In [30]: np.zeros((3, 6))
Out[30]:
array([[ 0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.],
       [ 0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.],
       [ 0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  0.]])

In [31]: np.empty((2, 3, 2))
Out[31]:
array([[[ 0.,  0.],
        [ 0.,  0.],
        [ 0.,  0.]],
       [[ 0.,  0.],
        [ 0.,  0.],
        [ 0.,  0.]]])
```

CAUTION

It's not safe to assume that `np.empty` will return an array of all zeros. In some cases, it may return uninitialized "garbage" values.

`arange` is an array-valued version of the built-in Python `range` function:

```
In [32]: np.arange(15)
Out[32]: array([ 0,  1,  2,  3,  4,  5,  6,  7,  8,  9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14])
```

See Table 4-1 for a short list of standard array creation functions. Since NumPy is focused on numerical computing, the data type, if not specified, will in many cases be `float64` (floating point).

Table 4-1. Array creation functions

Function	Description
`array`	Convert input data (list, tuple, array, or other sequence type) to an ndarray either by inferring a dtype or explicitly specifying a dtype; copies the input data by default
`asarray`	Convert input to ndarray, but do not copy if the input is already an ndarray
`arange`	Like the built-in `range` but returns an ndarray instead of a list
`ones`, `ones_like`	Produce an array of all 1s with the given shape and dtype; `ones_like` takes another array and produces a ones array of the same shape and dtype
`zeros`, `zeros_like`	Like `ones` and `ones_like` but producing arrays of 0s instead
`empty`, `empty_like`	Create new arrays by allocating new memory, but do not populate with any values like `ones` and `zeros`
`full`, `full_like`	Produce an array of the given shape and dtype with all values set to the indicated “fill value” `full_like` takes another array and produces a filled array of the same shape and dtype
`eye`, `identity`	Create a square N × N identity matrix (1s on the diagonal and 0s elsewhere)

Data Types for ndarrays

The *data type* or `dtype` is a special object containing the information (or *metadata*, data about data) the ndarray needs to interpret a chunk of memory as a particular type of data:

```
In [33]: arr1 = np.array([1, 2, 3], dtype=np.float64)

In [34]: arr2 = np.array([1, 2, 3], dtype=np.int32)

In [35]: arr1.dtype
Out[35]: dtype('float64')

In [36]: arr2.dtype
Out[36]: dtype('int32')
```

dtypes are a source of NumPy's flexibility for interacting with data coming from other systems. In most cases they provide a mapping directly onto an underlying disk or memory representation, which makes it easy to read and write binary streams of data to disk and also to connect to code written in a low-level language like C or Fortran. The numerical dtypes are named the same way: a type name, like `float` or `int`, followed by a number indicating the number of bits per element. A standard double-precision floating-point value (what's used under the hood in Python's `float` object) takes up 8 bytes or 64 bits. Thus, this type is known in NumPy as `float64`. See Table 4-2 for a full listing of NumPy's supported data types.

> **NOTE**
>
> Don't worry about memorizing the NumPy dtypes, especially if you're a new user. It's often only necessary to care about the general *kind* of data you're dealing with, whether floating point, complex, integer, boolean, string, or general Python object. When you need more control over how data are stored in memory and on disk, especially large datasets, it is good to know that you have control over the storage type.

Table 4-2. NumPy data types

Table 4-2. NumPy data types

Type	Type code	Description
`int8, uint8`	`i1, u1`	Signed and unsigned 8-bit (1 byte) integer types
`int16, uint16`	`i2, u2`	Signed and unsigned 16-bit integer types
`int32, uint32`	`i4, u4`	Signed and unsigned 32-bit integer types
`int64, uint64`	`i8, u8`	Signed and unsigned 64-bit integer types
`float16`	`f2`	Half-precision floating point
`float32`	`f4` or `f`	Standard single-precision floating point; compatible with C float
`float64`	`f8` or `d`	Standard double-precision floating point; compatible with C double and Python `float` object
`float128`	`f16` or `g`	Extended-precision floating point
`complex64`, `complex128`, `complex256`	`c8, c16, c32`	Complex numbers represented by two 32, 64, or 128 floats, respectively
`bool`	?	Boolean type storing `True` and `False` values
`object`	O	Python object type; a value can be any Python object
`string_`	S	Fixed-length ASCII string type (1 byte per character); for example, to create a string dtype with length 10, use `'S10'`
`unicode_`	U	Fixed-length Unicode type (number of bytes platform specific); same specification semantics as `string_` (e.g., `'U10'`)

You can explicitly convert or *cast* an array from one dtype to another using ndarray's `astype` method:

```
In [37]: arr = np.array([1, 2, 3, 4, 5])

In [38]: arr.dtype
Out[38]: dtype('int64')

In [39]: float_arr = arr.astype(np.float64)

In [40]: float_arr.dtype
Out[40]: dtype('float64')
```

In this example, integers were cast to floating point. If I cast some floating-point numbers to be of integer dtype, the decimal part will be truncated:

```
In [41]: arr = np.array([3.7, -1.2, -2.6, 0.5, 12.9, 10.1])

In [42]: arr
Out[42]: array([  3.7,  -1.2,  -2.6,   0.5,  12.9,  10.1])

In [43]: arr.astype(np.int32)
Out[43]: array([ 3, -1, -2,  0, 12, 10], dtype=int32)
```

If you have an array of strings representing numbers, you can use `astype` to convert them to numeric form:

```
In [44]: numeric_strings = np.array(['1.25', '-9.6', '42'], dtype=np.string_)

In [45]: numeric_strings.astype(float)
Out[45]: array([  1.25,  -9.6 ,  42.  ])
```

> **CAUTION**
>
> It's important to be cautious when using the `numpy.string_` type, as string data in NumPy is fixed size and may truncate input without warning. pandas has more intuitive out-of-the-box behavior on non-numeric data.

If casting were to fail for some reason (like a string that cannot be converted to `float64`), a `ValueError` will be raised. Here I was a bit lazy and wrote `float` instead of `np.float64`; NumPy aliases the Python types to its own equivalent data dtypes.

You can also use another array's dtype attribute:

```
In [46]: int_array = np.arange(10)

In [47]: calibers = np.array([.22, .270, .357, .380, .44, .50],
dtype=np.float64)

In [48]: int_array.astype(calibers.dtype)
Out[48]: array([ 0.,  1.,  2.,  3.,  4.,  5.,  6.,  7.,  8.,  9.])
```

There are shorthand type code strings you can also use to refer to a dtype:

```
In [49]: empty_uint32 = np.empty(8, dtype='u4')

In [50]: empty_uint32
Out[50]:
array([         0, 1075314688,          0, 1075707904,          0,
       1075838976,          0, 1072693248], dtype=uint32)
```

> **NOTE**
>
> Calling `astype` *always* creates a new array (a copy of the data), even if the new dtype is the same as the old dtype.

Arithmetic with NumPy Arrays

Arrays are important because they enable you to express batch operations on data without writing any `for` loops. NumPy users call this *vectorization*. Any arithmetic operations between equal-size arrays applies the operation element-wise:

```
In [51]: arr = np.array([[1., 2., 3.], [4., 5., 6.]])

In [52]: arr
Out[52]:
array([[ 1.,  2.,  3.],
       [ 4.,  5.,  6.]])

In [53]: arr * arr
Out[53]:
array([[  1.,   4.,   9.],
       [ 16.,  25.,  36.]])

In [54]: arr - arr
Out[54]:
array([[ 0.,  0.,  0.],
       [ 0.,  0.,  0.]])
```

Arithmetic operations with scalars propagate the scalar argument to each element in the array:

```
In [55]: 1 / arr
Out[55]:
array([[ 1.    ,  0.5   ,  0.3333],
       [ 0.25  ,  0.2   ,  0.1667]])

In [56]: arr ** 0.5
Out[56]:
array([[ 1.    ,  1.4142,  1.7321],
       [ 2.    ,  2.2361,  2.4495]])
```

Comparisons between arrays of the same size yield boolean arrays:

```
In [57]: arr2 = np.array([[0., 4., 1.], [7., 2., 12.]])

In [58]: arr2
Out[58]:
array([[  0.,   4.,   1.],
       [  7.,   2.,  12.]])
```

```
In [59]: arr2 > arr
Out[59]:
array([[False,  True, False],
       [ True, False,  True]], dtype=bool)
```

Operations between differently sized arrays is called *broadcasting* and will be discussed in more detail in Appendix A. Having a deep understanding of broadcasting is not necessary for most of this book.

Basic Indexing and Slicing

NumPy array indexing is a rich topic, as there are many ways you may want to select a subset of your data or individual elements. One-dimensional arrays are simple; on the surface they act similarly to Python lists:

```
In [60]: arr = np.arange(10)

In [61]: arr
Out[61]: array([0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9])

In [62]: arr[5]
Out[62]: 5

In [63]: arr[5:8]
Out[63]: array([5, 6, 7])

In [64]: arr[5:8] = 12

In [65]: arr
Out[65]: array([ 0,  1,  2,  3,  4, 12, 12, 12,  8,  9])
```

As you can see, if you assign a scalar value to a slice, as in `arr[5:8] = 12`, the value is propagated (or *broadcasted* henceforth) to the entire selection. An important first distinction from Python's built-in lists is that array slices are *views* on the original array. This means that the data is not copied, and any modifications to the view will be reflected in the source array.

To give an example of this, I first create a slice of `arr`:

```
In [66]: arr_slice = arr[5:8]

In [67]: arr_slice
Out[67]: array([12, 12, 12])
```

Now, when I change values in `arr_slice`, the mutations are reflected in the original array `arr`:

```
In [68]: arr_slice[1] = 12345

In [69]: arr
Out[69]: array([    0,     1,     2,     3,     4,    12, 12345,    12,
8,
  9])
```

The “bare” slice `[:]` will assign to all values in an array:

```
In [70]: arr_slice[:] = 64

In [71]: arr
Out[71]: array([ 0,  1,  2,  3,  4, 64, 64, 64,  8,  9])
```

If you are new to NumPy, you might be surprised by this, especially if you have used other array programming languages that copy data more eagerly. As NumPy has been designed to be able to work with very large arrays, you could imagine performance and memory problems if NumPy insisted on always copying data.

> **CAUTION**
>
> If you want a copy of a slice of an ndarray instead of a view, you will need to explicitly copy the array — for example, `arr[5:8].copy()`.

With higher dimensional arrays, you have many more options. In a two-dimensional array, the elements at each index are no longer scalars but rather one-dimensional arrays:

```
In [72]: arr2d = np.array([[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6], [7, 8, 9]])

In [73]: arr2d[2]
Out[73]: array([7, 8, 9])
```

Thus, individual elements can be accessed recursively. But that is a bit too much work, so you can pass a comma-separated list of indices to select individual elements. So these are equivalent:

```
In [74]: arr2d[0][2]
Out[74]: 3

In [75]: arr2d[0, 2]
Out[75]: 3
```

See Figure 4-1 for an illustration of indexing on a two-dimensional array. I find it helpful to think of axis 0 as the "rows" of the array and axis 1 as the "columns."

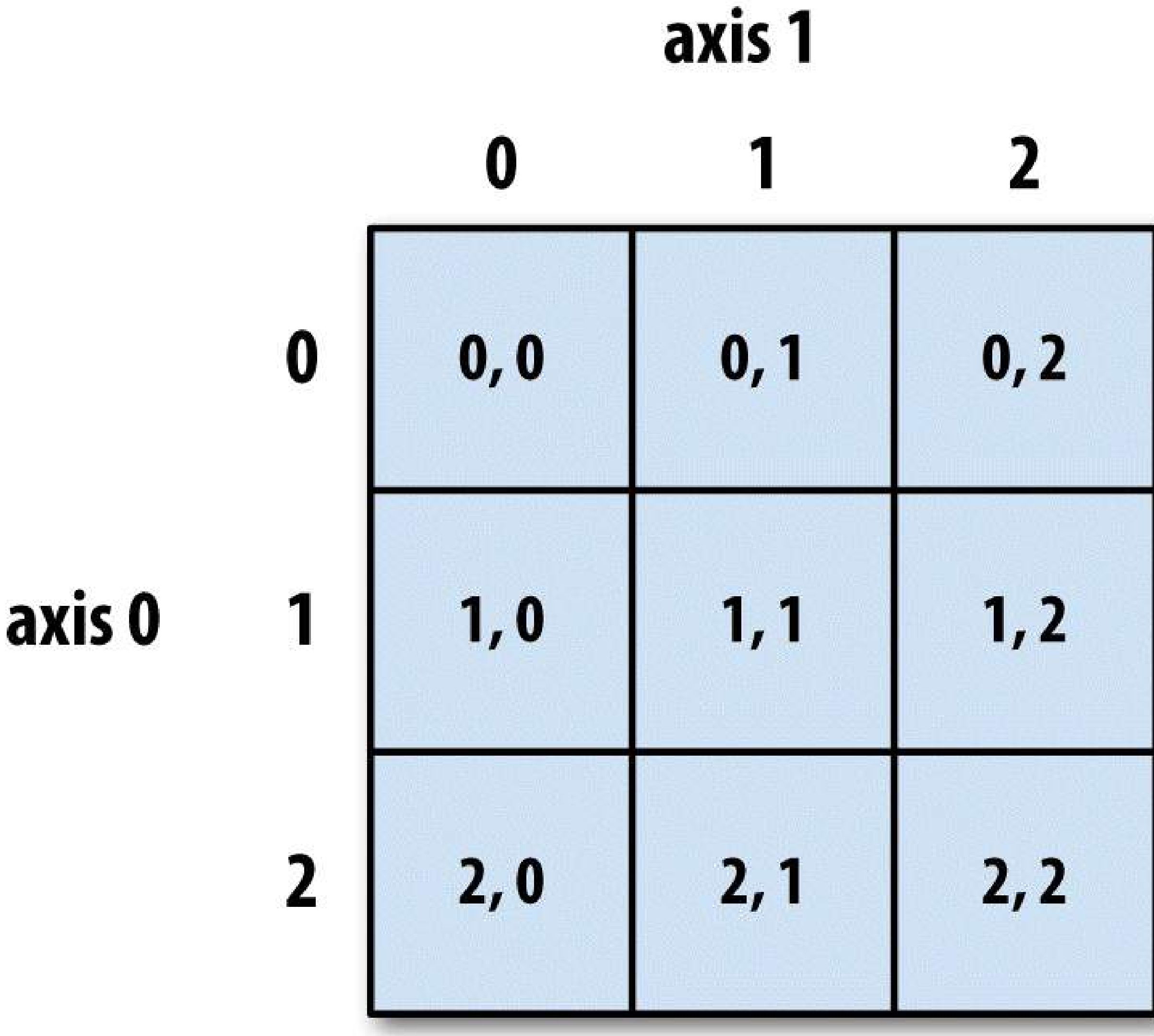


Figure 4-1. Indexing elements in a NumPy array

In multidimensional arrays, if you omit later indices, the returned object will be a lower dimensional ndarray consisting of all the data along the higher dimensions. So in the 2 × 2 × 3 array `arr3d`:

```
In [76]: arr3d = np.array([[[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6]], [[7, 8, 9], [10, 11,
12]]])
```

```
In [77]: arr3d
Out[77]:
array([[[ 1,  2,  3],
        [ 4,  5,  6]],
       [[ 7,  8,  9],
        [10, 11, 12]]])
```

`arr3d[0]` is a 2 × 3 array:

```
In [78]: arr3d[0]
Out[78]:
array([[1, 2, 3],
       [4, 5, 6]])
```

Both scalar values and arrays can be assigned to `arr3d[0]`:

```
In [79]: old_values = arr3d[0].copy()

In [80]: arr3d[0] = 42

In [81]: arr3d
Out[81]:
array([[[42, 42, 42],
        [42, 42, 42]],
       [[ 7,  8,  9],
        [10, 11, 12]]])

In [82]: arr3d[0] = old_values

In [83]: arr3d
Out[83]:
array([[[ 1,  2,  3],
        [ 4,  5,  6]],
       [[ 7,  8,  9],
        [10, 11, 12]]])
```

Similarly, `arr3d[1, 0]` gives you all of the values whose indices start with `(1, 0)`, forming a 1-dimensional array:

```
In [84]: arr3d[1, 0]
Out[84]: array([7, 8, 9])
```

This expression is the same as though we had indexed in two steps:

```
In [85]: x = arr3d[1]

In [86]: x
```

```
Out[86]:
array([[ 7,  8,  9],
       [10, 11, 12]])

In [87]: x[0]
Out[87]: array([7, 8, 9])
```

Note that in all of these cases where subsections of the array have been selected, the returned arrays are views.

Indexing with slices

Like one-dimensional objects such as Python lists, ndarrays can be sliced with the familiar syntax:

```
In [88]: arr
Out[88]: array([ 0,  1,  2,  3,  4, 64, 64, 64,  8,  9])

In [89]: arr[1:6]
Out[89]: array([ 1,  2,  3,  4, 64])
```

Consider the two-dimensional array from before, `arr2d`. Slicing this array is a bit different:

```
In [90]: arr2d
Out[90]:
array([[1, 2, 3],
       [4, 5, 6],
       [7, 8, 9]])

In [91]: arr2d[:2]
Out[91]:
array([[1, 2, 3],
       [4, 5, 6]])
```

As you can see, it has sliced along axis 0, the first axis. A slice, therefore, selects a range of elements along an axis. It can be helpful to read the expression `arr2d[:2]` as "select the first two rows of `arr2d`."

You can pass multiple slices just like you can pass multiple indexes:

```
In [92]: arr2d[:2, 1:]
Out[92]:
array([[2, 3],
       [5, 6]])
```

When slicing like this, you always obtain array views of the same number of dimensions. By mixing integer indexes and slices, you get lower dimensional slices.

For example, I can select the second row but only the first two columns like so:

```
In [93]: arr2d[1, :2]
Out[93]: array([4, 5])
```

Similarly, I can select the third column but only the first two rows like so:

```
In [94]: arr2d[:2, 2]
Out[94]: array([3, 6])
```

See Figure 4-2 for an illustration. Note that a colon by itself means to take the entire axis, so you can slice only higher dimensional axes by doing:

```
In [95]: arr2d[:, :1]
Out[95]:
array([[1],
       [4],
       [7]])
```

Of course, assigning to a slice expression assigns to the whole selection:

```
In [96]: arr2d[:2, 1:] = 0

In [97]: arr2d
Out[97]:
array([[1, 0, 0],
       [4, 0, 0],
       [7, 8, 9]])
```

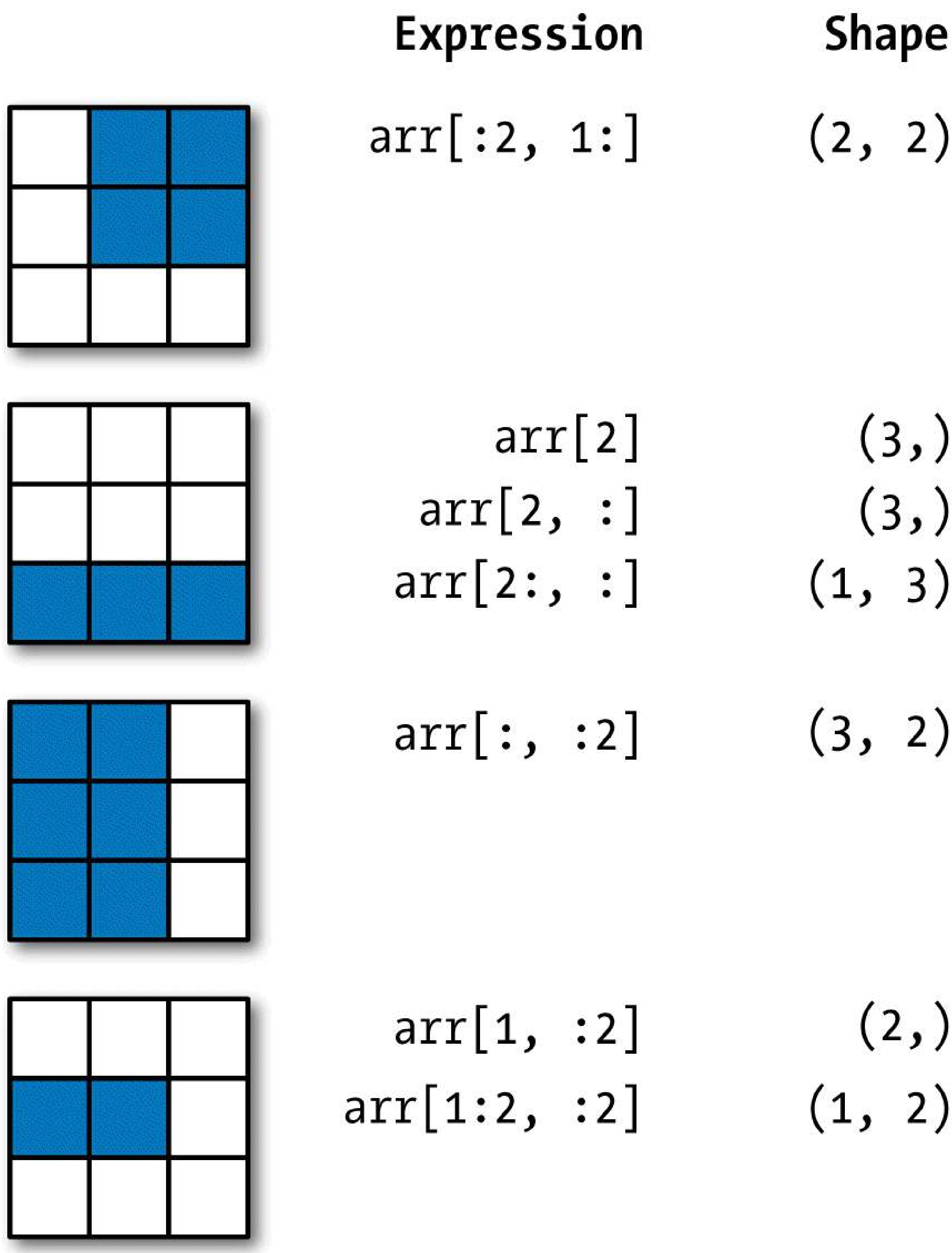


Figure 4-2. Two-dimensional array slicing

Boolean Indexing

Let's consider an example where we have some data in an array and an array of names with duplicates. I'm going to use here the `randn` function in `numpy.random` to generate some random normally distributed data:

```
In [98]: names = np.array(['Bob', 'Joe', 'Will', 'Bob', 'Will', 'Joe',
'Joe'])

In [99]: data = np.random.randn(7, 4)

In [100]: names
Out[100]:
array(['Bob', 'Joe', 'Will', 'Bob', 'Will', 'Joe', 'Joe'],
      dtype='<U4')

In [101]: data
Out[101]:
array([[ 0.0929,  0.2817,  0.769 ,  1.2464],
       [ 1.0072, -1.2962,  0.275 ,  0.2289],
       [ 1.3529,  0.8864, -2.0016, -0.3718],
       [ 1.669 , -0.4386, -0.5397,  0.477 ],
       [ 3.2489, -1.0212, -0.5771,  0.1241],
       [ 0.3026,  0.5238,  0.0009,  1.3438],
       [-0.7135, -0.8312, -2.3702, -1.8608]])
```

Suppose each name corresponds to a row in the `data` array and we wanted to select all the rows with corresponding name `'Bob'`. Like arithmetic operations, comparisons (such as ==) with arrays are also vectorized. Thus, comparing `names` with the string `'Bob'` yields a boolean array:

```
In [102]: names == 'Bob'
Out[102]: array([ True, False, False,  True, False, False, False],
dtype=bool)
```

This boolean array can be passed when indexing the array:

```
In [103]: data[names == 'Bob']
Out[103]:
array([[ 0.0929,  0.2817,  0.769 ,  1.2464],
       [ 1.669 , -0.4386, -0.5397,  0.477 ]])
```

The boolean array must be of the same length as the array axis it's indexing.

You can even mix and match boolean arrays with slices or integers (or sequences of integers; more on this later).

> **CAUTION**
>
> Boolean selection will not fail if the boolean array is not the correct length, so I recommend care when using this feature.

In these examples, I select from the rows where `names == 'Bob'` and index the columns, too:

```
In [104]: data[names == 'Bob', 2:]
Out[104]:
array([[ 0.769 ,  1.2464],
       [-0.5397,  0.477 ]])

In [105]: data[names == 'Bob', 3]
Out[105]: array([ 1.2464,  0.477 ])
```

To select everything but `'Bob'`, you can either use `!=` or negate the condition using `~`:

```
In [106]: names != 'Bob'
Out[106]: array([False,  True,  True, False,  True,  True,  True],
dtype=bool)

In [107]: data[~(names == 'Bob')]
Out[107]:
array([[ 1.0072, -1.2962,  0.275 ,  0.2289],
       [ 1.3529,  0.8864, -2.0016, -0.3718],
       [ 3.2489, -1.0212, -0.5771,  0.1241],
       [ 0.3026,  0.5238,  0.0009,  1.3438],
       [-0.7135, -0.8312, -2.3702, -1.8608]])
```

The `~` operator can be useful when you want to invert a general condition:

```
In [108]: cond = names == 'Bob'

In [109]: data[~cond]
Out[109]:
array([[ 1.0072, -1.2962,  0.275 ,  0.2289],
       [ 1.3529,  0.8864, -2.0016, -0.3718],
       [ 3.2489, -1.0212, -0.5771,  0.1241],
```

```
       [ 0.3026,  0.5238,  0.0009,  1.3438],
       [-0.7135, -0.8312, -2.3702, -1.8608]])
```

Selecting two of the three names to combine multiple boolean conditions, use boolean arithmetic operators like `&` (and) and `|` (or):

```
In [110]: mask = (names == 'Bob') | (names == 'Will')

In [111]: mask
Out[111]: array([ True, False,  True,  True,  True, False, False],
dtype=bool)

In [112]: data[mask]
Out[112]:
array([[ 0.0929,  0.2817,  0.769 ,  1.2464],
       [ 1.3529,  0.8864, -2.0016, -0.3718],
       [ 1.669 , -0.4386, -0.5397,  0.477 ],
       [ 3.2489, -1.0212, -0.5771,  0.1241]])
```

Selecting data from an array by boolean indexing *always* creates a copy of the data, even if the returned array is unchanged.

CAUTION

The Python keywords `and` and `or` do not work with boolean arrays. Use `&` (and) and `|` (or) instead.

Setting values with boolean arrays works in a common-sense way. To set all of the negative values in `data` to 0 we need only do:

```
In [113]: data[data < 0] = 0

In [114]: data
Out[114]:
array([[ 0.0929,  0.2817,  0.769 ,  1.2464],
       [ 1.0072,  0.    ,  0.275 ,  0.2289],
       [ 1.3529,  0.8864,  0.    ,  0.    ],
       [ 1.669 ,  0.    ,  0.    ,  0.477 ],
       [ 3.2489,  0.    ,  0.    ,  0.1241],
       [ 0.3026,  0.5238,  0.0009,  1.3438],
       [ 0.    ,  0.    ,  0.    ,  0.    ]])
```

Setting whole rows or columns using a one-dimensional boolean array is also easy:

```
In [115]: data[names != 'Joe'] = 7

In [116]: data
Out[116]:
array([[ 7.    ,  7.    ,  7.    ,  7.    ],
       [ 1.0072,  0.    ,  0.275 ,  0.2289],
       [ 7.    ,  7.    ,  7.    ,  7.    ],
       [ 7.    ,  7.    ,  7.    ,  7.    ],
       [ 7.    ,  7.    ,  7.    ,  7.    ],
       [ 0.3026,  0.5238,  0.0009,  1.3438],
       [ 0.    ,  0.    ,  0.    ,  0.    ]])
```

As we will see later, these types of operations on two-dimensional data are convenient to do with pandas.

Fancy Indexing

Fancy indexing is a term adopted by NumPy to describe indexing using integer arrays. Suppose we had an 8 × 4 array:

```
In [117]: arr = np.empty((8, 4))

In [118]: for i in range(8):
   .....:     arr[i] = i

In [119]: arr
Out[119]:
array([[ 0.,  0.,  0.,  0.],
       [ 1.,  1.,  1.,  1.],
       [ 2.,  2.,  2.,  2.],
       [ 3.,  3.,  3.,  3.],
       [ 4.,  4.,  4.,  4.],
       [ 5.,  5.,  5.,  5.],
       [ 6.,  6.,  6.,  6.],
       [ 7.,  7.,  7.,  7.]])
```

To select out a subset of the rows in a particular order, you can simply pass a list or ndarray of integers specifying the desired order:

```
In [120]: arr[[4, 3, 0, 6]]
Out[120]:
array([[ 4.,  4.,  4.,  4.],
       [ 3.,  3.,  3.,  3.],
       [ 0.,  0.,  0.,  0.],
       [ 6.,  6.,  6.,  6.]])
```

Hopefully this code did what you expected! Using negative indices selects rows from the end:

```
In [121]: arr[[-3, -5, -7]]
Out[121]:
array([[ 5.,  5.,  5.,  5.],
       [ 3.,  3.,  3.,  3.],
       [ 1.,  1.,  1.,  1.]])
```

Passing multiple index arrays does something slightly different; it selects a one-dimensional array of elements corresponding to each tuple of indices:

```
In [122]: arr = np.arange(32).reshape((8, 4))
```

```
In [123]: arr
Out[123]:
array([[ 0,  1,  2,  3],
       [ 4,  5,  6,  7],
       [ 8,  9, 10, 11],
       [12, 13, 14, 15],
       [16, 17, 18, 19],
       [20, 21, 22, 23],
       [24, 25, 26, 27],
       [28, 29, 30, 31]])

In [124]: arr[[1, 5, 7, 2], [0, 3, 1, 2]]
Out[124]: array([ 4, 23, 29, 10])
```

We'll look at the `reshape` method in more detail in Appendix A.

Here the elements `(1, 0)`, `(5, 3)`, `(7, 1)`, and `(2, 2)` were selected. Regardless of how many dimensions the array has (here, only 2), the result of fancy indexing is always one-dimensional.

The behavior of fancy indexing in this case is a bit different from what some users might have expected (myself included), which is the rectangular region formed by selecting a subset of the matrix's rows and columns. Here is one way to get that:

```
In [125]: arr[[1, 5, 7, 2]][:, [0, 3, 1, 2]]
Out[125]:
array([[ 4,  7,  5,  6],
       [20, 23, 21, 22],
       [28, 31, 29, 30],
       [ 8, 11,  9, 10]])
```

Keep in mind that fancy indexing, unlike slicing, always copies the data into a new array.

Transposing Arrays and Swapping Axes

Transposing is a special form of reshaping that similarly returns a view on the underlying data without copying anything. Arrays have the `transpose` method and also the special `T` attribute:

```
In [126]: arr = np.arange(15).reshape((3, 5))

In [127]: arr
Out[127]:
array([[ 0,  1,  2,  3,  4],
       [ 5,  6,  7,  8,  9],
       [10, 11, 12, 13, 14]])

In [128]: arr.T
Out[128]:
array([[ 0,  5, 10],
       [ 1,  6, 11],
       [ 2,  7, 12],
       [ 3,  8, 13],
       [ 4,  9, 14]])
```

When doing matrix computations, you may do this very often — for example, when computing the inner matrix product using `np.dot`:

```
In [129]: arr = np.random.randn(6, 3)

In [130]: arr
Out[130]:
array([[-0.8608,  0.5601, -1.2659],
       [ 0.1198, -1.0635,  0.3329],
       [-2.3594, -0.1995, -1.542 ],
       [-0.9707, -1.307 ,  0.2863],
       [ 0.378 , -0.7539,  0.3313],
       [ 1.3497,  0.0699,  0.2467]])

In [131]: np.dot(arr.T, arr)
Out[131]:
array([[ 9.2291,  0.9394,  4.948 ],
       [ 0.9394,  3.7662, -1.3622],
       [ 4.948 , -1.3622,  4.3437]])
```

For higher dimensional arrays, `transpose` will accept a tuple of axis numbers to permute the axes (for extra mind bending):

```
In [132]: arr = np.arange(16).reshape((2, 2, 4))
```

```
In [133]: arr
Out[133]:
array([[[ 0,  1,  2,  3],
        [ 4,  5,  6,  7]],
       [[ 8,  9, 10, 11],
        [12, 13, 14, 15]]])

In [134]: arr.transpose((1, 0, 2))
Out[134]:
array([[[ 0,  1,  2,  3],
        [ 8,  9, 10, 11]],
       [[ 4,  5,  6,  7],
        [12, 13, 14, 15]]])
```

Here, the axes have been reordered with the second axis first, the first axis second, and the last axis unchanged.

Simple transposing with `.T` is a special case of swapping axes. ndarray has the method `swapaxes`, which takes a pair of axis numbers and switches the indicated axes to rearrange the data:

```
In [135]: arr
Out[135]:
array([[[ 0,  1,  2,  3],
        [ 4,  5,  6,  7]],
       [[ 8,  9, 10, 11],
        [12, 13, 14, 15]]])

In [136]: arr.swapaxes(1, 2)
Out[136]:
array([[[ 0,  4],
        [ 1,  5],
        [ 2,  6],
        [ 3,  7]],
       [[ 8, 12],
        [ 9, 13],
        [10, 14],
        [11, 15]]])
```

`swapaxes` similarly returns a view on the data without making a copy.

4.2 Universal Functions: Fast Element-Wise Array Functions

A universal function, or *ufunc*, is a function that performs element-wise operations on data in ndarrays. You can think of them as fast vectorized wrappers for simple functions that take one or more scalar values and produce one or more scalar results.

Many ufuncs are simple element-wise transformations, like `sqrt` or `exp`:

```
In [137]: arr = np.arange(10)

In [138]: arr
Out[138]: array([0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9])

In [139]: np.sqrt(arr)
Out[139]:
array([ 0.    ,  1.    ,  1.4142,  1.7321,  2.    ,  2.2361,  2.4495,
        2.6458,  2.8284,  3.    ])

In [140]: np.exp(arr)
Out[140]:
array([    1.    ,     2.7183,     7.3891,    20.0855,    54.5982,
         148.4132,   403.4288,  1096.6332,  2980.958 ,  8103.0839])
```

These are referred to as *unary* ufuncs. Others, such as `add` or `maximum`, take two arrays (thus, *binary* ufuncs) and return a single array as the result:

```
In [141]: x = np.random.randn(8)

In [142]: y = np.random.randn(8)

In [143]: x
Out[143]:
array([-0.0119,  1.0048,  1.3272, -0.9193, -1.5491,  0.0222,  0.7584,
       -0.6605])

In [144]: y
Out[144]:
array([ 0.8626, -0.01  ,  0.05  ,  0.6702,  0.853 , -0.9559, -0.0235,
       -2.3042])

In [145]: np.maximum(x, y)
Out[145]:
array([ 0.8626,  1.0048,  1.3272,  0.6702,  0.853 ,  0.0222,  0.7584,
       -0.6605])
```

Here, `numpy.maximum` computed the element-wise maximum of the elements in `x` and `y`.

While not common, a ufunc can return multiple arrays. `modf` is one example, a vectorized version of the built-in Python `divmod`; it returns the fractional and integral parts of a floating-point array:

```
In [146]: arr = np.random.randn(7) * 5

In [147]: arr
Out[147]: array([-3.2623, -6.0915, -6.663 ,  5.3731,  3.6182,  3.45  ,
5.0077])

In [148]: remainder, whole_part = np.modf(arr)

In [149]: remainder
Out[149]: array([-0.2623, -0.0915, -0.663 ,  0.3731,  0.6182,  0.45  ,
0.0077])

In [150]: whole_part
Out[150]: array([-3., -6., -6.,  5.,  3.,  3.,  5.])
```

Ufuncs accept an optional `out` argument that allows them to operate in-place on arrays:

```
In [151]: arr
Out[151]: array([-3.2623, -6.0915, -6.663 ,  5.3731,  3.6182,  3.45  ,
5.0077])

In [152]: np.sqrt(arr)
Out[152]: array([    nan,     nan,     nan,  2.318 ,  1.9022,  1.8574,
2.2378])

In [153]: np.sqrt(arr, arr)
Out[153]: array([    nan,     nan,     nan,  2.318 ,  1.9022,  1.8574,
2.2378])

In [154]: arr
Out[154]: array([    nan,     nan,     nan,  2.318 ,  1.9022,  1.8574,
2.2378])
```

See Tables 4-3 and 4-4 for a listing of available ufuncs.

Table 4-3. Unary ufuncs

Function	Description

`abs, fabs`	Compute the absolute value element-wise for integer, floating-point, or complex values
`sqrt`	Compute the square root of each element (equivalent to `arr ** 0.5`)
`square`	Compute the square of each element (equivalent to `arr ** 2`)
`exp`	Compute the exponent e^x of each element
`log, log10, log2, log1p`	Natural logarithm (base *e*), log base 10, log base 2, and log(1 + x), respectively
`sign`	Compute the sign of each element: 1 (positive), 0 (zero), or –1 (negative)
`ceil`	Compute the ceiling of each element (i.e., the smallest integer greater than or equal to that number)
`floor`	Compute the floor of each element (i.e., the largest integer less than or equal to each element)
`rint`	Round elements to the nearest integer, preserving the `dtype`
`modf`	Return fractional and integral parts of array as a separate array
`isnan`	Return boolean array indicating whether each value is `NaN` (Not a Number)
`isfinite, isinf`	Return boolean array indicating whether each element is finite (non-`inf`, non-`NaN`) or infinite, respectively
`cos, cosh, sin, sinh, tan, tanh`	Regular and hyperbolic trigonometric functions
`arccos, arccosh, arcsin, arcsinh, arctan, arctanh`	Inverse trigonometric functions
`logical_not`	Compute truth value of `not x` element-wise (equivalent to `~arr`).

Table 4-4. Binary universal functions

Function	**Description**
`add`	Add corresponding elements in arrays
`subtract`	Subtract elements in second array from first array

`multiply`	Multiply array elements
`divide, floor_divide`	Divide or floor divide (truncating the remainder)
`power`	Raise elements in first array to powers indicated in second array
`maximum, fmax`	Element-wise maximum; `fmax` ignores `NaN`
`minimum, fmin`	Element-wise minimum; `fmin` ignores `NaN`
`mod`	Element-wise modulus (remainder of division)
`copysign`	Copy sign of values in second argument to values in first argument
`greater, greater_equal, less, less_equal, equal, not_equal`	Perform element-wise comparison, yielding boolean array (equivalent to infix operators `>, >=, <, <=, ==, !=`)
`logical_and, logical_or, logical_xor`	Compute element-wise truth value of logical operation (equivalent to infix operators `& |, ^`)

4.3 Array-Oriented Programming with Arrays

Using NumPy arrays enables you to express many kinds of data processing tasks as concise array expressions that might otherwise require writing loops. This practice of replacing explicit loops with array expressions is commonly referred to as *vectorization*. In general, vectorized array operations will often be one or two (or more) orders of magnitude faster than their pure Python equivalents, with the biggest impact in any kind of numerical computations. Later, in Appendix A, I explain *broadcasting*, a powerful method for vectorizing computations.

As a simple example, suppose we wished to evaluate the function `sqrt(x^2 + y^2)` across a regular grid of values. The `np.meshgrid` function takes two 1D arrays and produces two 2D matrices corresponding to all pairs of `(x, y)` in the two arrays:

```
In [155]: points = np.arange(-5, 5, 0.01) # 1000 equally spaced points

In [156]: xs, ys = np.meshgrid(points, points)

In [157]: ys
Out[157]:
array([[-5.  , -5.  , -5.  , ..., -5.  , -5.  , -5.  ],
       [-4.99, -4.99, -4.99, ..., -4.99, -4.99, -4.99],
       [-4.98, -4.98, -4.98, ..., -4.98, -4.98, -4.98],
       ...,
       [ 4.97,  4.97,  4.97, ...,  4.97,  4.97,  4.97],
       [ 4.98,  4.98,  4.98, ...,  4.98,  4.98,  4.98],
       [ 4.99,  4.99,  4.99, ...,  4.99,  4.99,  4.99]])
```

Now, evaluating the function is a matter of writing the same expression you would write with two points:

```
In [158]: z = np.sqrt(xs ** 2 + ys ** 2)

In [159]: z
Out[159]:
array([[ 7.0711,  7.064 ,  7.0569, ...,  7.0499,  7.0569,  7.064 ],
       [ 7.064 ,  7.0569,  7.0499, ...,  7.0428,  7.0499,  7.0569],
       [ 7.0569,  7.0499,  7.0428, ...,  7.0357,  7.0428,  7.0499],
       ...,
       [ 7.0499,  7.0428,  7.0357, ...,  7.0286,  7.0357,  7.0428],
```

```
       [ 7.0569,  7.0499,  7.0428, ...,  7.0357,  7.0428,  7.0499],
       [ 7.064 ,  7.0569,  7.0499, ...,  7.0428,  7.0499,  7.0569]])
```

As a preview of Chapter 9, I use matplotlib to create visualizations of this two-dimensional array:

```
In [160]: import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

In [161]: plt.imshow(z, cmap=plt.cm.gray); plt.colorbar()
Out[161]: <matplotlib.colorbar.Colorbar at 0x7f715e3fa630>

In [162]: plt.title("Image plot of $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ for a grid of values")
Out[162]: <matplotlib.text.Text at 0x7f715d2de748>
```

See Figure 4-3. Here I used the matplotlib function `imshow` to create an image plot from a two-dimensional array of function values.

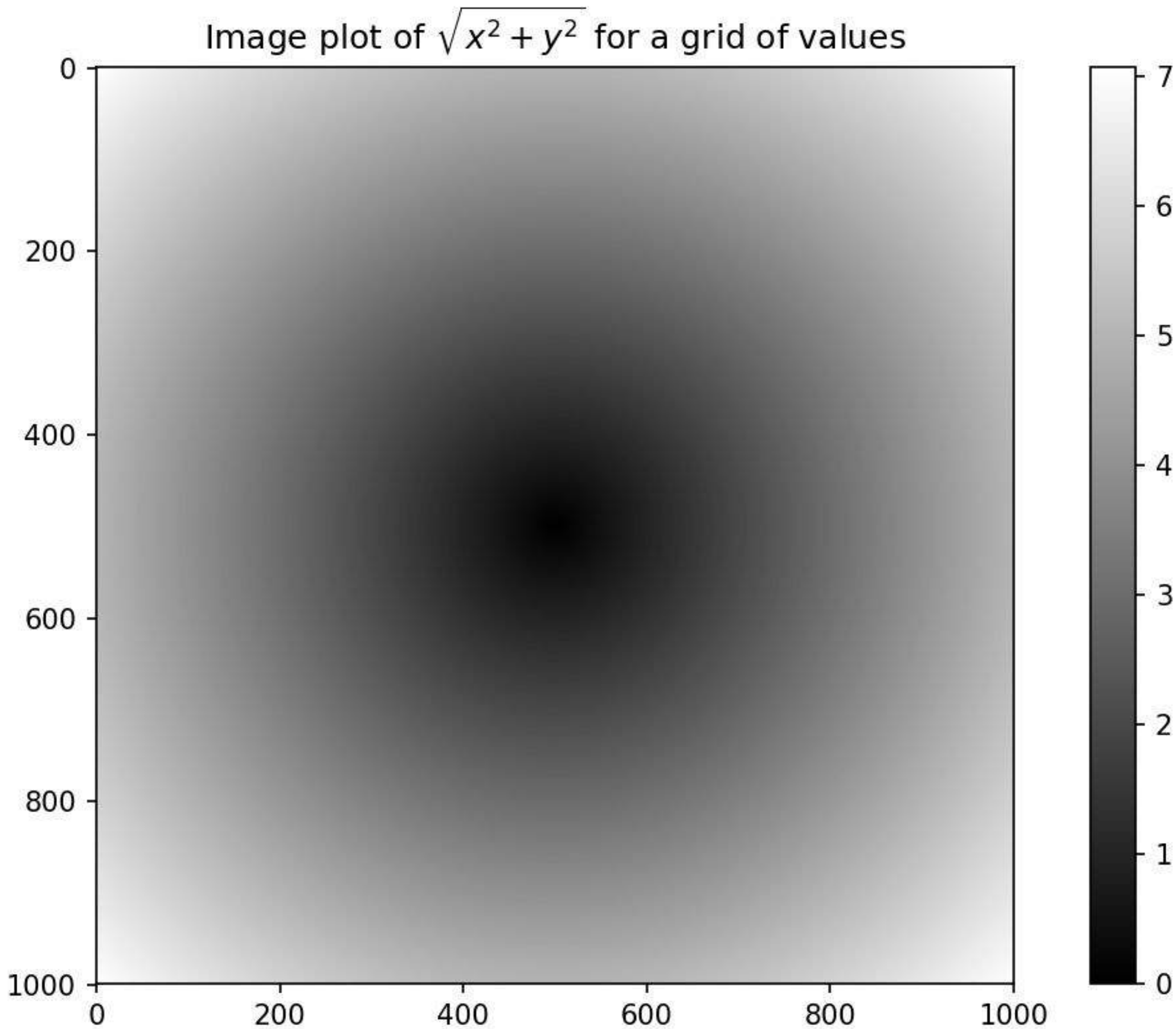


Figure 4-3. Plot of function evaluated on grid

Expressing Conditional Logic as Array Operations

The `numpy.where` function is a vectorized version of the ternary expression `x if condition else y`. Suppose we had a boolean array and two arrays of values:

```
In [165]: xarr = np.array([1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5])

In [166]: yarr = np.array([2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5])

In [167]: cond = np.array([True, False, True, True, False])
```

Suppose we wanted to take a value from `xarr` whenever the corresponding value in `cond` is `True`, and otherwise take the value from `yarr`. A list comprehension doing this might look like:

```
In [168]: result = [(x if c else y)
   .....:           for x, y, c in zip(xarr, yarr, cond)]

In [169]: result
Out[169]: [1.1000000000000001, 2.2000000000000002, 1.3, 1.3999999999999999,
2.5]
```

This has multiple problems. First, it will not be very fast for large arrays (because all the work is being done in interpreted Python code). Second, it will not work with multidimensional arrays. With `np.where` you can write this very concisely:

```
In [170]: result = np.where(cond, xarr, yarr)

In [171]: result
Out[171]: array([ 1.1,  2.2,  1.3,  1.4,  2.5])
```

The second and third arguments to `np.where` don’t need to be arrays; one or both of them can be scalars. A typical use of `where` in data analysis is to produce a new array of values based on another array. Suppose you had a matrix of randomly generated data and you wanted to replace all positive values with 2 and all negative values with –2. This is very easy to do with `np.where`:

```
In [172]: arr = np.random.randn(4, 4)

In [173]: arr
Out[173]:
array([[-0.5031, -0.6223, -0.9212, -0.7262],
       [ 0.2229,  0.0513, -1.1577,  0.8167],
       [ 0.4336,  1.0107,  1.8249, -0.9975],
       [ 0.8506, -0.1316,  0.9124,  0.1882]])

In [174]: arr > 0
Out[174]:
array([[False, False, False, False],
       [ True,  True, False,  True],
       [ True,  True,  True, False],
       [ True, False,  True,  True]], dtype=bool)

In [175]: np.where(arr > 0, 2, -2)
Out[175]:
array([[-2, -2, -2, -2],
       [ 2,  2, -2,  2],
       [ 2,  2,  2, -2],
       [ 2, -2,  2,  2]])
```

You can combine scalars and arrays when using `np.where`. For example, I can replace all positive values in `arr` with the constant 2 like so:

```
In [176]: np.where(arr > 0, 2, arr) # set only positive values to 2
Out[176]:
array([[-0.5031, -0.6223, -0.9212, -0.7262],
       [ 2.    ,  2.    , -1.1577,  2.    ],
       [ 2.    ,  2.    ,  2.    , -0.9975],
       [ 2.    , -0.1316,  2.    ,  2.    ]])
```

The arrays passed to `np.where` can be more than just equal-sized arrays or scalars.

Mathematical and Statistical Methods

A set of mathematical functions that compute statistics about an entire array or about the data along an axis are accessible as methods of the array class. You can use aggregations (often called *reductions*) like `sum`, `mean`, and `std` (standard deviation) either by calling the array instance method or using the top-level NumPy function.

Here I generate some normally distributed random data and compute some aggregate statistics:

```
In [177]: arr = np.random.randn(5, 4)

In [178]: arr
Out[178]:
array([[ 2.1695, -0.1149,  2.0037,  0.0296],
       [ 0.7953,  0.1181, -0.7485,  0.585 ],
       [ 0.1527, -1.5657, -0.5625, -0.0327],
       [-0.929 , -0.4826, -0.0363,  1.0954],
       [ 0.9809, -0.5895,  1.5817, -0.5287]])

In [179]: arr.mean()
Out[179]: 0.19607051119998253

In [180]: np.mean(arr)
Out[180]: 0.19607051119998253

In [181]: arr.sum()
Out[181]: 3.9214102239996507
```

Functions like `mean` and `sum` take an optional `axis` argument that computes the statistic over the given axis, resulting in an array with one fewer dimension:

```
In [182]: arr.mean(axis=1)
Out[182]: array([ 1.022 ,  0.1875, -0.502 , -0.0881,  0.3611])

In [183]: arr.sum(axis=0)
Out[183]: array([ 3.1693, -2.6345,  2.2381,  1.1486])
```

Here, `arr.mean(1)` means "compute mean across the columns" where `arr.sum(0)` means "compute sum down the rows."

Other methods like `cumsum` and `cumprod` do not aggregate, instead producing an array of the intermediate results:

```
In [184]: arr = np.array([0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7])

In [185]: arr.cumsum()
Out[185]: array([ 0,  1,  3,  6, 10, 15, 21, 28])
```

In multidimensional arrays, accumulation functions like `cumsum` return an array of the same size, but with the partial aggregates computed along the indicated axis according to each lower dimensional slice:

```
In [186]: arr = np.array([[0, 1, 2], [3, 4, 5], [6, 7, 8]])

In [187]: arr
Out[187]:
array([[0, 1, 2],
       [3, 4, 5],
       [6, 7, 8]])

In [188]: arr.cumsum(axis=0)
Out[188]:
array([[ 0,  1,  2],
       [ 3,  5,  7],
       [ 9, 12, 15]])

In [189]: arr.cumprod(axis=1)
Out[189]:
array([[  0,   0,   0],
       [  3,  12,  60],
       [  6,  42, 336]])
```

See Table 4-5 for a full listing. We'll see many examples of these methods in action in later chapters.

Table 4-5. Basic array statistical methods

Method	Description
`sum`	Sum of all the elements in the array or along an axis; zero-length arrays have sum 0
`mean`	Arithmetic mean; zero-length arrays have `NaN` mean
`std, var`	Standard deviation and variance, respectively, with optional degrees of freedom adjustment (default denominator `n`)

`min, max`	Minimum and maximum
`argmin, argmax`	Indices of minimum and maximum elements, respectively
`cumsum`	Cumulative sum of elements starting from 0
`cumprod`	Cumulative product of elements starting from 1

Methods for Boolean Arrays

Boolean values are coerced to 1 (`True`) and 0 (`False`) in the preceding methods. Thus, `sum` is often used as a means of counting `True` values in a boolean array:

```
In [190]: arr = np.random.randn(100)

In [191]: (arr > 0).sum() # Number of positive values
Out[191]: 42
```

There are two additional methods, `any` and `all`, useful especially for boolean arrays. `any` tests whether one or more values in an array is `True`, while `all` checks if every value is `True`:

```
In [192]: bools = np.array([False, False, True, False])

In [193]: bools.any()
Out[193]: True

In [194]: bools.all()
Out[194]: False
```

These methods also work with non-boolean arrays, where non-zero elements evaluate to `True`.

Sorting

Like Python's built-in list type, NumPy arrays can be sorted in-place with the `sort` method:

```
In [195]: arr = np.random.randn(6)

In [196]: arr
Out[196]: array([ 0.6095, -0.4938,  1.24  , -0.1357,  1.43  , -0.8469])

In [197]: arr.sort()

In [198]: arr
Out[198]: array([-0.8469, -0.4938, -0.1357,  0.6095,  1.24  ,  1.43  ])
```

You can sort each one-dimensional section of values in a multidimensional array in-place along an axis by passing the axis number to `sort`:

```
In [199]: arr = np.random.randn(5, 3)

In [200]: arr
Out[200]:
array([[ 0.6033,  1.2636, -0.2555],
       [-0.4457,  0.4684, -0.9616],
       [-1.8245,  0.6254,  1.0229],
       [ 1.1074,  0.0909, -0.3501],
       [ 0.218 , -0.8948, -1.7415]])

In [201]: arr.sort(1)

In [202]: arr
Out[202]:
array([[-0.2555,  0.6033,  1.2636],
       [-0.9616, -0.4457,  0.4684],
       [-1.8245,  0.6254,  1.0229],
       [-0.3501,  0.0909,  1.1074],
       [-1.7415, -0.8948,  0.218 ]])
```

The top-level method `np.sort` returns a sorted copy of an array instead of modifying the array in-place. A quick-and-dirty way to compute the quantiles of an array is to sort it and select the value at a particular rank:

```
In [203]: large_arr = np.random.randn(1000)

In [204]: large_arr.sort()
```

```
In [205]: large_arr[int(0.05 * len(large_arr))] # 5% quantile
Out[205]: -1.5311513550102103
```

For more details on using NumPy's sorting methods, and more advanced techniques like indirect sorts, see Appendix A. Several other kinds of data manipulations related to sorting (e.g., sorting a table of data by one or more columns) can also be found in pandas.

Unique and Other Set Logic

NumPy has some basic set operations for one-dimensional ndarrays. A commonly used one is `np.unique`, which returns the sorted unique values in an array:

```
In [206]: names = np.array(['Bob', 'Joe', 'Will', 'Bob', 'Will', 'Joe',
'Joe'])

In [207]: np.unique(names)
Out[207]:
array(['Bob', 'Joe', 'Will'],
      dtype='<U4')

In [208]: ints = np.array([3, 3, 3, 2, 2, 1, 1, 4, 4])

In [209]: np.unique(ints)
Out[209]: array([1, 2, 3, 4])
```

Contrast `np.unique` with the pure Python alternative:

```
In [210]: sorted(set(names))
Out[210]: ['Bob', 'Joe', 'Will']
```

Another function, `np.in1d`, tests membership of the values in one array in another, returning a boolean array:

```
In [211]: values = np.array([6, 0, 0, 3, 2, 5, 6])

In [212]: np.in1d(values, [2, 3, 6])
Out[212]: array([ True, False, False,  True,  True, False,  True],
dtype=bool)
```

See Table 4-6 for a listing of set functions in NumPy.

Table 4-6. Array set operations

Method	Description
`unique(x)`	Compute the sorted, unique elements in `x`
`intersect1d(x, y)`	Compute the sorted, common elements in `x` and `y`

`union1d(x, y)`	Compute the sorted union of elements
`in1d(x, y)`	Compute a boolean array indicating whether each element of `x` is contained in `y`
`setdiff1d(x, y)`	Set difference, elements in `x` that are not in `y`
`setxor1d(x, y)`	Set symmetric differences; elements that are in either of the arrays, but not both

4.4 File Input and Output with Arrays

NumPy is able to save and load data to and from disk either in text or binary format. In this section I only discuss NumPy's built-in binary format, since most users will prefer pandas and other tools for loading text or tabular data (see Chapter 6 for much more).

`np.save` and `np.load` are the two workhorse functions for efficiently saving and loading array data on disk. Arrays are saved by default in an uncompressed raw binary format with file extension *.npy*:

```
In [213]: arr = np.arange(10)

In [214]: np.save('some_array', arr)
```

If the file path does not already end in *.npy*, the extension will be appended. The array on disk can then be loaded with `np.load`:

```
In [215]: np.load('some_array.npy')
Out[215]: array([0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9])
```

You save multiple arrays in an uncompressed archive using `np.savez` and passing the arrays as keyword arguments:

```
In [216]: np.savez('array_archive.npz', a=arr, b=arr)
```

When loading an *.npz* file, you get back a dict-like object that loads the individual arrays lazily:

```
In [217]: arch = np.load('array_archive.npz')

In [218]: arch['b']
Out[218]: array([0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9])
```

If your data compresses well, you may wish to use `numpy.savez_compressed` instead:

```
In [219]: np.savez_compressed('arrays_compressed.npz', a=arr, b=arr)
```

4.5 Linear Algebra

Linear algebra, like matrix multiplication, decompositions, determinants, and other square matrix math, is an important part of any array library. Unlike some languages like MATLAB, multiplying two two-dimensional arrays with `*` is an element-wise product instead of a matrix dot product. Thus, there is a function `dot`, both an array method and a function in the `numpy` namespace, for matrix multiplication:

```
In [223]: x = np.array([[1., 2., 3.], [4., 5., 6.]])

In [224]: y = np.array([[6., 23.], [-1, 7], [8, 9]])

In [225]: x
Out[225]:
array([[ 1.,  2.,  3.],
       [ 4.,  5.,  6.]])

In [226]: y
Out[226]:
array([[  6.,  23.],
       [ -1.,   7.],
       [  8.,   9.]])

In [227]: x.dot(y)
Out[227]:
array([[  28.,   64.],
       [  67.,  181.]])
```

`x.dot(y)` is equivalent to `np.dot(x, y)`:

```
In [228]: np.dot(x, y)
Out[228]:
array([[  28.,   64.],
       [  67.,  181.]])
```

A matrix product between a two-dimensional array and a suitably sized one-dimensional array results in a one-dimensional array:

```
In [229]: np.dot(x, np.ones(3))
Out[229]: array([  6.,  15.])
```

The `@` symbol (as of Python 3.5) also works as an infix operator that performs matrix multiplication:

```
In [230]: x @ np.ones(3)
Out[230]: array([  6.,  15.])
```

`numpy.linalg` has a standard set of matrix decompositions and things like inverse and determinant. These are implemented under the hood via the same industry-standard linear algebra libraries used in other languages like MATLAB and R, such as BLAS, LAPACK, or possibly (depending on your NumPy build) the proprietary Intel MKL (Math Kernel Library):

```
In [231]: from numpy.linalg import inv, qr

In [232]: X = np.random.randn(5, 5)

In [233]: mat = X.T.dot(X)

In [234]: inv(mat)
Out[234]:
array([[  933.1189,   871.8258, -1417.6902, -1460.4005,  1782.1391],
       [  871.8258,   815.3929, -1325.9965, -1365.9242,  1666.9347],
       [-1417.6902, -1325.9965,  2158.4424,  2222.0191, -2711.6822],
       [-1460.4005, -1365.9242,  2222.0191,  2289.0575, -2793.422 ],
       [ 1782.1391,  1666.9347, -2711.6822, -2793.422 ,  3409.5128]])

In [235]: mat.dot(inv(mat))
Out[235]:
array([[ 1.,  0., -0., -0., -0.],
       [-0.,  1.,  0.,  0.,  0.],
       [ 0.,  0.,  1.,  0.,  0.],
       [-0.,  0.,  0.,  1., -0.],
       [-0.,  0.,  0.,  0.,  1.]])

In [236]: q, r = qr(mat)

In [237]: r
Out[237]:
array([[-1.6914,  4.38  ,  0.1757,  0.4075, -0.7838],
       [ 0.    , -2.6436,  0.1939, -3.072 , -1.0702],
       [ 0.    ,  0.    , -0.8138,  1.5414,  0.6155],
       [ 0.    ,  0.    ,  0.    , -2.6445, -2.1669],
       [ 0.    ,  0.    ,  0.    ,  0.    ,  0.0002]])
```

The expression `X.T.dot(X)` computes the dot product of `X` with its transpose `X.T`.

See Table 4-7 for a list of some of the most commonly used linear algebra functions.

Table 4-7. Commonly used numpy.linalg functions

Function	Description
`diag`	Return the diagonal (or off-diagonal) elements of a square matrix as a 1D array, or convert a 1D array into a square matrix with zeros on the off-diagonal
`dot`	Matrix multiplication
`trace`	Compute the sum of the diagonal elements
`det`	Compute the matrix determinant
`eig`	Compute the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a square matrix
`inv`	Compute the inverse of a square matrix
`pinv`	Compute the Moore-Penrose pseudo-inverse of a matrix
`qr`	Compute the QR decomposition
`svd`	Compute the singular value decomposition (SVD)
`solve`	Solve the linear system Ax = b for x, where A is a square matrix
`lstsq`	Compute the least-squares solution to `Ax = b`

4.6 Pseudorandom Number Generation

The `numpy.random` module supplements the built-in Python `random` with functions for efficiently generating whole arrays of sample values from many kinds of probability distributions. For example, you can get a 4 × 4 array of samples from the standard normal distribution using `normal`:

```
In [238]: samples = np.random.normal(size=(4, 4))

In [239]: samples
Out[239]:
array([[ 0.5732,  0.1933,  0.4429,  1.2796],
       [ 0.575 ,  0.4339, -0.7658, -1.237 ],
       [-0.5367,  1.8545, -0.92  , -0.1082],
       [ 0.1525,  0.9435, -1.0953, -0.144 ]])
```

Python's built-in `random` module, by contrast, only samples one value at a time. As you can see from this benchmark, `numpy.random` is well over an order of magnitude faster for generating very large samples:

```
In [240]: from random import normalvariate

In [241]: N = 1000000

In [242]: %timeit samples = [normalvariate(0, 1) for _ in range(N)]
1.77 s +- 126 ms per loop (mean +- std. dev. of 7 runs, 1 loop each)

In [243]: %timeit np.random.normal(size=N)
61.7 ms +- 1.32 ms per loop (mean +- std. dev. of 7 runs, 10 loops each)
```

We say that these are *pseudorandom* numbers because they are generated by an algorithm with deterministic behavior based on the *seed* of the random number generator. You can change NumPy's random number generation seed using `np.random.seed`:

```
In [244]: np.random.seed(1234)
```

The data generation functions in `numpy.random` use a global random seed. To avoid global state, you can use `numpy.random.RandomState` to create a random number generator isolated from others:

```
In [245]: rng = np.random.RandomState(1234)

In [246]: rng.randn(10)
Out[246]:
array([ 0.4714, -1.191 ,  1.4327, -0.3127, -0.7206,  0.8872,  0.8596,
       -0.6365,  0.0157, -2.2427])
```

See Table 4-8 for a partial list of functions available in `numpy.random`. I'll give some examples of leveraging these functions' ability to generate large arrays of samples all at once in the next section.

Table 4-8. Partial list of numpy.random functions

Function	Description
`seed`	Seed the random number generator
`permutation`	Return a random permutation of a sequence, or return a permuted range
`shuffle`	Randomly permute a sequence in-place
`rand`	Draw samples from a uniform distribution
`randint`	Draw random integers from a given low-to-high range
`randn`	Draw samples from a normal distribution with mean 0 and standard deviation 1 (MATLAB-like interface)
`binomial`	Draw samples from a binomial distribution
`normal`	Draw samples from a normal (Gaussian) distribution
`beta`	Draw samples from a beta distribution
`chisquare`	Draw samples from a chi-square distribution
`gamma`	Draw samples from a gamma distribution
`uniform`	Draw samples from a uniform [0, 1) distribution

4.7 Example: Random Walks

The simulation of random walks provides an illustrative application of utilizing array operations. Let’s first consider a simple random walk starting at 0 with steps of 1 and –1 occurring with equal probability.

Here is a pure Python way to implement a single random walk with 1,000 steps using the built-in `random` module:

```
In [247]: import random
   .....: position = 0
   .....: walk = [position]
   .....: steps = 1000
   .....: for i in range(steps):
   .....:     step = 1 if random.randint(0, 1) else -1
   .....:     position += step
   .....:     walk.append(position)
   .....:
```

See Figure 4-4 for an example plot of the first 100 values on one of these random walks:

```
In [249]: plt.plot(walk[:100])
```

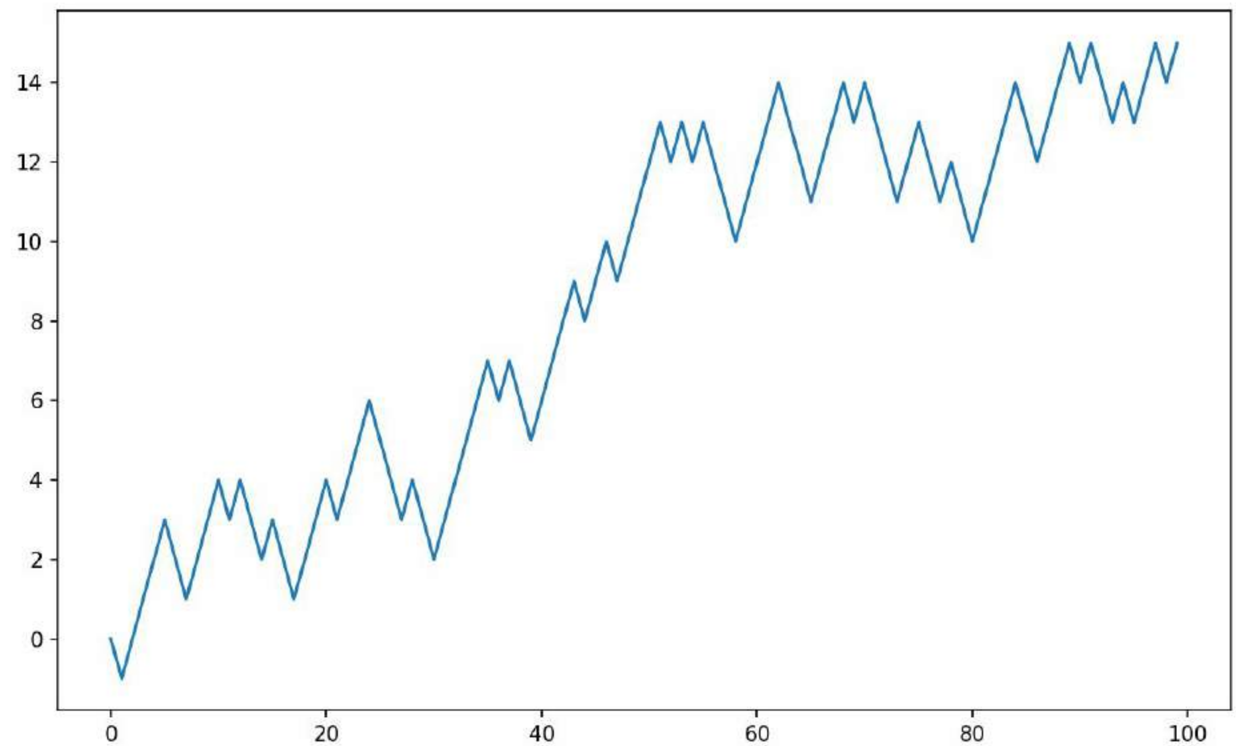


Figure 4-4. A simple random walk

You might make the observation that `walk` is simply the cumulative sum of the random steps and could be evaluated as an array expression. Thus, I use the `np.random` module to draw 1,000 coin flips at once, set these to 1 and –1, and compute the cumulative sum:

```
In [251]: nsteps = 1000

In [252]: draws = np.random.randint(0, 2, size=nsteps)

In [253]: steps = np.where(draws > 0, 1, -1)

In [254]: walk = steps.cumsum()
```

From this we can begin to extract statistics like the minimum and maximum value along the walk's trajectory:

```
In [255]: walk.min()
Out[255]: -3

In [256]: walk.max()
```

```
Out[256]: 31
```

A more complicated statistic is the *first crossing time*, the step at which the random walk reaches a particular value. Here we might want to know how long it took the random walk to get at least 10 steps away from the origin 0 in either direction. `np.abs(walk) >= 10` gives us a boolean array indicating where the walk has reached or exceeded 10, but we want the index of the *first* 10 or –10. Turns out, we can compute this using `argmax`, which returns the first index of the maximum value in the boolean array (`True` is the maximum value):

```
In [257]: (np.abs(walk) >= 10).argmax()
Out[257]: 37
```

Note that using `argmax` here is not always efficient because it always makes a full scan of the array. In this special case, once a `True` is observed we know it to be the maximum value.

Simulating Many Random Walks at Once

If your goal was to simulate many random walks, say 5,000 of them, you can generate all of the random walks with minor modifications to the preceding code. If passed a 2-tuple, the `numpy.random` functions will generate a two-dimensional array of draws, and we can compute the cumulative sum across the rows to compute all 5,000 random walks in one shot:

```
In [258]: nwalks = 5000

In [259]: nsteps = 1000

In [260]: draws = np.random.randint(0, 2, size=(nwalks, nsteps)) # 0 or 1

In [261]: steps = np.where(draws > 0, 1, -1)

In [262]: walks = steps.cumsum(1)

In [263]: walks
Out[263]:
array([[  1,   0,   1, ...,   8,   7,   8],
       [  1,   0,  -1, ...,  34,  33,  32],
       [  1,   0,  -1, ...,   4,   5,   4],
       ...,
       [  1,   2,   1, ...,  24,  25,  26],
       [  1,   2,   3, ...,  14,  13,  14],
       [ -1,  -2,  -3, ..., -24, -23, -22]])
```

Now, we can compute the maximum and minimum values obtained over all of the walks:

```
In [264]: walks.max()
Out[264]: 138

In [265]: walks.min()
Out[265]: -133
```

Out of these walks, let’s compute the minimum crossing time to 30 or –30. This is slightly tricky because not all 5,000 of them reach 30. We can check this using the `any` method:

```
In [266]: hits30 = (np.abs(walks) >= 30).any(1)

In [267]: hits30
```

```
Out[267]: array([False,  True, False, ..., False,  True, False], dtype=bool)

In [268]: hits30.sum() # Number that hit 30 or -30
Out[268]: 3410
```

We can use this boolean array to select out the rows of `walks` that actually cross the absolute 30 level and call `argmax` across axis 1 to get the crossing times:

```
In [269]: crossing_times = (np.abs(walks[hits30]) >= 30).argmax(1)

In [270]: crossing_times.mean()
Out[270]: 498.88973607038122
```

Feel free to experiment with other distributions for the steps other than equal-sized coin flips. You need only use a different random number generation function, like `normal` to generate normally distributed steps with some mean and standard deviation:

```
In [271]: steps = np.random.normal(loc=0, scale=0.25,
   .....:                          size=(nwalks, nsteps))
```

4.8 Conclusion

While much of the rest of the book will focus on building data wrangling skills with pandas, we will continue to work in a similar array-based style. In Appendix A, we will dig deeper into NumPy features to help you further develop your array computing skills.

Chapter 5. Getting Started with pandas

pandas will be a major tool of interest throughout much of the rest of the book. It contains data structures and data manipulation tools designed to make data cleaning and analysis fast and easy in Python. pandas is often used in tandem with numerical computing tools like NumPy and SciPy, analytical libraries like statsmodels and scikit-learn, and data visualization libraries like matplotlib. pandas adopts significant parts of NumPy's idiomatic style of array-based computing, especially array-based functions and a preference for data processing without `for` loops.

While pandas adopts many coding idioms from NumPy, the biggest difference is that pandas is designed for working with tabular or heterogeneous data. NumPy, by contrast, is best suited for working with homogeneous numerical array data.

Since becoming an open source project in 2010, pandas has matured into a quite large library that's applicable in a broad set of real-world use cases. The developer community has grown to over 800 distinct contributors, who've been helping build the project as they've used it to solve their day-to-day data problems.

Throughout the rest of the book, I use the following import convention for pandas:

```
In [1]: import pandas as pd
```

Thus, whenever you see `pd.` in code, it's referring to pandas. You may also find it easier to import Series and DataFrame into the local namespace since they are so frequently used:

```
In [2]: from pandas import Series, DataFrame
```

5.1 Introduction to pandas Data Structures

To get started with pandas, you will need to get comfortable with its two workhorse data structures: *Series* and *DataFrame*. While they are not a universal solution for every problem, they provide a solid, easy-to-use basis for most applications.

Series

A Series is a one-dimensional array-like object containing a sequence of values (of similar types to NumPy types) and an associated array of data labels, called its *index*. The simplest Series is formed from only an array of data:

```
In [11]: obj = pd.Series([4, 7, -5, 3])

In [12]: obj
Out[12]:
0    4
1    7
2   -5
3    3
dtype: int64
```

The string representation of a Series displayed interactively shows the index on the left and the values on the right. Since we did not specify an index for the data, a default one consisting of the integers `0` through `N - 1` (where `N` is the length of the data) is created. You can get the array representation and index object of the Series via its values and index attributes, respectively:

```
In [13]: obj.values
Out[13]: array([ 4,  7, -5,  3])

In [14]: obj.index  # like range(4)
Out[14]: RangeIndex(start=0, stop=4, step=1)
```

Often it will be desirable to create a Series with an index identifying each data point with a label:

```
In [15]: obj2 = pd.Series([4, 7, -5, 3], index=['d', 'b', 'a', 'c'])

In [16]: obj2
Out[16]:
d    4
b    7
a   -5
c    3
dtype: int64

In [17]: obj2.index
Out[17]: Index(['d', 'b', 'a', 'c'], dtype='object')
```

Compared with NumPy arrays, you can use labels in the index when selecting single values or a set of values:

```
In [18]: obj2['a']
Out[18]: -5

In [19]: obj2['d'] = 6

In [20]: obj2[['c', 'a', 'd']]
Out[20]:
c    3
a   -5
d    6
dtype: int64
```

Here `['c', 'a', 'd']` is interpreted as a list of indices, even though it contains strings instead of integers.

Using NumPy functions or NumPy-like operations, such as filtering with a boolean array, scalar multiplication, or applying math functions, will preserve the index-value link:

```
In [21]: obj2[obj2 > 0]
Out[21]:
d    6
b    7
c    3
dtype: int64

In [22]: obj2 * 2
Out[22]:
d    12
b    14
a   -10
c     6
dtype: int64

In [23]: np.exp(obj2)
Out[23]:
d     403.428793
b    1096.633158
a       0.006738
c      20.085537
dtype: float64
```

Another way to think about a Series is as a fixed-length, ordered dict, as it is a mapping of index values to data values. It can be used in many contexts where you might use a dict:

```
In [24]: 'b' in obj2
Out[24]: True

In [25]: 'e' in obj2
Out[25]: False
```

Should you have data contained in a Python dict, you can create a Series from it by passing the dict:

```
In [26]: sdata = {'Ohio': 35000, 'Texas': 71000, 'Oregon': 16000, 'Utah':
5000}

In [27]: obj3 = pd.Series(sdata)

In [28]: obj3
Out[28]:
Ohio      35000
Oregon    16000
Texas     71000
Utah       5000
dtype: int64
```

When you are only passing a dict, the index in the resulting Series will have the dict's keys in sorted order. You can override this by passing the dict keys in the order you want them to appear in the resulting Series:

```
In [29]: states = ['California', 'Ohio', 'Oregon', 'Texas']

In [30]: obj4 = pd.Series(sdata, index=states)

In [31]: obj4
Out[31]:
California        NaN
Ohio          35000.0
Oregon        16000.0
Texas         71000.0
dtype: float64
```

Here, three values found in `sdata` were placed in the appropriate locations, but since no value for `'California'` was found, it appears as `NaN` (not a number), which is considered in pandas to mark missing or *NA* values. Since `'Utah'` was not included in `states`, it is excluded from the resulting object.

I will use the terms "missing" or "NA" interchangeably to refer to missing data. The `isnull` and `notnull` functions in pandas should be used to detect missing data:

```
In [32]: pd.isnull(obj4)
Out[32]:
California     True
Ohio          False
Oregon        False
Texas         False
dtype: bool

In [33]: pd.notnull(obj4)
Out[33]:
California    False
Ohio           True
Oregon         True
Texas          True
dtype: bool
```

Series also has these as instance methods:

```
In [34]: obj4.isnull()
Out[34]:
California     True
Ohio          False
Oregon        False
Texas         False
dtype: bool
```

I discuss working with missing data in more detail in Chapter 7.

A useful Series feature for many applications is that it automatically aligns by index label in arithmetic operations:

```
In [35]: obj3
Out[35]:
Ohio      35000
Oregon    16000
Texas     71000
Utah       5000
dtype: int64

In [36]: obj4
Out[36]:
California        NaN
Ohio          35000.0
Oregon        16000.0
Texas         71000.0
dtype: float64

In [37]: obj3 + obj4
Out[37]:
```

```
California         NaN
Ohio           70000.0
Oregon         32000.0
Texas         142000.0
Utah               NaN
dtype: float64
```

Data alignment features will be addressed in more detail later. If you have experience with databases, you can think about this as being similar to a join operation.

Both the Series object itself and its index have a `name` attribute, which integrates with other key areas of pandas functionality:

```
In [38]: obj4.name = 'population'

In [39]: obj4.index.name = 'state'

In [40]: obj4
Out[40]:
state
California        NaN
Ohio          35000.0
Oregon        16000.0
Texas         71000.0
Name: population, dtype: float64
```

A Series's index can be altered in-place by assignment:

```
In [41]: obj
Out[41]:
0    4
1    7
2   -5
3    3
dtype: int64

In [42]: obj.index = ['Bob', 'Steve', 'Jeff', 'Ryan']

In [43]: obj
Out[43]:
Bob      4
Steve    7
Jeff    -5
Ryan     3
dtype: int64
```

DataFrame

A DataFrame represents a rectangular table of data and contains an ordered collection of columns, each of which can be a different value type (numeric, string, boolean, etc.). The DataFrame has both a row and column index; it can be thought of as a dict of Series all sharing the same index. Under the hood, the data is stored as one or more two-dimensional blocks rather than a list, dict, or some other collection of one-dimensional arrays. The exact details of DataFrame's internals are outside the scope of this book.

> **NOTE**
>
> While a DataFrame is physically two-dimensional, you can use it to represent higher dimensional data in a tabular format using hierarchical indexing, a subject we will discuss in Chapter 8 and an ingredient in some of the more advanced data-handling features in pandas.

There are many ways to construct a DataFrame, though one of the most common is from a dict of equal-length lists or NumPy arrays:

```
data = {'state': ['Ohio', 'Ohio', 'Ohio', 'Nevada', 'Nevada', 'Nevada'],
        'year': [2000, 2001, 2002, 2001, 2002, 2003],
        'pop': [1.5, 1.7, 3.6, 2.4, 2.9, 3.2]}
frame = pd.DataFrame(data)
```

The resulting DataFrame will have its index assigned automatically as with Series, and the columns are placed in sorted order:

```
In [45]: frame
Out[45]:
   pop   state  year
0  1.5    Ohio  2000
1  1.7    Ohio  2001
2  3.6    Ohio  2002
3  2.4  Nevada  2001
4  2.9  Nevada  2002
5  3.2  Nevada  2003
```

If you are using the Jupyter notebook, pandas DataFrame objects will be displayed as a more browser-friendly HTML table.

For large DataFrames, the `head` method selects only the first five rows:

```
In [46]: frame.head()
Out[46]:
   pop   state  year
0  1.5    Ohio  2000
1  1.7    Ohio  2001
2  3.6    Ohio  2002
3  2.4  Nevada  2001
4  2.9  Nevada  2002
```

If you specify a sequence of columns, the DataFrame's columns will be arranged in that order:

```
In [47]: pd.DataFrame(data, columns=['year', 'state', 'pop'])
Out[47]:
   year   state  pop
0  2000    Ohio  1.5
1  2001    Ohio  1.7
2  2002    Ohio  3.6
3  2001  Nevada  2.4
4  2002  Nevada  2.9
5  2003  Nevada  3.2
```

If you pass a column that isn't contained in the dict, it will appear with missing values in the result:

```
In [48]: frame2 = pd.DataFrame(data, columns=['year', 'state', 'pop',
'debt'],
   ....:                          index=['one', 'two', 'three', 'four',
   ....:                                 'five', 'six'])

In [49]: frame2
Out[49]:
       year   state  pop debt
one    2000    Ohio  1.5  NaN
two    2001    Ohio  1.7  NaN
three  2002    Ohio  3.6  NaN
four   2001  Nevada  2.4  NaN
five   2002  Nevada  2.9  NaN
six    2003  Nevada  3.2  NaN

In [50]: frame2.columns
Out[50]: Index(['year', 'state', 'pop', 'debt'], dtype='object')
```

A column in a DataFrame can be retrieved as a Series either by dict-like notation or by attribute:

```
In [51]: frame2['state']
Out[51]:
one        Ohio
two        Ohio
three      Ohio
four     Nevada
five     Nevada
six      Nevada
Name: state, dtype: object

In [52]: frame2.year
Out[52]:
one      2000
two      2001
three    2002
four     2001
five     2002
six      2003
Name: year, dtype: int64
```

> **NOTE**
>
> Attribute-like access (e.g., `frame2.year`) and tab completion of column names in IPython is provided as a convenience.
>
> `frame2[column]` works for any column name, but `frame2.column` only works when the column name is a valid Python variable name.

Note that the returned Series have the same index as the DataFrame, and their `name` attribute has been appropriately set.

Rows can also be retrieved by position or name with the special `loc` attribute (much more on this later):

```
In [53]: frame2.loc['three']
Out[53]:
year     2002
state    Ohio
pop       3.6
debt      NaN
Name: three, dtype: object
```

Columns can be modified by assignment. For example, the empty `'debt'` column could be assigned a scalar value or an array of values:

```
In [54]: frame2['debt'] = 16.5

In [55]: frame2
Out[55]:
       year   state  pop  debt
one    2000    Ohio  1.5  16.5
two    2001    Ohio  1.7  16.5
three  2002    Ohio  3.6  16.5
four   2001  Nevada  2.4  16.5
five   2002  Nevada  2.9  16.5
six    2003  Nevada  3.2  16.5

In [56]: frame2['debt'] = np.arange(6.)

In [57]: frame2
Out[57]:
       year   state  pop  debt
one    2000    Ohio  1.5   0.0
two    2001    Ohio  1.7   1.0
three  2002    Ohio  3.6   2.0
four   2001  Nevada  2.4   3.0
five   2002  Nevada  2.9   4.0
six    2003  Nevada  3.2   5.0
```

When you are assigning lists or arrays to a column, the value's length must match the length of the DataFrame. If you assign a Series, its labels will be realigned exactly to the DataFrame's index, inserting missing values in any holes:

```
In [58]: val = pd.Series([-1.2, -1.5, -1.7], index=['two', 'four', 'five'])

In [59]: frame2['debt'] = val

In [60]: frame2
Out[60]:
       year   state  pop  debt
one    2000    Ohio  1.5   NaN
two    2001    Ohio  1.7  -1.2
three  2002    Ohio  3.6   NaN
four   2001  Nevada  2.4  -1.5
five   2002  Nevada  2.9  -1.7
six    2003  Nevada  3.2   NaN
```

Assigning a column that doesn't exist will create a new column. The `del` keyword will delete columns as with a dict.

As an example of `del`, I first add a new column of boolean values where the `state` column equals `'Ohio'`:

```
In [61]: frame2['eastern'] = frame2.state == 'Ohio'

In [62]: frame2
Out[62]:
       year   state  pop  debt  eastern
one    2000    Ohio  1.5   NaN     True
two    2001    Ohio  1.7  -1.2     True
three  2002    Ohio  3.6   NaN     True
four   2001  Nevada  2.4  -1.5    False
five   2002  Nevada  2.9  -1.7    False
six    2003  Nevada  3.2   NaN    False
```

CAUTION

New columns cannot be created with the `frame2.eastern` syntax.

The `del` method can then be used to remove this column:

```
In [63]: del frame2['eastern']

In [64]: frame2.columns
Out[64]: Index(['year', 'state', 'pop', 'debt'], dtype='object')
```

CAUTION

The column returned from indexing a DataFrame is a *view* on the underlying data, not a copy. Thus, any in-place modifications to the Series will be reflected in the DataFrame. The column can be explicitly copied with the Series's `copy` method.

Another common form of data is a nested dict of dicts:

```
In [65]: pop = {'Nevada': {2001: 2.4, 2002: 2.9},
   ....:        'Ohio': {2000: 1.5, 2001: 1.7, 2002: 3.6}}
```

If the nested dict is passed to the DataFrame, pandas will interpret the outer dict keys as the columns and the inner keys as the row indices:

```
In [66]: frame3 = pd.DataFrame(pop)

In [67]: frame3
Out[67]:
      Nevada  Ohio
2000     NaN   1.5
2001     2.4   1.7
2002     2.9   3.6
```

You can transpose the DataFrame (swap rows and columns) with similar syntax to a NumPy array:

```
In [68]: frame3.T
Out[68]:
        2000  2001  2002
Nevada   NaN   2.4   2.9
Ohio     1.5   1.7   3.6
```

The keys in the inner dicts are combined and sorted to form the index in the result. This isn't true if an explicit index is specified:

```
In [69]: pd.DataFrame(pop, index=[2001, 2002, 2003])
Out[69]:
      Nevada  Ohio
2001     2.4   1.7
2002     2.9   3.6
2003     NaN   NaN
```

Dicts of Series are treated in much the same way:

```
In [70]: pdata = {'Ohio': frame3['Ohio'][:-1],
   ....:          'Nevada': frame3['Nevada'][:2]}

In [71]: pd.DataFrame(pdata)
Out[71]:
      Nevada  Ohio
2000     NaN   1.5
2001     2.4   1.7
```

For a complete list of things you can pass the DataFrame constructor, see Table 5-1.

If a DataFrame's `index` and `columns` have their `name` attributes set, these will also be displayed:

```
In [72]: frame3.index.name = 'year'; frame3.columns.name = 'state'

In [73]: frame3
Out[73]:
state  Nevada  Ohio
year
2000      NaN   1.5
2001      2.4   1.7
2002      2.9   3.6
```

As with Series, the `values` attribute returns the data contained in the DataFrame as a two-dimensional ndarray:

```
In [74]: frame3.values
Out[74]:
array([[ nan,  1.5],
       [ 2.4,  1.7],
       [ 2.9,  3.6]])
```

If the DataFrame's columns are different dtypes, the dtype of the values array will be chosen to accommodate all of the columns:

```
In [75]: frame2.values
Out[75]:
array([[2000, 'Ohio', 1.5, nan],
       [2001, 'Ohio', 1.7, -1.2],
       [2002, 'Ohio', 3.6, nan],
       [2001, 'Nevada', 2.4, -1.5],
       [2002, 'Nevada', 2.9, -1.7],
       [2003, 'Nevada', 3.2, nan]], dtype=object)
```

Table 5-1. Possible data inputs to DataFrame constructor

Type	Notes
2D ndarray	A matrix of data, passing optional row and column labels
dict of arrays, lists, or tuples	Each sequence becomes a column in the DataFrame; all sequences must be the same length
NumPy structured/record array	Treated as the "dict of arrays" case

dict of Series	Each value becomes a column; indexes from each Series are unioned together to form the result's row index if no explicit index is passed
dict of dicts	Each inner dict becomes a column; keys are unioned to form the row index as in the "dict of Series" case
List of dicts or Series	Each item becomes a row in the DataFrame; union of dict keys or Series indexes become the DataFrame's column labels
List of lists or tuples	Treated as the "2D ndarray" case
Another DataFrame	The DataFrame's indexes are used unless different ones are passed
NumPy MaskedArray	Like the "2D ndarray" case except masked values become NA/missing in the DataFrame result

Index Objects

pandas's Index objects are responsible for holding the axis labels and other metadata (like the axis name or names). Any array or other sequence of labels you use when constructing a Series or DataFrame is internally converted to an Index:

```
In [76]: obj = pd.Series(range(3), index=['a', 'b', 'c'])

In [77]: index = obj.index

In [78]: index
Out[78]: Index(['a', 'b', 'c'], dtype='object')

In [79]: index[1:]
Out[79]: Index(['b', 'c'], dtype='object')
```

Index objects are immutable and thus can't be modified by the user:

```
index[1] = 'd'  # TypeError
```

Immutability makes it safer to share Index objects among data structures:

```
In [80]: labels = pd.Index(np.arange(3))

In [81]: labels
Out[81]: Int64Index([0, 1, 2], dtype='int64')

In [82]: obj2 = pd.Series([1.5, -2.5, 0], index=labels)

In [83]: obj2
Out[83]:
0    1.5
1   -2.5
2    0.0
dtype: float64

In [84]: obj2.index is labels
Out[84]: True
```

CAUTION

Some users will not often take advantage of the capabilities provided by indexes, but because some operations will yield results containing indexed data, it’s important to understand how they work.

In addition to being array-like, an Index also behaves like a fixed-size set:

```
In [85]: frame3
Out[85]:
state  Nevada  Ohio
year
2000      NaN   1.5
2001      2.4   1.7
2002      2.9   3.6

In [86]: frame3.columns
Out[86]: Index(['Nevada', 'Ohio'], dtype='object', name='state')

In [87]: 'Ohio' in frame3.columns
Out[87]: True

In [88]: 2003 in frame3.index
Out[88]: False
```

Unlike Python sets, a pandas Index can contain duplicate labels:

```
In [89]: dup_labels = pd.Index(['foo', 'foo', 'bar', 'bar'])

In [90]: dup_labels
Out[90]: Index(['foo', 'foo', 'bar', 'bar'], dtype='object')
```

Selections with duplicate labels will select all occurrences of that label.

Each Index has a number of methods and properties for set logic, which answer other common questions about the data it contains. Some useful ones are summarized in Table 5-2.

Table 5-2. Some Index methods and properties

Method	Description
`append`	Concatenate with additional Index objects, producing a new Index
`difference`	Compute set difference as an Index
`intersection`	Compute set intersection
`union`	Compute set union
`isin`	Compute boolean array indicating whether each value is contained in the

	passed collection
`delete`	Compute new Index with element at index `i` deleted
`drop`	Compute new Index by deleting passed values
`insert`	Compute new Index by inserting element at index `i`
`is_monotonic`	Returns `True` if each element is greater than or equal to the previous element
`is_unique`	Returns `True` if the Index has no duplicate values
`unique`	Compute the array of unique values in the Index

5.2 Essential Functionality

This section will walk you through the fundamental mechanics of interacting with the data contained in a Series or DataFrame. In the chapters to come, we will delve more deeply into data analysis and manipulation topics using pandas. This book is not intended to serve as exhaustive documentation for the pandas library; instead, we'll focus on the most important features, leaving the less common (i.e., more esoteric) things for you to explore on your own.

Reindexing

An important method on pandas objects is `reindex`, which means to create a new object with the data *conformed* to a new index. Consider an example:

```
In [91]: obj = pd.Series([4.5, 7.2, -5.3, 3.6], index=['d', 'b', 'a', 'c'])

In [92]: obj
Out[92]:
d    4.5
b    7.2
a   -5.3
c    3.6
dtype: float64
```

Calling `reindex` on this Series rearranges the data according to the new index, introducing missing values if any index values were not already present:

```
In [93]: obj2 = obj.reindex(['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'])

In [94]: obj2
Out[94]:
a   -5.3
b    7.2
c    3.6
d    4.5
e    NaN
dtype: float64
```

For ordered data like time series, it may be desirable to do some interpolation or filling of values when reindexing. The `method` option allows us to do this, using a method such as `ffill`, which forward-fills the values:

```
In [95]: obj3 = pd.Series(['blue', 'purple', 'yellow'], index=[0, 2, 4])

In [96]: obj3
Out[96]:
0      blue
2    purple
4    yellow
dtype: object

In [97]: obj3.reindex(range(6), method='ffill')
Out[97]:
```

```
0      blue
1      blue
2    purple
3    purple
4    yellow
5    yellow
dtype: object
```

With DataFrame, `reindex` can alter either the (row) index, columns, or both. When passed only a sequence, it reindexes the rows in the result:

```
In [98]: frame = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(9).reshape((3, 3)),
   ....:                      index=['a', 'c', 'd'],
   ....:                      columns=['Ohio', 'Texas', 'California'])

In [99]: frame
Out[99]:
   Ohio  Texas  California
a     0      1           2
c     3      4           5
d     6      7           8

In [100]: frame2 = frame.reindex(['a', 'b', 'c', 'd'])

In [101]: frame2
Out[101]:
   Ohio  Texas  California
a   0.0    1.0         2.0
b   NaN    NaN         NaN
c   3.0    4.0         5.0
d   6.0    7.0         8.0
```

The columns can be reindexed with the `columns` keyword:

```
In [102]: states = ['Texas', 'Utah', 'California']

In [103]: frame.reindex(columns=states)
Out[103]:
   Texas  Utah  California
a      1   NaN           2
c      4   NaN           5
d      7   NaN           8
```

See Table 5-3 for more about the arguments to `reindex`.

As we'll explore in more detail, you can reindex more succinctly by label-indexing with `loc`, and many users prefer to use it exclusively:

```
In [104]: frame.loc[['a', 'b', 'c', 'd'], states]
```

```
Out[104]:
   Texas  Utah  California
a    1.0   NaN         2.0
b    NaN   NaN         NaN
c    4.0   NaN         5.0
d    7.0   NaN         8.0
```

Table 5-3. reindex function arguments

Argument	Description
`index`	New sequence to use as index. Can be Index instance or any other sequence-like Python data structure. An Index will be used exactly as is without any copying.
`method`	Interpolation (fill) method; `'ffill'` fills forward, while `'bfill'` fills backward.
`fill_value`	Substitute value to use when introducing missing data by reindexing.
`limit`	When forward- or backfilling, maximum size gap (in number of elements) to fill.
`tolerance`	When forward- or backfilling, maximum size gap (in absolute numeric distance) to fill for inexact matches.
`level`	Match simple Index on level of MultiIndex; otherwise select subset of.
`copy`	If `True`, always copy underlying data even if new index is equivalent to old index; if `False`, do not copy the data when the indexes are equivalent.

Dropping Entries from an Axis

Dropping one or more entries from an axis is easy if you already have an index array or list without those entries. As that can require a bit of munging and set logic, the `drop` method will return a new object with the indicated value or values deleted from an axis:

```
In [105]: obj = pd.Series(np.arange(5.), index=['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'])

In [106]: obj
Out[106]:
a    0.0
b    1.0
c    2.0
d    3.0
e    4.0
dtype: float64

In [107]: new_obj = obj.drop('c')

In [108]: new_obj
Out[108]:
a    0.0
b    1.0
d    3.0
e    4.0
dtype: float64

In [109]: obj.drop(['d', 'c'])
Out[109]:
a    0.0
b    1.0
e    4.0
dtype: float64
```

With DataFrame, index values can be deleted from either axis. To illustrate this, we first create an example DataFrame:

```
In [110]: data = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(16).reshape((4, 4)),
   .....:                     index=['Ohio', 'Colorado', 'Utah', 'New York'],
   .....:                     columns=['one', 'two', 'three', 'four'])

In [111]: data
Out[111]:
          one  two  three  four
Ohio        0    1      2     3
Colorado    4    5      6     7
Utah        8    9     10    11
```

```
New York    12    13      14      15
```

Calling `drop` with a sequence of labels will drop values from the row labels (axis 0):

```
In [112]: data.drop(['Colorado', 'Ohio'])
Out[112]:
          one  two  three  four
Utah        8    9     10    11
New York   12   13     14    15
```

You can drop values from the columns by passing `axis=1` or `axis='columns'`:

```
In [113]: data.drop('two', axis=1)
Out[113]:
          one  three  four
Ohio        0      2     3
Colorado    4      6     7
Utah        8     10    11
New York   12     14    15

In [114]: data.drop(['two', 'four'], axis='columns')
Out[114]:
          one  three
Ohio        0      2
Colorado    4      6
Utah        8     10
New York   12     14
```

Many functions, like `drop`, which modify the size or shape of a Series or DataFrame, can manipulate an object *in-place* without returning a new object:

```
In [115]: obj.drop('c', inplace=True)

In [116]: obj
Out[116]:
a    0.0
b    1.0
d    3.0
e    4.0
dtype: float64
```

Be careful with the `inplace`, as it destroys any data that is dropped.

Indexing, Selection, and Filtering

Series indexing (`obj[...]`) works analogously to NumPy array indexing, except you can use the Series's index values instead of only integers. Here are some examples of this:

```
In [117]: obj = pd.Series(np.arange(4.), index=['a', 'b', 'c', 'd'])

In [118]: obj
Out[118]:
a    0.0
b    1.0
c    2.0
d    3.0
dtype: float64

In [119]: obj['b']
Out[119]: 1.0

In [120]: obj[1]
Out[120]: 1.0

In [121]: obj[2:4]
Out[121]:
c    2.0
d    3.0
dtype: float64

In [122]: obj[['b', 'a', 'd']]
Out[122]:
b    1.0
a    0.0
d    3.0
dtype: float64

In [123]: obj[[1, 3]]
Out[123]:
b    1.0
d    3.0
dtype: float64

In [124]: obj[obj < 2]
Out[124]:
a    0.0
b    1.0
dtype: float64
```

Slicing with labels behaves differently than normal Python slicing in that the endpoint is inclusive:

```
In [125]: obj['b':'c']
Out[125]:
b    1.0
c    2.0
dtype: float64
```

Setting using these methods modifies the corresponding section of the Series:

```
In [126]: obj['b':'c'] = 5

In [127]: obj
Out[127]:
a    0.0
b    5.0
c    5.0
d    3.0
dtype: float64
```

Indexing into a DataFrame is for retrieving one or more columns either with a single value or sequence:

```
In [128]: data = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(16).reshape((4, 4)),
   .....:                     index=['Ohio', 'Colorado', 'Utah', 'New York'],
   .....:                     columns=['one', 'two', 'three', 'four'])

In [129]: data
Out[129]:
          one  two  three  four
Ohio        0    1      2     3
Colorado    4    5      6     7
Utah        8    9     10    11
New York   12   13     14    15

In [130]: data['two']
Out[130]:
Ohio         1
Colorado     5
Utah         9
New York    13
Name: two, dtype: int64

In [131]: data[['three', 'one']]
Out[131]:
          three  one
Ohio          2    0
Colorado      6    4
Utah         10    8
New York     14   12
```

Indexing like this has a few special cases. First, slicing or selecting data with a boolean array:

```
In [132]: data[:2]
Out[132]:
          one  two  three  four
Ohio        0    1      2     3
Colorado    4    5      6     7

In [133]: data[data['three'] > 5]
Out[133]:
          one  two  three  four
Colorado    4    5      6     7
Utah        8    9     10    11
New York   12   13     14    15
```

The row selection syntax `data[:2]` is provided as a convenience. Passing a single element or a list to the `[]` operator selects columns.

Another use case is in indexing with a boolean DataFrame, such as one produced by a scalar comparison:

```
In [134]: data < 5
Out[134]:
            one    two  three   four
Ohio       True   True   True   True
Colorado   True  False  False  False
Utah      False  False  False  False
New York  False  False  False  False

In [135]: data[data < 5] = 0

In [136]: data
Out[136]:
          one  two  three  four
Ohio        0    0      0     0
Colorado    0    5      6     7
Utah        8    9     10    11
New York   12   13     14    15
```

This makes DataFrame syntactically more like a two-dimensional NumPy array in this particular case.

Selection with loc and iloc

For DataFrame label-indexing on the rows, I introduce the special indexing operators `loc` and `iloc`. They enable you to select a subset of the rows and columns from a DataFrame with NumPy-like notation using either axis labels (`loc`) or integers (`iloc`).

As a preliminary example, let's select a single row and multiple columns by label:

```
In [137]: data.loc['Colorado', ['two', 'three']]
Out[137]:
two      5
three    6
Name: Colorado, dtype: int64
```

We'll then perform some similar selections with integers using `iloc`:

```
In [138]: data.iloc[2, [3, 0, 1]]
Out[138]:
four    11
one      8
two      9
Name: Utah, dtype: int64

In [139]: data.iloc[2]
Out[139]:
one       8
two       9
three    10
four     11
Name: Utah, dtype: int64

In [140]: data.iloc[[1, 2], [3, 0, 1]]
Out[140]:
          four  one  two
Colorado     7    0    5
Utah        11    8    9
```

Both indexing functions work with slices in addition to single labels or lists of labels:

```
In [141]: data.loc[:'Utah', 'two']
Out[141]:
Ohio        0
Colorado    5
Utah        9
Name: two, dtype: int64

In [142]: data.iloc[:, :3][data.three > 5]
Out[142]:
          one  two  three
Colorado    0    5      6
Utah        8    9     10
New York   12   13     14
```

So there are many ways to select and rearrange the data contained in a pandas object. For DataFrame, Table 5-4 provides a short summary of many of them. As you'll see later, there are a number of additional options for working with hierarchical indexes.

> **NOTE**
>
> When originally designing pandas, I felt that having to type `frame[:, col]` to select a column was too verbose (and error-prone), since column selection is one of the most common operations. I made the design trade-off to push all of the fancy indexing behavior (both labels and integers) into the `ix` operator. In practice, this led to many edge cases in data with integer axis labels, so the pandas team decided to create the `loc` and `iloc` operators to deal with strictly label-based and integer-based indexing, respectively.
>
> The `ix` indexing operator still exists, but it is deprecated. I do not recommend using it.

Table 5-4. Indexing options with DataFrame

Type	Notes
`df[val]`	Select single column or sequence of columns from the DataFrame; special case conveniences: boolean array (filter rows), slice (slice rows), or boolean DataFrame (set values based on some criterion)
`df.loc[val]`	Selects single row or subset of rows from the DataFrame by label
`df.loc[:, val]`	Selects single column or subset of columns by label
`df.loc[val1, val2]`	Select both rows and columns by label
`df.iloc[where]`	Selects single row or subset of rows from the DataFrame by integer position
`df.iloc[:, where]`	Selects single column or subset of columns by integer position
`df.iloc[where_i, where_j]`	Select both rows and columns by integer position
`df.at[label_i, label_j]`	Select a single scalar value by row and column label

`df.iat[i, j]`	Select a single scalar value by row and column position (integers)
`reindex` method	Select either rows or columns by labels
`get_value`, `set_value` methods	Select single value by row and column label

Integer Indexes

Working with pandas objects indexed by integers is something that often trips up new users due to some differences with indexing semantics on built-in Python data structures like lists and tuples. For example, you might not expect the following code to generate an error:

```
ser = pd.Series(np.arange(3.))
ser
ser[-1]
```

In this case, pandas could “fall back” on integer indexing, but it’s difficult to do this in general without introducing subtle bugs. Here we have an index containing 0, 1, 2, but inferring what the user wants (label-based indexing or position-based) is difficult:

```
In [144]: ser
Out[144]:
0    0.0
1    1.0
2    2.0
dtype: float64
```

On the other hand, with a non-integer index, there is no potential for ambiguity:

```
In [145]: ser2 = pd.Series(np.arange(3.), index=['a', 'b', 'c'])

In [146]: ser2[-1]
Out[146]: 2.0
```

To keep things consistent, if you have an axis index containing integers, data selection will always be label-oriented. For more precise handling, use `loc` (for labels) or `iloc` (for integers):

```
In [147]: ser[:1]
Out[147]:
0    0.0
dtype: float64

In [148]: ser.loc[:1]
```

```
Out[148]:
0    0.0
1    1.0
dtype: float64

In [149]: ser.iloc[:1]
Out[149]:
0    0.0
dtype: float64
```

Arithmetic and Data Alignment

An important pandas feature for some applications is the behavior of arithmetic between objects with different indexes. When you are adding together objects, if any index pairs are not the same, the respective index in the result will be the union of the index pairs. For users with database experience, this is similar to an automatic outer join on the index labels. Let's look at an example:

```
In [150]: s1 = pd.Series([7.3, -2.5, 3.4, 1.5], index=['a', 'c', 'd', 'e'])

In [151]: s2 = pd.Series([-2.1, 3.6, -1.5, 4, 3.1],
   .....:                index=['a', 'c', 'e', 'f', 'g'])

In [152]: s1
Out[152]:
a    7.3
c   -2.5
d    3.4
e    1.5
dtype: float64

In [153]: s2
Out[153]:
a   -2.1
c    3.6
e   -1.5
f    4.0
g    3.1
dtype: float64
```

Adding these together yields:

```
In [154]: s1 + s2
Out[154]:
a    5.2
c    1.1
d    NaN
e    0.0
f    NaN
g    NaN
dtype: float64
```

The internal data alignment introduces missing values in the label locations that don't overlap. Missing values will then propagate in further arithmetic computations.

In the case of DataFrame, alignment is performed on both the rows and the columns:

```
In [155]: df1 = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(9.).reshape((3, 3)),
columns=list('bcd'),
   .....:                        index=['Ohio', 'Texas', 'Colorado'])

In [156]: df2 = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(12.).reshape((4, 3)),
columns=list('bde'),
   .....:                        index=['Utah', 'Ohio', 'Texas', 'Oregon'])

In [157]: df1
Out[157]:
            b    c    d
Ohio      0.0  1.0  2.0
Texas     3.0  4.0  5.0
Colorado  6.0  7.0  8.0

In [158]: df2
Out[158]:
          b     d     e
Utah    0.0   1.0   2.0
Ohio    3.0   4.0   5.0
Texas   6.0   7.0   8.0
Oregon  9.0  10.0  11.0
```

Adding these together returns a DataFrame whose index and columns are the unions of the ones in each DataFrame:

```
In [159]: df1 + df2
Out[159]:
            b   c     d   e
Colorado  NaN NaN   NaN NaN
Ohio      3.0 NaN   6.0 NaN
Oregon    NaN NaN   NaN NaN
Texas     9.0 NaN  12.0 NaN
Utah      NaN NaN   NaN NaN
```

Since the `'c'` and `'e'` columns are not found in both DataFrame objects, they appear as all missing in the result. The same holds for the rows whose labels are not common to both objects.

If you add DataFrame objects with no column or row labels in common, the result will contain all nulls:

```
In [160]: df1 = pd.DataFrame({'A': [1, 2]})
```

```
In [161]: df2 = pd.DataFrame({'B': [3, 4]})

In [162]: df1
Out[162]:
   A
0  1
1  2

In [163]: df2
Out[163]:
   B
0  3
1  4

In [164]: df1 - df2
Out[164]:
    A   B
0 NaN NaN
1 NaN NaN
```

Arithmetic methods with fill values

In arithmetic operations between differently indexed objects, you might want to fill with a special value, like 0, when an axis label is found in one object but not the other:

```
In [165]: df1 = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(12.).reshape((3, 4)),
   .....:                    columns=list('abcd'))

In [166]: df2 = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(20.).reshape((4, 5)),
   .....:                    columns=list('abcde'))

In [167]: df2.loc[1, 'b'] = np.nan

In [168]: df1
Out[168]:
     a    b     c     d
0  0.0  1.0   2.0   3.0
1  4.0  5.0   6.0   7.0
2  8.0  9.0  10.0  11.0

In [169]: df2
Out[169]:
      a     b     c     d     e
0   0.0   1.0   2.0   3.0   4.0
1   5.0   NaN   7.0   8.0   9.0
2  10.0  11.0  12.0  13.0  14.0
3  15.0  16.0  17.0  18.0  19.0
```

Adding these together results in NA values in the locations that don’t overlap:

```
In [170]: df1 + df2
Out[170]:
      a     b     c     d   e
0   0.0   2.0   4.0   6.0 NaN
1   9.0   NaN  13.0  15.0 NaN
2  18.0  20.0  22.0  24.0 NaN
3   NaN   NaN   NaN   NaN NaN
```

Using the `add` method on `df1`, I pass `df2` and an argument to `fill_value`:

```
In [171]: df1.add(df2, fill_value=0)
Out[171]:
      a     b     c     d     e
0   0.0   2.0   4.0   6.0   4.0
1   9.0   5.0  13.0  15.0   9.0
2  18.0  20.0  22.0  24.0  14.0
3  15.0  16.0  17.0  18.0  19.0
```

See Table 5-5 for a listing of Series and DataFrame methods for arithmetic. Each of them has a counterpart, starting with the letter `r`, that has arguments flipped. So these two statements are equivalent:

```
In [172]: 1 / df1
Out[172]:
          a         b         c         d
0       inf  1.000000  0.500000  0.333333
1  0.250000  0.200000  0.166667  0.142857
2  0.125000  0.111111  0.100000  0.090909

In [173]: df1.rdiv(1)
Out[173]:
          a         b         c         d
0       inf  1.000000  0.500000  0.333333
1  0.250000  0.200000  0.166667  0.142857
2  0.125000  0.111111  0.100000  0.090909
```

Relatedly, when reindexing a Series or DataFrame, you can also specify a different fill value:

```
In [174]: df1.reindex(columns=df2.columns, fill_value=0)
Out[174]:
     a    b     c     d  e
0  0.0  1.0   2.0   3.0  0
1  4.0  5.0   6.0   7.0  0
2  8.0  9.0  10.0  11.0  0
```

Table 5-5. Flexible arithmetic methods

Method	Description
`add, radd`	Methods for addition (+)
`sub, rsub`	Methods for subtraction (-)
`div, rdiv`	Methods for division (/)
`floordiv, rfloordiv`	Methods for floor division (//)
`mul, rmul`	Methods for multiplication (*)
`pow, rpow`	Methods for exponentiation (**)

Operations between DataFrame and Series

As with NumPy arrays of different dimensions, arithmetic between DataFrame and Series is also defined. First, as a motivating example, consider the difference between a two-dimensional array and one of its rows:

```
In [175]: arr = np.arange(12.).reshape((3, 4))

In [176]: arr
Out[176]:
array([[  0.,   1.,   2.,   3.],
       [  4.,   5.,   6.,   7.],
       [  8.,   9.,  10.,  11.]])

In [177]: arr[0]
Out[177]: array([ 0.,  1.,  2.,  3.])

In [178]: arr - arr[0]
Out[178]:
array([[ 0.,  0.,  0.,  0.],
       [ 4.,  4.,  4.,  4.],
       [ 8.,  8.,  8.,  8.]])
```

When we subtract `arr[0]` from `arr`, the subtraction is performed once for each row. This is referred to as *broadcasting* and is explained in more detail as it relates to general NumPy arrays in Appendix A. Operations between a DataFrame and a Series are similar:

```
In [179]: frame = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(12.).reshape((4, 3)),
   .....:                      columns=list('bde'),
   .....:                      index=['Utah', 'Ohio', 'Texas', 'Oregon'])

In [180]: series = frame.iloc[0]
```

```
In [181]: frame
Out[181]:
          b     d     e
Utah    0.0   1.0   2.0
Ohio    3.0   4.0   5.0
Texas   6.0   7.0   8.0
Oregon  9.0  10.0  11.0

In [182]: series
Out[182]:
b    0.0
d    1.0
e    2.0
Name: Utah, dtype: float64
```

By default, arithmetic between DataFrame and Series matches the index of the Series on the DataFrame's columns, broadcasting down the rows:

```
In [183]: frame - series
Out[183]:
          b    d    e
Utah    0.0  0.0  0.0
Ohio    3.0  3.0  3.0
Texas   6.0  6.0  6.0
Oregon  9.0  9.0  9.0
```

If an index value is not found in either the DataFrame's columns or the Series's index, the objects will be reindexed to form the union:

```
In [184]: series2 = pd.Series(range(3), index=['b', 'e', 'f'])

In [185]: frame + series2
Out[185]:
          b   d     e   f
Utah    0.0 NaN   3.0 NaN
Ohio    3.0 NaN   6.0 NaN
Texas   6.0 NaN   9.0 NaN
Oregon  9.0 NaN  12.0 NaN
```

If you want to instead broadcast over the columns, matching on the rows, you have to use one of the arithmetic methods. For example:

```
In [186]: series3 = frame['d']

In [187]: frame
Out[187]:
          b     d     e
Utah    0.0   1.0   2.0
Ohio    3.0   4.0   5.0
```

```
Texas    6.0   7.0   8.0
Oregon   9.0  10.0  11.0

In [188]: series3
Out[188]:
Utah       1.0
Ohio       4.0
Texas      7.0
Oregon    10.0
Name: d, dtype: float64

In [189]: frame.sub(series3, axis='index')
Out[189]:
          b    d    e
Utah   -1.0  0.0  1.0
Ohio   -1.0  0.0  1.0
Texas  -1.0  0.0  1.0
Oregon -1.0  0.0  1.0
```

The axis number that you pass is the *axis to match on*. In this case we mean to match on the DataFrame's row index (`axis='index'` or `axis=0`) and broadcast across.

Function Application and Mapping

NumPy ufuncs (element-wise array methods) also work with pandas objects:

```
In [190]: frame = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(4, 3), columns=list('bde'),
   .....:                      index=['Utah', 'Ohio', 'Texas', 'Oregon'])

In [191]: frame
Out[191]:
               b         d         e
Utah   -0.204708  0.478943 -0.519439
Ohio   -0.555730  1.965781  1.393406
Texas   0.092908  0.281746  0.769023
Oregon  1.246435  1.007189 -1.296221

In [192]: np.abs(frame)
Out[192]:
               b         d         e
Utah    0.204708  0.478943  0.519439
Ohio    0.555730  1.965781  1.393406
Texas   0.092908  0.281746  0.769023
Oregon  1.246435  1.007189  1.296221
```

Another frequent operation is applying a function on one-dimensional arrays to each column or row. DataFrame's `apply` method does exactly this:

```
In [193]: f = lambda x: x.max() - x.min()

In [194]: frame.apply(f)
Out[194]:
b    1.802165
d    1.684034
e    2.689627
dtype: float64
```

Here the function `f`, which computes the difference between the maximum and minimum of a Series, is invoked once on each column in `frame`. The result is a Series having the columns of `frame` as its index.

If you pass `axis='columns'` to `apply`, the function will be invoked once per row instead:

```
In [195]: frame.apply(f, axis='columns')
Out[195]:
Utah      0.998382
```

```
Ohio      2.521511
Texas     0.676115
Oregon    2.542656
dtype: float64
```

Many of the most common array statistics (like `sum` and `mean`) are DataFrame methods, so using `apply` is not necessary.

The function passed to `apply` need not return a scalar value; it can also return a Series with multiple values:

```
In [196]: def f(x):
   .....:     return pd.Series([x.min(), x.max()], index=['min', 'max'])

In [197]: frame.apply(f)
Out[197]:
            b         d         e
min -0.555730  0.281746 -1.296221
max  1.246435  1.965781  1.393406
```

Element-wise Python functions can be used, too. Suppose you wanted to compute a formatted string from each floating-point value in `frame`. You can do this with `applymap`:

```
In [198]: format = lambda x: '%.2f' % x

In [199]: frame.applymap(format)
Out[199]:
            b     d      e
Utah    -0.20  0.48  -0.52
Ohio    -0.56  1.97   1.39
Texas    0.09  0.28   0.77
Oregon   1.25  1.01  -1.30
```

The reason for the name `applymap` is that Series has a `map` method for applying an element-wise function:

```
In [200]: frame['e'].map(format)
Out[200]:
Utah      -0.52
Ohio       1.39
Texas      0.77
Oregon    -1.30
Name: e, dtype: object
```

Sorting and Ranking

Sorting a dataset by some criterion is another important built-in operation. To sort lexicographically by row or column index, use the `sort_index` method, which returns a new, sorted object:

```
In [201]: obj = pd.Series(range(4), index=['d', 'a', 'b', 'c'])

In [202]: obj.sort_index()
Out[202]:
a    1
b    2
c    3
d    0
dtype: int64
```

With a DataFrame, you can sort by index on either axis:

```
In [203]: frame = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(8).reshape((2, 4)),
   .....:                      index=['three', 'one'],
   .....:                      columns=['d', 'a', 'b', 'c'])

In [204]: frame.sort_index()
Out[204]:
       d  a  b  c
one    4  5  6  7
three  0  1  2  3

In [205]: frame.sort_index(axis=1)
Out[205]:
       a  b  c  d
three  1  2  3  0
one    5  6  7  4
```

The data is sorted in ascending order by default, but can be sorted in descending order, too:

```
In [206]: frame.sort_index(axis=1, ascending=False)
Out[206]:
       d  c  b  a
three  0  3  2  1
one    4  7  6  5
```

To sort a Series by its values, use its `sort_values` method:

```
In [207]: obj = pd.Series([4, 7, -3, 2])

In [208]: obj.sort_values()
Out[208]:
2   -3
3    2
0    4
1    7
dtype: int64
```

Any missing values are sorted to the end of the Series by default:

```
In [209]: obj = pd.Series([4, np.nan, 7, np.nan, -3, 2])

In [210]: obj.sort_values()
Out[210]:
4   -3.0
5    2.0
0    4.0
2    7.0
1    NaN
3    NaN
dtype: float64
```

When sorting a DataFrame, you can use the data in one or more columns as the sort keys. To do so, pass one or more column names to the `by` option of `sort_values`:

```
In [211]: frame = pd.DataFrame({'b': [4, 7, -3, 2], 'a': [0, 1, 0, 1]})

In [212]: frame
Out[212]:
   a  b
0  0  4
1  1  7
2  0 -3
3  1  2

In [213]: frame.sort_values(by='b')
Out[213]:
   a  b
2  0 -3
3  1  2
0  0  4
1  1  7
```

To sort by multiple columns, pass a list of names:

```
In [214]: frame.sort_values(by=['a', 'b'])
```

```
Out[214]:
   a  b
2  0 -3
0  0  4
3  1  2
1  1  7
```

Ranking assigns ranks from one through the number of valid data points in an array. The `rank` methods for Series and DataFrame are the place to look; by default `rank` breaks ties by assigning each group the mean rank:

```
In [215]: obj = pd.Series([7, -5, 7, 4, 2, 0, 4])

In [216]: obj.rank()
Out[216]:
0    6.5
1    1.0
2    6.5
3    4.5
4    3.0
5    2.0
6    4.5
dtype: float64
```

Ranks can also be assigned according to the order in which they're observed in the data:

```
In [217]: obj.rank(method='first')
Out[217]:
0    6.0
1    1.0
2    7.0
3    4.0
4    3.0
5    2.0
6    5.0
dtype: float64
```

Here, instead of using the average rank 6.5 for the entries 0 and 2, they instead have been set to 6 and 7 because label 0 precedes label 2 in the data.

You can rank in descending order, too:

```
# Assign tie values the maximum rank in the group
In [218]: obj.rank(ascending=False, method='max')
Out[218]:
0    2.0
1    7.0
```

```
2    2.0
3    4.0
4    5.0
5    6.0
6    4.0
dtype: float64
```

See Table 5-6 for a list of tie-breaking methods available.

DataFrame can compute ranks over the rows or the columns:

```
In [219]: frame = pd.DataFrame({'b': [4.3, 7, -3, 2], 'a': [0, 1, 0, 1],
   .....:                       'c': [-2, 5, 8, -2.5]})

In [220]: frame
Out[220]:
   a    b    c
0  0  4.3 -2.0
1  1  7.0  5.0
2  0 -3.0  8.0
3  1  2.0 -2.5

In [221]: frame.rank(axis='columns')
Out[221]:
     a    b    c
0  2.0  3.0  1.0
1  1.0  3.0  2.0
2  2.0  1.0  3.0
3  2.0  3.0  1.0
```

Table 5-6. Tie-breaking methods with rank

Method	Description
`'average'`	Default: assign the average rank to each entry in the equal group
`'min'`	Use the minimum rank for the whole group
`'max'`	Use the maximum rank for the whole group
`'first'`	Assign ranks in the order the values appear in the data
`'dense'`	Like `method='min'`, but ranks always increase by 1 in between groups rather than the number of equal elements in a group

Axis Indexes with Duplicate Labels

Up until now all of the examples we've looked at have had unique axis labels (index values). While many pandas functions (like `reindex`) require that the labels be unique, it's not mandatory. Let's consider a small Series with duplicate indices:

```
In [222]: obj = pd.Series(range(5), index=['a', 'a', 'b', 'b', 'c'])

In [223]: obj
Out[223]:
a    0
a    1
b    2
b    3
c    4
dtype: int64
```

The index's `is_unique` property can tell you whether its labels are unique or not:

```
In [224]: obj.index.is_unique
Out[224]: False
```

Data selection is one of the main things that behaves differently with duplicates. Indexing a label with multiple entries returns a Series, while single entries return a scalar value:

```
In [225]: obj['a']
Out[225]:
a    0
a    1
dtype: int64

In [226]: obj['c']
Out[226]: 4
```

This can make your code more complicated, as the output type from indexing can vary based on whether a label is repeated or not.

The same logic extends to indexing rows in a DataFrame:

```
In [227]: df = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(4, 3), index=['a', 'a', 'b',
'b'])

In [228]: df
Out[228]:
          0         1         2
a  0.274992  0.228913  1.352917
a  0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843
b  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741
b  0.476985  3.248944 -1.021228

In [229]: df.loc['b']
Out[229]:
          0         1         2
b  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741
b  0.476985  3.248944 -1.021228
```

5.3 Summarizing and Computing Descriptive Statistics

pandas objects are equipped with a set of common mathematical and statistical methods. Most of these fall into the category of *reductions* or *summary statistics*, methods that extract a single value (like the sum or mean) from a Series or a Series of values from the rows or columns of a DataFrame. Compared with the similar methods found on NumPy arrays, they have built-in handling for missing data. Consider a small DataFrame:

```
In [230]: df = pd.DataFrame([[1.4, np.nan], [7.1, -4.5],
   .....:                     [np.nan, np.nan], [0.75, -1.3]],
   .....:                    index=['a', 'b', 'c', 'd'],
   .....:                    columns=['one', 'two'])

In [231]: df
Out[231]:
    one  two
a  1.40  NaN
b  7.10 -4.5
c   NaN  NaN
d  0.75 -1.3
```

Calling DataFrame's `sum` method returns a Series containing column sums:

```
In [232]: df.sum()
Out[232]:
one    9.25
two   -5.80
dtype: float64
```

Passing `axis='columns'` or `axis=1` sums across the columns instead:

```
In [233]: df.sum(axis='columns')
Out[233]:
a    1.40
b    2.60
c     NaN
d   -0.55
dtype: float64
```

NA values are excluded unless the entire slice (row or column in this case) is NA. This can be disabled with the `skipna` option:

```
In [234]: df.mean(axis='columns', skipna=False)
Out[234]:
a      NaN
b    1.300
c      NaN
d   -0.275
dtype: float64
```

See Table 5-7 for a list of common options for each reduction method.

Table 5-7. Options for reduction methods

Method	Description
`axis`	Axis to reduce over; 0 for DataFrame's rows and 1 for columns
`skipna`	Exclude missing values; `True` by default
`level`	Reduce grouped by level if the axis is hierarchically indexed (MultiIndex)

Some methods, like `idxmin` and `idxmax`, return indirect statistics like the index value where the minimum or maximum values are attained:

```
In [235]: df.idxmax()
Out[235]:
one    b
two    d
dtype: object
```

Other methods are *accumulations*:

```
In [236]: df.cumsum()
Out[236]:
    one  two
a  1.40  NaN
b  8.50 -4.5
c   NaN  NaN
d  9.25 -5.8
```

Another type of method is neither a reduction nor an accumulation. `describe` is one such example, producing multiple summary statistics in one shot:

```
In [237]: df.describe()
Out[237]:
            one       two
count  3.000000  2.000000
```

```
mean    3.083333 -2.900000
std     3.493685  2.262742
min     0.750000 -4.500000
25%     1.075000 -3.700000
50%     1.400000 -2.900000
75%     4.250000 -2.100000
max     7.100000 -1.300000
```

On non-numeric data, `describe` produces alternative summary statistics:

```
In [238]: obj = pd.Series(['a', 'a', 'b', 'c'] * 4)

In [239]: obj.describe()
Out[239]:
count     16
unique     3
top        a
freq       8
dtype: object
```

See Table 5-8 for a full list of summary statistics and related methods.

Table 5-8. Descriptive and summary statistics

Method	Description
`count`	Number of non-NA values
`describe`	Compute set of summary statistics for Series or each DataFrame column
`min, max`	Compute minimum and maximum values
`argmin, argmax`	Compute index locations (integers) at which minimum or maximum value obtained, respectively
`idxmin, idxmax`	Compute index labels at which minimum or maximum value obtained, respectively
`quantile`	Compute sample quantile ranging from 0 to 1
`sum`	Sum of values
`mean`	Mean of values
`median`	Arithmetic median (50% quantile) of values
`mad`	Mean absolute deviation from mean value
`prod`	Product of all values
`var`	Sample variance of values

`std`	Sample standard deviation of values
`skew`	Sample skewness (third moment) of values
`kurt`	Sample kurtosis (fourth moment) of values
`cumsum`	Cumulative sum of values
`cummin`, `cummax`	Cumulative minimum or maximum of values, respectively
`cumprod`	Cumulative product of values
`diff`	Compute first arithmetic difference (useful for time series)
`pct_change`	Compute percent changes

Correlation and Covariance

Some summary statistics, like correlation and covariance, are computed from pairs of arguments. Let's consider some DataFrames of stock prices and volumes obtained from Yahoo! Finance using the add-on `pandas-datareader` package. If you don't have it installed already, it can be obtained via conda or pip:

```
conda install pandas-datareader
```

I use the `pandas_datareader` module to download some data for a few stock tickers:

```
import pandas_datareader.data as web
all_data = {ticker: web.get_data_yahoo(ticker)
            for ticker in ['AAPL', 'IBM', 'MSFT', 'GOOG']}

price = pd.DataFrame({ticker: data['Adj Close']
                      for ticker, data in all_data.items()})
volume = pd.DataFrame({ticker: data['Volume']
                       for ticker, data in all_data.items()})
```

CAUTION

It's possible by the time you are reading this that Yahoo! Finance no longer exists since Yahoo! was acquired by Verizon in 2017. Refer to the pandas-datareader documentation online for the latest functionality.

I now compute percent changes of the prices, a time series operation which will be explored further in Chapter 11:

```
In [242]: returns = price.pct_change()

In [243]: returns.tail()
Out[243]:
                AAPL      GOOG       IBM      MSFT
Date
2016-10-17 -0.000680  0.001837  0.002072 -0.003483
2016-10-18 -0.000681  0.019616 -0.026168  0.007690
2016-10-19 -0.002979  0.007846  0.003583 -0.002255
```

```
2016-10-20 -0.000512 -0.005652  0.001719 -0.004867
2016-10-21 -0.003930  0.003011 -0.012474  0.042096
```

The `corr` method of Series computes the correlation of the overlapping, non-NA, aligned-by-index values in two Series. Relatedly, `cov` computes the covariance:

```
In [244]: returns['MSFT'].corr(returns['IBM'])
Out[244]: 0.49976361144151144

In [245]: returns['MSFT'].cov(returns['IBM'])
Out[245]: 8.8706554797035462e-05
```

Since `MSFT` is a valid Python attribute, we can also select these columns using more concise syntax:

```
In [246]: returns.MSFT.corr(returns.IBM)
Out[246]: 0.49976361144151144
```

DataFrame’s `corr` and `cov` methods, on the other hand, return a full correlation or covariance matrix as a DataFrame, respectively:

```
In [247]: returns.corr()
Out[247]:
          AAPL      GOOG       IBM      MSFT
AAPL  1.000000  0.407919  0.386817  0.389695
GOOG  0.407919  1.000000  0.405099  0.465919
IBM   0.386817  0.405099  1.000000  0.499764
MSFT  0.389695  0.465919  0.499764  1.000000

In [248]: returns.cov()
Out[248]:
          AAPL      GOOG       IBM      MSFT
AAPL  0.000277  0.000107  0.000078  0.000095
GOOG  0.000107  0.000251  0.000078  0.000108
IBM   0.000078  0.000078  0.000146  0.000089
MSFT  0.000095  0.000108  0.000089  0.000215
```

Using DataFrame’s `corrwith` method, you can compute pairwise correlations between a DataFrame’s columns or rows with another Series or DataFrame. Passing a Series returns a Series with the correlation value computed for each column:

```
In [249]: returns.corrwith(returns.IBM)
Out[249]:
AAPL    0.386817
GOOG    0.405099
IBM     1.000000
MSFT    0.499764
dtype: float64
```

Passing a DataFrame computes the correlations of matching column names. Here I compute correlations of percent changes with volume:

```
In [250]: returns.corrwith(volume)
Out[250]:
AAPL   -0.075565
GOOG   -0.007067
IBM    -0.204849
MSFT   -0.092950
dtype: float64
```

Passing `axis='columns'` does things row-by-row instead. In all cases, the data points are aligned by label before the correlation is computed.

Unique Values, Value Counts, and Membership

Another class of related methods extracts information about the values contained in a one-dimensional Series. To illustrate these, consider this example:

```
In [251]: obj = pd.Series(['c', 'a', 'd', 'a', 'a', 'b', 'b', 'c', 'c'])
```

The first function is `unique`, which gives you an array of the unique values in a Series:

```
In [252]: uniques = obj.unique()

In [253]: uniques
Out[253]: array(['c', 'a', 'd', 'b'], dtype=object)
```

The unique values are not necessarily returned in sorted order, but could be sorted after the fact if needed (`uniques.sort()`). Relatedly, `value_counts` computes a Series containing value frequencies:

```
In [254]: obj.value_counts()
Out[254]:
c    3
a    3
b    2
d    1
dtype: int64
```

The Series is sorted by value in descending order as a convenience. `value_counts` is also available as a top-level pandas method that can be used with any array or sequence:

```
In [255]: pd.value_counts(obj.values, sort=False)
Out[255]:
a    3
b    2
c    3
d    1
dtype: int64
```

`isin` performs a vectorized set membership check and can be useful in filtering a dataset down to a subset of values in a Series or column in a DataFrame:

```
In [256]: obj
Out[256]:
0    c
1    a
2    d
3    a
4    a
5    b
6    b
7    c
8    c
dtype: object

In [257]: mask = obj.isin(['b', 'c'])

In [258]: mask
Out[258]:
0     True
1    False
2    False
3    False
4    False
5     True
6     True
7     True
8     True
dtype: bool

In [259]: obj[mask]
Out[259]:
0    c
5    b
6    b
7    c
8    c
dtype: object
```

Related to `isin` is the `Index.get_indexer` method, which gives you an index array from an array of possibly non-distinct values into another array of distinct values:

```
In [260]: to_match = pd.Series(['c', 'a', 'b', 'b', 'c', 'a'])

In [261]: unique_vals = pd.Series(['c', 'b', 'a'])

In [262]: pd.Index(unique_vals).get_indexer(to_match)
Out[262]: array([0, 2, 1, 1, 0, 2])
```

See Table 5-9 for a reference on these methods.

Table 5-9. Unique, value counts, and set membership methods

Method	Description
`isin`	Compute boolean array indicating whether each Series value is contained in the passed sequence of values
`match`	Compute integer indices for each value in an array into another array of distinct values; helpful for data alignment and join-type operations
`unique`	Compute array of unique values in a Series, returned in the order observed
`value_counts`	Return a Series containing unique values as its index and frequencies as its values, ordered count in descending order

In some cases, you may want to compute a histogram on multiple related columns in a DataFrame. Here's an example:

```
In [263]: data = pd.DataFrame({'Qu1': [1, 3, 4, 3, 4],
   .....:                      'Qu2': [2, 3, 1, 2, 3],
   .....:                      'Qu3': [1, 5, 2, 4, 4]})

In [264]: data
Out[264]:
   Qu1  Qu2  Qu3
0    1    2    1
1    3    3    5
2    4    1    2
3    3    2    4
4    4    3    4
```

Passing `pandas.value_counts` to this DataFrame's `apply` function gives:

```
In [265]: result = data.apply(pd.value_counts).fillna(0)

In [266]: result
Out[266]:
   Qu1  Qu2  Qu3
1  1.0  1.0  1.0
2  0.0  2.0  1.0
3  2.0  2.0  0.0
4  2.0  0.0  2.0
5  0.0  0.0  1.0
```

Here, the row labels in the result are the distinct values occurring in all of the columns. The values are the respective counts of these values in each column.

5.4 Conclusion

In the next chapter, we'll discuss tools for reading (or *loading*) and writing datasets with pandas. After that, we'll dig deeper into data cleaning, wrangling, analysis, and visualization tools using pandas.

Chapter 6. Data Loading, Storage, and File Formats

Accessing data is a necessary first step for using most of the tools in this book. I'm going to be focused on data input and output using pandas, though there are numerous tools in other libraries to help with reading and writing data in various formats.

Input and output typically falls into a few main categories: reading text files and other more efficient on-disk formats, loading data from databases, and interacting with network sources like web APIs.

6.1 Reading and Writing Data in Text Format

pandas features a number of functions for reading tabular data as a DataFrame object. Table 6-1 summarizes some of them, though `read_csv` and `read_table` are likely the ones you'll use the most.

Table 6-1. Parsing functions in pandas

Function	Description
`read_csv`	Load delimited data from a file, URL, or file-like object; use comma as default delimiter
`read_table`	Load delimited data from a file, URL, or file-like object; use tab (`'\t'`) as default delimiter
`read_fwf`	Read data in fixed-width column format (i.e., no delimiters)
`read_clipboard`	Version of `read_table` that reads data from the clipboard; useful for converting tables from web pages
`read_excel`	Read tabular data from an Excel XLS or XLSX file
`read_hdf`	Read HDF5 files written by pandas
`read_html`	Read all tables found in the given HTML document
`read_json`	Read data from a JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) string representation
`read_msgpack`	Read pandas data encoded using the MessagePack binary format
`read_pickle`	Read an arbitrary object stored in Python pickle format
`read_sas`	Read a SAS dataset stored in one of the SAS system's custom storage formats
`read_sql`	Read the results of a SQL query (using SQLAlchemy) as a pandas DataFrame
`read_stata`	Read a dataset from Stata file format
`read_feather`	Read the Feather binary file format

I'll give an overview of the mechanics of these functions, which are meant to convert text data into a DataFrame. The optional arguments for these functions may fall into a few categories:

Indexing

Can treat one or more columns as the returned DataFrame, and whether to get column names from the file, the user, or not at all.

Type inference and data conversion

This includes the user-defined value conversions and custom list of missing value markers.

Datetime parsing

Includes combining capability, including combining date and time information spread over multiple columns into a single column in the result.

Iterating

Support for iterating over chunks of very large files.

Unclean data issues

Skipping rows or a footer, comments, or other minor things like numeric data with thousands separated by commas.

Because of how messy data in the real world can be, some of the data loading functions (especially `read_csv`) have grown very complex in their options over time. It's normal to feel overwhelmed by the number of different parameters (`read_csv` has over 50 as of this writing). The online pandas documentation has many examples about how each of them works, so if you're struggling to read a particular file, there might be a similar enough example to help you find the right parameters.

Some of these functions, like `pandas.read_csv`, perform *type inference*, because the column data types are not part of the data format. That means you don't necessarily have to specify which columns are numeric, integer, boolean, or string. Other data formats, like HDF5, Feather, and msgpack, have the data types stored in the format.

Handling dates and other custom types can require extra effort. Let's start with a small comma-separated (CSV) text file:

```
In [8]: !cat examples/ex1.csv
a,b,c,d,message
1,2,3,4,hello
5,6,7,8,world
9,10,11,12,foo
```

> **NOTE**
>
> Here I used the Unix `cat` shell command to print the raw contents of the file to the screen. If you're on Windows, you can use `type` instead of `cat` to achieve the same effect.

Since this is comma-delimited, we can use `read_csv` to read it into a DataFrame:

```
In [9]: df = pd.read_csv('examples/ex1.csv')

In [10]: df
Out[10]:
   a   b   c   d message
0  1   2   3   4   hello
1  5   6   7   8   world
2  9  10  11  12     foo
```

We could also have used `read_table` and specified the delimiter:

```
In [11]: pd.read_table('examples/ex1.csv', sep=',')
Out[11]:
   a   b   c   d message
0  1   2   3   4   hello
1  5   6   7   8   world
2  9  10  11  12     foo
```

A file will not always have a header row. Consider this file:

```
In [12]: !cat examples/ex2.csv
1,2,3,4,hello
5,6,7,8,world
9,10,11,12,foo
```

To read this file, you have a couple of options. You can allow pandas to assign default column names, or you can specify names yourself:

```
In [13]: pd.read_csv('examples/ex2.csv', header=None)
Out[13]:
   0   1   2   3      4
0  1   2   3   4  hello
1  5   6   7   8  world
2  9  10  11  12    foo

In [14]: pd.read_csv('examples/ex2.csv', names=['a', 'b', 'c', 'd',
'message'])
Out[14]:
   a   b   c   d message
0  1   2   3   4   hello
1  5   6   7   8   world
2  9  10  11  12     foo
```

Suppose you wanted the `message` column to be the index of the returned DataFrame. You can either indicate you want the column at index 4 or named `'message'` using the `index_col` argument:

```
In [15]: names = ['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'message']

In [16]: pd.read_csv('examples/ex2.csv', names=names, index_col='message')
Out[16]:
         a   b   c   d
message
hello    1   2   3   4
world    5   6   7   8
foo      9  10  11  12
```

In the event that you want to form a hierarchical index from multiple columns, pass a list of column numbers or names:

```
In [17]: !cat examples/csv_mindex.csv
key1,key2,value1,value2
one,a,1,2
one,b,3,4
one,c,5,6
one,d,7,8
two,a,9,10
two,b,11,12
two,c,13,14
two,d,15,16

In [18]: parsed = pd.read_csv('examples/csv_mindex.csv',
   ....:                      index_col=['key1', 'key2'])

In [19]: parsed
Out[19]:
           value1  value2
key1 key2
one  a          1       2
```

```
     b          3        4
     c          5        6
     d          7        8
two  a          9       10
     b         11       12
     c         13       14
     d         15       16
```

In some cases, a table might not have a fixed delimiter, using whitespace or some other pattern to separate fields. Consider a text file that looks like this:

```
In [20]: list(open('examples/ex3.txt'))
Out[20]:
['            A         B         C\n',
 'aaa -0.264438 -1.026059 -0.619500\n',
 'bbb  0.927272  0.302904 -0.032399\n',
 'ccc -0.264273 -0.386314 -0.217601\n',
 'ddd -0.871858 -0.348382  1.100491\n']
```

While you could do some munging by hand, the fields here are separated by a variable amount of whitespace. In these cases, you can pass a regular expression as a delimiter for `read_table`. This can be expressed by the regular expression `\s+`, so we have then:

```
In [21]: result = pd.read_table('examples/ex3.txt', sep='\s+')

In [22]: result
Out[22]:
            A         B         C
aaa -0.264438 -1.026059 -0.619500
bbb  0.927272  0.302904 -0.032399
ccc -0.264273 -0.386314 -0.217601
ddd -0.871858 -0.348382  1.100491
```

Because there was one fewer column name than the number of data rows, `read_table` infers that the first column should be the DataFrame's index in this special case.

The parser functions have many additional arguments to help you handle the wide variety of exception file formats that occur (see a partial listing in Table 6-2). For example, you can skip the first, third, and fourth rows of a file with `skiprows`:

```
In [23]: !cat examples/ex4.csv
```

```
# hey!
a,b,c,d,message
# just wanted to make things more difficult for you
# who reads CSV files with computers, anyway?
1,2,3,4,hello
5,6,7,8,world
9,10,11,12,foo
In [24]: pd.read_csv('examples/ex4.csv', skiprows=[0, 2, 3])
Out[24]:
   a   b   c   d message
0  1   2   3   4   hello
1  5   6   7   8   world
2  9  10  11  12     foo
```

Handling missing values is an important and frequently nuanced part of the file parsing process. Missing data is usually either not present (empty string) or marked by some *sentinel* value. By default, pandas uses a set of commonly occurring sentinels, such as `NA` and `NULL`:

```
In [25]: !cat examples/ex5.csv
something,a,b,c,d,message
one,1,2,3,4,NA
two,5,6,,8,world
three,9,10,11,12,foo
In [26]: result = pd.read_csv('examples/ex5.csv')

In [27]: result
Out[27]:
  something  a   b     c   d message
0       one  1   2   3.0   4     NaN
1       two  5   6   NaN   8   world
2     three  9  10  11.0  12     foo

In [28]: pd.isnull(result)
Out[28]:
   something      a      b      c      d  message
0      False  False  False  False  False     True
1      False  False  False   True  False    False
2      False  False  False  False  False    False
```

The `na_values` option can take either a list or set of strings to consider missing values:

```
In [29]: result = pd.read_csv('examples/ex5.csv', na_values=['NULL'])

In [30]: result
Out[30]:
  something  a   b     c   d message
0       one  1   2   3.0   4     NaN
1       two  5   6   NaN   8   world
```

```
2     three  9  10  11.0  12     foo
```

Different NA sentinels can be specified for each column in a dict:

```
In [31]: sentinels = {'message': ['foo', 'NA'], 'something': ['two']}

In [32]: pd.read_csv('examples/ex5.csv', na_values=sentinels)
Out[32]:
  something  a   b     c   d message
0       one  1   2   3.0   4     NaN
1       NaN  5   6   NaN   8   world
2     three  9  10  11.0  12     NaN
```

Table 6-2 lists some frequently used options in `pandas.read_csv` and `pandas.read_table`.

Table 6-2. Some read_csv/read_table function arguments

Argument	Description
`path`	String indicating filesystem location, URL, or file-like object
`sep` or `delimiter`	Character sequence or regular expression to use to split fields in each row
`header`	Row number to use as column names; defaults to 0 (first row), but should be `None` if there is no header row
`index_col`	Column numbers or names to use as the row index in the result; can be a single name/number or a list of them for a hierarchical index
`names`	List of column names for result, combine with `header=None`
`skiprows`	Number of rows at beginning of file to ignore or list of row numbers (starting from 0) to skip.
`na_values`	Sequence of values to replace with NA.
`comment`	Character(s) to split comments off the end of lines.
`parse_dates`	Attempt to parse data to `datetime`; `False` by default. If `True`, will attempt to parse all columns. Otherwise can specify a list of column numbers or name to parse. If element of list is tuple or list, will combine multiple columns together and parse to date (e.g., if date/time split across two columns).
`keep_date_col`	If joining columns to parse date, keep the joined columns; `False` by default.
`converters`	Dict containing column number of name mapping to functions (e.g., `{'foo': f}` would apply the function `f` to all values in the `'foo'` column).

`dayfirst`	When parsing potentially ambiguous dates, treat as international format (e.g., 7/6/2012 -> June 7, 2012); `False` by default.
`date_parser`	Function to use to parse dates.
`nrows`	Number of rows to read from beginning of file.
`iterator`	Return a `TextParser` object for reading file piecemeal.
`chunksize`	For iteration, size of file chunks.
`skip_footer`	Number of lines to ignore at end of file.
`verbose`	Print various parser output information, like the number of missing values placed in non-numeric columns.
`encoding`	Text encoding for Unicode (e.g., `'utf-8'` for UTF-8 encoded text).
`squeeze`	If the parsed data only contains one column, return a Series.
`thousands`	Separator for thousands (e.g., `','` or `'.'`).

Reading Text Files in Pieces

When processing very large files or figuring out the right set of arguments to correctly process a large file, you may only want to read in a small piece of a file or iterate through smaller chunks of the file.

Before we look at a large file, we make the pandas display settings more compact:

```
In [33]: pd.options.display.max_rows = 10
```

Now we have:

```
In [34]: result = pd.read_csv('examples/ex6.csv')

In [35]: result
Out[35]:
           one       two     three      four key
0     0.467976 -0.038649 -0.295344 -1.824726   L
1    -0.358893  1.404453  0.704965 -0.200638   B
2    -0.501840  0.659254 -0.421691 -0.057688   G
3     0.204886  1.074134  1.388361 -0.982404   R
4     0.354628 -0.133116  0.283763 -0.837063   Q
...        ...       ...       ...       ...  ..
9995  2.311896 -0.417070 -1.409599 -0.515821   L
9996 -0.479893 -0.650419  0.745152 -0.646038   E
9997  0.523331  0.787112  0.486066  1.093156   K
9998 -0.362559  0.598894 -1.843201  0.887292   G
9999 -0.096376 -1.012999 -0.657431 -0.573315   0
[10000 rows x 5 columns]
```

If you want to only read a small number of rows (avoiding reading the entire file), specify that with `nrows`:

```
In [36]: pd.read_csv('examples/ex6.csv', nrows=5)
Out[36]:
        one       two     three      four key
0  0.467976 -0.038649 -0.295344 -1.824726   L
1 -0.358893  1.404453  0.704965 -0.200638   B
2 -0.501840  0.659254 -0.421691 -0.057688   G
3  0.204886  1.074134  1.388361 -0.982404   R
4  0.354628 -0.133116  0.283763 -0.837063   Q
```

To read a file in pieces, specify a `chunksize` as a number of rows:

```
In [37]: chunker = pd.read_csv('examples/ex6.csv', chunksize=1000)

In [38]: chunker
Out[38]: <pandas.io.parsers.TextFileReader at 0x7f6b1e2672e8>
```

The `TextParser` object returned by `read_csv` allows you to iterate over the parts of the file according to the `chunksize`. For example, we can iterate over `ex6.csv`, aggregating the value counts in the `'key'` column like so:

```
chunker = pd.read_csv('examples/ex6.csv', chunksize=1000)

tot = pd.Series([])
for piece in chunker:
    tot = tot.add(piece['key'].value_counts(), fill_value=0)

tot = tot.sort_values(ascending=False)
```

We have then:

```
In [40]: tot[:10]
Out[40]:
E    368.0
X    364.0
L    346.0
O    343.0
Q    340.0
M    338.0
J    337.0
F    335.0
K    334.0
H    330.0
dtype: float64
```

`TextParser` is also equipped with a `get_chunk` method that enables you to read pieces of an arbitrary size.

Writing Data to Text Format

Data can also be exported to a delimited format. Let's consider one of the CSV files read before:

```
In [41]: data = pd.read_csv('examples/ex5.csv')

In [42]: data
Out[42]:
  something  a   b     c   d message
0       one  1   2   3.0   4     NaN
1       two  5   6   NaN   8   world
2     three  9  10  11.0  12     foo
```

Using DataFrame's `to_csv` method, we can write the data out to a comma-separated file:

```
In [43]: data.to_csv('examples/out.csv')

In [44]: !cat examples/out.csv
,something,a,b,c,d,message
0,one,1,2,3.0,4,
1,two,5,6,,8,world
2,three,9,10,11.0,12,foo
```

Other delimiters can be used, of course (writing to `sys.stdout` so it prints the text result to the console):

```
In [45]: import sys

In [46]: data.to_csv(sys.stdout, sep='|')
|something|a|b|c|d|message
0|one|1|2|3.0|4|
1|two|5|6||8|world
2|three|9|10|11.0|12|foo
```

Missing values appear as empty strings in the output. You might want to denote them by some other sentinel value:

```
In [47]: data.to_csv(sys.stdout, na_rep='NULL')
,something,a,b,c,d,message
0,one,1,2,3.0,4,NULL
1,two,5,6,NULL,8,world
2,three,9,10,11.0,12,foo
```

With no other options specified, both the row and column labels are written. Both of these can be disabled:

```
In [48]: data.to_csv(sys.stdout, index=False, header=False)
one,1,2,3.0,4,
two,5,6,,8,world
three,9,10,11.0,12,foo
```

You can also write only a subset of the columns, and in an order of your choosing:

```
In [49]: data.to_csv(sys.stdout, index=False, columns=['a', 'b', 'c'])
a,b,c
1,2,3.0
5,6,
9,10,11.0
```

Series also has a `to_csv` method:

```
In [50]: dates = pd.date_range('1/1/2000', periods=7)

In [51]: ts = pd.Series(np.arange(7), index=dates)

In [52]: ts.to_csv('examples/tseries.csv')

In [53]: !cat examples/tseries.csv
2000-01-01,0
2000-01-02,1
2000-01-03,2
2000-01-04,3
2000-01-05,4
2000-01-06,5
2000-01-07,6
```

Working with Delimited Formats

It's possible to load most forms of tabular data from disk using functions like `pandas.read_table`. In some cases, however, some manual processing may be necessary. It's not uncommon to receive a file with one or more malformed lines that trip up `read_table`. To illustrate the basic tools, consider a small CSV file:

```
In [54]: !cat examples/ex7.csv
"a","b","c"
"1","2","3"
"1","2","3"
```

For any file with a single-character delimiter, you can use Python's built-in `csv` module. To use it, pass any open file or file-like object to `csv.reader`:

```
import csv
f = open('examples/ex7.csv')

reader = csv.reader(f)
```

Iterating through the reader like a file yields tuples of values with any quote characters removed:

```
In [56]: for line in reader:
   ....:     print(line)
['a', 'b', 'c']
['1', '2', '3']
['1', '2', '3']
```

From there, it's up to you to do the wrangling necessary to put the data in the form that you need it. Let's take this step by step. First, we read the file into a list of lines:

```
In [57]: with open('examples/ex7.csv') as f:
   ....:     lines = list(csv.reader(f))
```

Then, we split the lines into the header line and the data lines:

```
In [58]: header, values = lines[0], lines[1:]
```

Then we can create a dictionary of data columns using a dictionary comprehension and the expression `zip(*values)`, which transposes rows to columns:

```
In [59]: data_dict = {h: v for h, v in zip(header, zip(*values))}

In [60]: data_dict
Out[60]: {'a': ('1', '1'), 'b': ('2', '2'), 'c': ('3', '3')}
```

CSV files come in many different flavors. To define a new format with a different delimiter, string quoting convention, or line terminator, we define a simple subclass of `csv.Dialect`:

```
class my_dialect(csv.Dialect):
    lineterminator = '\n'
    delimiter = ';'
    quotechar = '"'
    quoting = csv.QUOTE_MINIMAL

reader = csv.reader(f, dialect=my_dialect)
```

We can also give individual CSV dialect parameters as keywords to `csv.reader` without having to define a subclass:

```
reader = csv.reader(f, delimiter='|')
```

The possible options (attributes of `csv.Dialect`) and what they do can be found in Table 6-3.

Table 6-3. CSV dialect options

Argument	Description
`delimiter`	One-character string to separate fields; defaults to `','`.
`lineterminator`	Line terminator for writing; defaults to `'\r\n'`. Reader ignores this and recognizes cross-platform line terminators.
`quotechar`	Quote character for fields with special characters (like a delimiter); default is `'"'`.

`quoting`	Quoting convention. Options include `csv.QUOTE_ALL` (quote all fields), `csv.QUOTE_MINIMAL` (only fields with special characters like the delimiter), `csv.QUOTE_NONNUMERIC`, and `csv.QUOTE_NONE` (no quoting). See Python's documentation for full details. Defaults to `QUOTE_MINIMAL`.
`skipinitialspace`	Ignore whitespace after each delimiter; default is `False`.
`doublequote`	How to handle quoting character inside a field; if `True`, it is doubled (see online documentation for full detail and behavior).
`escapechar`	String to escape the delimiter if `quoting` is set to `csv.QUOTE_NONE`; disabled by default.

NOTE

For files with more complicated or fixed multicharacter delimiters, you will not be able to use the `csv` module. In those cases, you'll have to do the line splitting and other cleanup using string's `split` method or the regular expression method `re.split`.

To *write* delimited files manually, you can use `csv.writer`. It accepts an open, writable file object and the same dialect and format options as `csv.reader`:

```
with open('mydata.csv', 'w') as f:
    writer = csv.writer(f, dialect=my_dialect)
    writer.writerow(('one', 'two', 'three'))
    writer.writerow(('1', '2', '3'))
    writer.writerow(('4', '5', '6'))
    writer.writerow(('7', '8', '9'))
```

JSON Data

JSON (short for JavaScript Object Notation) has become one of the standard formats for sending data by HTTP request between web browsers and other applications. It is a much more free-form data format than a tabular text form like CSV. Here is an example:

```
obj = """
{"name": "Wes",
 "places_lived": ["United States", "Spain", "Germany"],
 "pet": null,
 "siblings": [{"name": "Scott", "age": 30, "pets": ["Zeus", "Zuko"]},
              {"name": "Katie", "age": 38,
               "pets": ["Sixes", "Stache", "Cisco"]}]
}
"""
```

JSON is very nearly valid Python code with the exception of its null value `null` and some other nuances (such as disallowing trailing commas at the end of lists). The basic types are objects (dicts), arrays (lists), strings, numbers, booleans, and nulls. All of the keys in an object must be strings. There are several Python libraries for reading and writing JSON data. I'll use `json` here, as it is built into the Python standard library. To convert a JSON string to Python form, use `json.loads`:

```
In [62]: import json

In [63]: result = json.loads(obj)

In [64]: result
Out[64]:
{'name': 'Wes',
 'pet': None,
 'places_lived': ['United States', 'Spain', 'Germany'],
 'siblings': [{'age': 30, 'name': 'Scott', 'pets': ['Zeus', 'Zuko']},
  {'age': 38, 'name': 'Katie', 'pets': ['Sixes', 'Stache', 'Cisco']}]}
```

`json.dumps`, on the other hand, converts a Python object back to JSON:

```
In [65]: asjson = json.dumps(result)
```

How you convert a JSON object or list of objects to a DataFrame or some other data structure for analysis will be up to you. Conveniently, you can pass a list of dicts (which were previously JSON objects) to the DataFrame constructor and select a subset of the data fields:

```
In [66]: siblings = pd.DataFrame(result['siblings'], columns=['name', 'age'])

In [67]: siblings
Out[67]:
    name  age
0  Scott   30
1  Katie   38
```

The `pandas.read_json` can automatically convert JSON datasets in specific arrangements into a Series or DataFrame. For example:

```
In [68]: !cat examples/example.json
[{"a": 1, "b": 2, "c": 3},
 {"a": 4, "b": 5, "c": 6},
 {"a": 7, "b": 8, "c": 9}]
```

The default options for `pandas.read_json` assume that each object in the JSON array is a row in the table:

```
In [69]: data = pd.read_json('examples/example.json')

In [70]: data
Out[70]:
   a  b  c
0  1  2  3
1  4  5  6
2  7  8  9
```

For an extended example of reading and manipulating JSON data (including nested records), see the USDA Food Database example in Chapter 7.

If you need to export data from pandas to JSON, one way is to use the `to_json` methods on Series and DataFrame:

```
In [71]: print(data.to_json())
{"a":{"0":1,"1":4,"2":7},"b":{"0":2,"1":5,"2":8},"c":{"0":3,"1":6,"2":9}}

In [72]: print(data.to_json(orient='records'))
[{"a":1,"b":2,"c":3},{"a":4,"b":5,"c":6},{"a":7,"b":8,"c":9}]
```

XML and HTML: Web Scraping

Python has many libraries for reading and writing data in the ubiquitous HTML and XML formats. Examples include lxml, Beautiful Soup, and html5lib. While lxml is comparatively much faster in general, the other libraries can better handle malformed HTML or XML files.

pandas has a built-in function, `read_html`, which uses libraries like lxml and Beautiful Soup to automatically parse tables out of HTML files as DataFrame objects. To show how this works, I downloaded an HTML file (used in the pandas documentation) from the United States FDIC government agency showing bank failures.[1] First, you must install some additional libraries used by `read_html`:

```
conda install lxml
pip install beautifulsoup4 html5lib
```

If you are not using conda, `pip install lxml` will likely also work.

The `pandas.read_html` function has a number of options, but by default it searches for and attempts to parse all tabular data contained within `<table>` tags. The result is a list of DataFrame objects:

```
In [73]: tables = pd.read_html('examples/fdic_failed_bank_list.html')

In [74]: len(tables)
Out[74]: 1

In [75]: failures = tables[0]

In [76]: failures.head()
Out[76]:
                      Bank Name             City  ST   CERT  \
0                   Allied Bank         Mulberry  AR     91
1  The Woodbury Banking Company         Woodbury  GA  11297
2        First CornerStone Bank  King of Prussia  PA  35312
3            Trust Company Bank          Memphis  TN   9956
4    North Milwaukee State Bank        Milwaukee  WI  20364
                 Acquiring Institution        Closing Date       Updated Date
0                          Today's Bank  September 23, 2016  November 17, 2016
1                           United Bank     August 19, 2016  November 17, 2016
2  First-Citizens Bank & Trust Company         May 6, 2016  September 6, 2016
3            The Bank of Fayette County      April 29, 2016  September 6, 2016
```

```
4  First-Citizens Bank & Trust Company      March 11, 2016      June 16, 2016
```

Because `failures` has many columns, pandas inserts a line break character `\`.

As you will learn in later chapters, from here we could proceed to do some data cleaning and analysis, like computing the number of bank failures by year:

```
In [77]: close_timestamps = pd.to_datetime(failures['Closing Date'])

In [78]: close_timestamps.dt.year.value_counts()
Out[78]:
2010    157
2009    140
2011     92
2012     51
2008     25
       ...
2004      4
2001      4
2007      3
2003      3
2000      2
Name: Closing Date, Length: 15, dtype: int64
```

Parsing XML with lxml.objectify

XML (eXtensible Markup Language) is another common structured data format supporting hierarchical, nested data with metadata. The book you are currently reading was actually created from a series of large XML documents.

Earlier, I showed the `pandas.read_html` function, which uses either lxml or Beautiful Soup under the hood to parse data from HTML. XML and HTML are structurally similar, but XML is more general. Here, I will show an example of how to use lxml to parse data from a more general XML format.

The New York Metropolitan Transportation Authority (MTA) publishes a number of data series about its bus and train services. Here we'll look at the performance data, which is contained in a set of XML files. Each train or bus service has a different file (like *Performance_MNR.xml* for the Metro-North Railroad) containing monthly data as a series of XML records that look like this:

```
<INDICATOR>
  <INDICATOR_SEQ>373889</INDICATOR_SEQ>
  <PARENT_SEQ></PARENT_SEQ>
  <AGENCY_NAME>Metro-North Railroad</AGENCY_NAME>
  <INDICATOR_NAME>Escalator Availability</INDICATOR_NAME>
  <DESCRIPTION>Percent of the time that escalators are operational
  systemwide. The availability rate is based on physical observations
performed
  the morning of regular business days only. This is a new indicator the
agency
  began reporting in 2009.</DESCRIPTION>
  <PERIOD_YEAR>2011</PERIOD_YEAR>
  <PERIOD_MONTH>12</PERIOD_MONTH>
  <CATEGORY>Service Indicators</CATEGORY>
  <FREQUENCY>M</FREQUENCY>
  <DESIRED_CHANGE>U</DESIRED_CHANGE>
  <INDICATOR_UNIT>%</INDICATOR_UNIT>
  <DECIMAL_PLACES>1</DECIMAL_PLACES>
  <YTD_TARGET>97.00</YTD_TARGET>
  <YTD_ACTUAL></YTD_ACTUAL>
  <MONTHLY_TARGET>97.00</MONTHLY_TARGET>
  <MONTHLY_ACTUAL></MONTHLY_ACTUAL>
</INDICATOR>
```

Using `lxml.objectify`, we parse the file and get a reference to the root node of the XML file with `getroot`:

```
from lxml import objectify

path = 'examples/mta_perf/Performance_MNR.xml'
parsed = objectify.parse(open(path))
root = parsed.getroot()
```

`root.INDICATOR` returns a generator yielding each `<INDICATOR>` XML element. For each record, we can populate a dict of tag names (like `YTD_ACTUAL`) to data values (excluding a few tags):

```
data = []

skip_fields = ['PARENT_SEQ', 'INDICATOR_SEQ',
               'DESIRED_CHANGE', 'DECIMAL_PLACES']

for elt in root.INDICATOR:
    el_data = {}
    for child in elt.getchildren():
        if child.tag in skip_fields:
            continue
        el_data[child.tag] = child.pyval
    data.append(el_data)
```

Lastly, convert this list of dicts into a DataFrame:

```
In [81]: perf = pd.DataFrame(data)

In [82]: perf.head()
Out[82]:
Empty DataFrame
Columns: []
Index: []
```

XML data can get much more complicated than this example. Each tag can have metadata, too. Consider an HTML link tag, which is also valid XML:

```
from io import StringIO
tag = '<a href="http://www.google.com">Google</a>'
root = objectify.parse(StringIO(tag)).getroot()
```

You can now access any of the fields (like `href`) in the tag or the link text:

```
In [84]: root
Out[84]: <Element a at 0x7f6b15817748>

In [85]: root.get('href')
Out[85]: 'http://www.google.com'

In [86]: root.text
Out[86]: 'Google'
```

6.2 Binary Data Formats

One of the easiest ways to store data (also known as *serialization*) efficiently in binary format is using Python's built-in `pickle` serialization. pandas objects all have a `to_pickle` method that writes the data to disk in pickle format:

```
In [87]: frame = pd.read_csv('examples/ex1.csv')

In [88]: frame
Out[88]:
   a   b   c   d message
0  1   2   3   4   hello
1  5   6   7   8   world
2  9  10  11  12     foo

In [89]: frame.to_pickle('examples/frame_pickle')
```

You can read any "pickled" object stored in a file by using the built-in `pickle` directly, or even more conveniently using `pandas.read_pickle`:

```
In [90]: pd.read_pickle('examples/frame_pickle')
Out[90]:
   a   b   c   d message
0  1   2   3   4   hello
1  5   6   7   8   world
2  9  10  11  12     foo
```

CAUTION

`pickle` is only recommended as a short-term storage format. The problem is that it is hard to guarantee that the format will be stable over time; an object pickled today may not unpickle with a later version of a library. We have tried to maintain backward compatibility when possible, but at some point in the future it may be necessary to "break" the pickle format.

pandas has built-in support for two more binary data formats: HDF5 and MessagePack. I will give some HDF5 examples in the next section, but I encourage you to explore different file formats to see how fast they are and how well they work for your analysis. Some other storage formats for pandas or NumPy data include:

bcolz
: A compressable column-oriented binary format based on the Blosc compression library.

Feather
: A cross-language column-oriented file format I designed with the R programming community's Hadley Wickham. Feather uses the Apache Arrow columnar memory format.

Using HDF5 Format

HDF5 is a well-regarded file format intended for storing large quantities of scientific array data. It is available as a C library, and it has interfaces available in many other languages, including Java, Julia, MATLAB, and Python. The "HDF" in HDF5 stands for *hierarchical data format*. Each HDF5 file can store multiple datasets and supporting metadata. Compared with simpler formats, HDF5 supports on-the-fly compression with a variety of compression modes, enabling data with repeated patterns to be stored more efficiently. HDF5 can be a good choice for working with very large datasets that don't fit into memory, as you can efficiently read and write small sections of much larger arrays.

While it's possible to directly access HDF5 files using either the PyTables or h5py libraries, pandas provides a high-level interface that simplifies storing Series and DataFrame object. The `HDFStore` class works like a dict and handles the low-level details:

```
In [92]: frame = pd.DataFrame({'a': np.random.randn(100)})

In [93]: store = pd.HDFStore('mydata.h5')

In [94]: store['obj1'] = frame

In [95]: store['obj1_col'] = frame['a']

In [96]: store
Out[96]:
<class 'pandas.io.pytables.HDFStore'>
File path: mydata.h5
/obj1                frame        (shape->[100,1])

/obj1_col            series       (shape->[100])

/obj2                frame_table  (typ->appendable,nrows->100,ncols-
>1,indexers->
[index])
/obj3                frame_table  (typ->appendable,nrows->100,ncols-
>1,indexers->
[index])
```

Objects contained in the HDF5 file can then be retrieved with the same dict-like API:

```
In [97]: store['obj1']
Out[97]:
           a
0  -0.204708
1   0.478943
2  -0.519439
3  -0.555730
4   1.965781
..       ...
95  0.795253
96  0.118110
97 -0.748532
98  0.584970
99  0.152677
[100 rows x 1 columns]
```

HDFStore supports two storage schemas, 'fixed' and 'table'. The latter is generally slower, but it supports query operations using a special syntax:

```
In [98]: store.put('obj2', frame, format='table')

In [99]: store.select('obj2', where=['index >= 10 and index <= 15'])
Out[99]:
           a
10  1.007189
11 -1.296221
12  0.274992
13  0.228913
14  1.352917
15  0.886429

In [100]: store.close()
```

The put is an explicit version of the store['obj2'] = frame method but allows us to set other options like the storage format.

The pandas.read_hdf function gives you a shortcut to these tools:

```
In [101]: frame.to_hdf('mydata.h5', 'obj3', format='table')

In [102]: pd.read_hdf('mydata.h5', 'obj3', where=['index < 5'])
Out[102]:
          a
0 -0.204708
1  0.478943
2 -0.519439
3 -0.555730
4  1.965781
```

NOTE

If you are processing data that is stored on remote servers, like Amazon S3 or HDFS, using a different binary format designed for distributed storage like Apache Parquet may be more suitable. Python for Parquet and other such storage formats is still developing, so I do not write about them in this book.

If you work with large quantities of data locally, I would encourage you to explore PyTables and h5py to see how they can suit your needs. Since many data analysis problems are I/O-bound (rather than CPU-bound), using a tool like HDF5 can massively accelerate your applications.

CAUTION

HDF5 is *not* a database. It is best suited for write-once, read-many datasets. While data can be added to a file at any time, if multiple writers do so simultaneously, the file can become corrupted.

Reading Microsoft Excel Files

pandas also supports reading tabular data stored in Excel 2003 (and higher) files using either the `ExcelFile` class or `pandas.read_excel` function. Internally these tools use the add-on packages `xlrd` and `openpyxl` to read XLS and XLSX files, respectively. You may need to install these manually with pip or conda.

To use `ExcelFile`, create an instance by passing a path to an `xls` or `xlsx` file:

```
In [104]: xlsx = pd.ExcelFile('examples/ex1.xlsx')
```

Data stored in a sheet can then be read into DataFrame with `parse`:

```
In [105]: pd.read_excel(xlsx, 'Sheet1')
Out[105]:
   a   b   c   d message
0  1   2   3   4   hello
1  5   6   7   8   world
2  9  10  11  12     foo
```

If you are reading multiple sheets in a file, then it is faster to create the `ExcelFile`, but you can also simply pass the filename to `pandas.read_excel`:

```
In [106]: frame = pd.read_excel('examples/ex1.xlsx', 'Sheet1')

In [107]: frame
Out[107]:
   a   b   c   d message
0  1   2   3   4   hello
1  5   6   7   8   world
2  9  10  11  12     foo
```

To write pandas data to Excel format, you must first create an `ExcelWriter`, then write data to it using pandas objects' `to_excel` method:

```
In [108]: writer = pd.ExcelWriter('examples/ex2.xlsx')

In [109]: frame.to_excel(writer, 'Sheet1')
```

```
In [110]: writer.save()
```

You can also pass a file path to `to_excel` and avoid the `ExcelWriter`:

```
In [111]: frame.to_excel('examples/ex2.xlsx')
```

6.3 Interacting with Web APIs

Many websites have public APIs providing data feeds via JSON or some other format. There are a number of ways to access these APIs from Python; one easy-to-use method that I recommend is the `requests` package.

To find the last 30 GitHub issues for pandas on GitHub, we can make a `GET` HTTP request using the add-on `requests` library:

```
In [113]: import requests

In [114]: url = 'https://api.github.com/repos/pandas-dev/pandas/issues'

In [115]: resp = requests.get(url)

In [116]: resp
Out[116]: <Response [200]>
```

The Response object's `json` method will return a dictionary containing JSON parsed into native Python objects:

```
In [117]: data = resp.json()

In [118]: data[0]['title']
Out[118]: 'Period does not round down for frequencies less that 1 hour'
```

Each element in `data` is a dictionary containing all of the data found on a GitHub issue page (except for the comments). We can pass `data` directly to DataFrame and extract fields of interest:

```
In [119]: issues = pd.DataFrame(data, columns=['number', 'title',
   .....:                                      'labels', 'state'])

In [120]: issues
Out[120]:
    number                                              title  \
0    17666  Period does not round down for frequencies les...
1    17665           DOC: improve docstring of function where
2    17664               COMPAT: skip 32-bit test on int repr
3    17662                          implement Delegator class
4    17654  BUG: Fix series rename called with str alterin...
..     ...                                                ...
25   17603  BUG: Correctly localize naive datetime strings...
```

```
26   17599                     core.dtypes.generic --> cython
27   17596   Merge cdate_range functionality into bdate_range
28   17587  Time Grouper bug fix when applied for list gro...
29   17583  BUG: fix tz-aware DatetimeIndex + TimedeltaInd...
                                                  labels state
0                                                     []  open
1   [{'id': 134699, 'url': 'https://api.github.com...  open
2   [{'id': 563047854, 'url': 'https://api.github....  open
3                                                     []  open
4   [{'id': 76811, 'url': 'https://api.github.com/...  open
..                                                   ...   ...
25  [{'id': 76811, 'url': 'https://api.github.com/...  open
26  [{'id': 49094459, 'url': 'https://api.github.c...  open
27  [{'id': 35818298, 'url': 'https://api.github.c...  open
28  [{'id': 233160, 'url': 'https://api.github.com...  open
29  [{'id': 76811, 'url': 'https://api.github.com/...  open
[30 rows x 4 columns]
```

With a bit of elbow grease, you can create some higher-level interfaces to common web APIs that return DataFrame objects for easy analysis.

6.4 Interacting with Databases

In a business setting, most data may not be stored in text or Excel files. SQL-based relational databases (such as SQL Server, PostgreSQL, and MySQL) are in wide use, and many alternative databases have become quite popular. The choice of database is usually dependent on the performance, data integrity, and scalability needs of an application.

Loading data from SQL into a DataFrame is fairly straightforward, and pandas has some functions to simplify the process. As an example, I'll create a SQLite database using Python's built-in `sqlite3` driver:

```
In [121]: import sqlite3

In [122]: query = """
   .....: CREATE TABLE test
   .....: (a VARCHAR(20), b VARCHAR(20),
   .....:  c REAL,        d INTEGER
   .....: );"""

In [123]: con = sqlite3.connect('mydata.sqlite')

In [124]: con.execute(query)
Out[124]: <sqlite3.Cursor at 0x7f6b12a50f10>

In [125]: con.commit()
```

Then, insert a few rows of data:

```
In [126]: data = [('Atlanta', 'Georgia', 1.25, 6),
   .....:         ('Tallahassee', 'Florida', 2.6, 3),
   .....:         ('Sacramento', 'California', 1.7, 5)]

In [127]: stmt = "INSERT INTO test VALUES(?, ?, ?, ?)"

In [128]: con.executemany(stmt, data)
Out[128]: <sqlite3.Cursor at 0x7f6b15c66ce0>

In [129]: con.commit()
```

Most Python SQL drivers (PyODBC, psycopg2, MySQLdb, pymssql, etc.) return a list of tuples when selecting data from a table:

```
In [130]: cursor = con.execute('select * from test')

In [131]: rows = cursor.fetchall()

In [132]: rows
Out[132]:
[('Atlanta', 'Georgia', 1.25, 6),
 ('Tallahassee', 'Florida', 2.6, 3),
 ('Sacramento', 'California', 1.7, 5)]
```

You can pass the list of tuples to the DataFrame constructor, but you also need the column names, contained in the cursor's `description` attribute:

```
In [133]: cursor.description
Out[133]:
(('a', None, None, None, None, None, None),
 ('b', None, None, None, None, None, None),
 ('c', None, None, None, None, None, None),
 ('d', None, None, None, None, None, None))

In [134]: pd.DataFrame(rows, columns=[x[0] for x in cursor.description])
Out[134]:
             a           b     c  d
0      Atlanta     Georgia  1.25  6
1  Tallahassee     Florida  2.60  3
2   Sacramento  California  1.70  5
```

This is quite a bit of munging that you'd rather not repeat each time you query the database. The SQLAlchemy project is a popular Python SQL toolkit that abstracts away many of the common differences between SQL databases. pandas has a `read_sql` function that enables you to read data easily from a general SQLAlchemy connection. Here, we'll connect to the same SQLite database with SQLAlchemy and read data from the table created before:

```
In [135]: import sqlalchemy as sqla

In [136]: db = sqla.create_engine('sqlite:///mydata.sqlite')

In [137]: pd.read_sql('select * from test', db)
Out[137]:
             a           b     c  d
0      Atlanta     Georgia  1.25  6
1  Tallahassee     Florida  2.60  3
2   Sacramento  California  1.70  5
```

6.5 Conclusion

Getting access to data is frequently the first step in the data analysis process. We have looked at a number of useful tools in this chapter that should help you get started. In the upcoming chapters we will dig deeper into data wrangling, data visualization, time series analysis, and other topics.

---

1 For the full list, see *https://www.fdic.gov/bank/individual/failed/banklist.html*.

Chapter 7. Data Cleaning and Preparation

During the course of doing data analysis and modeling, a significant amount of time is spent on data preparation: loading, cleaning, transforming, and rearranging. Such tasks are often reported to take up 80% or more of an analyst’s time. Sometimes the way that data is stored in files or databases is not in the right format for a particular task. Many researchers choose to do ad hoc processing of data from one form to another using a general-purpose programming language, like Python, Perl, R, or Java, or Unix text-processing tools like sed or awk. Fortunately, pandas, along with the built-in Python language features, provides you with a high-level, flexible, and fast set of tools to enable you to manipulate data into the right form.

If you identify a type of data manipulation that isn’t anywhere in this book or elsewhere in the pandas library, feel free to share your use case on one of the Python mailing lists or on the pandas GitHub site. Indeed, much of the design and implementation of pandas has been driven by the needs of real-world applications.

In this chapter I discuss tools for missing data, duplicate data, string manipulation, and some other analytical data transformations. In the next chapter, I focus on combining and rearranging datasets in various ways.

7.1 Handling Missing Data

Missing data occurs commonly in many data analysis applications. One of the goals of pandas is to make working with missing data as painless as possible. For example, all of the descriptive statistics on pandas objects exclude missing data by default.

The way that missing data is represented in pandas objects is somewhat imperfect, but it is functional for a lot of users. For numeric data, pandas uses the floating-point value `NaN` (Not a Number) to represent missing data. We call this a *sentinel value* that can be easily detected:

```
In [10]: string_data = pd.Series(['aardvark', 'artichoke', np.nan,
'avocado'])

In [11]: string_data
Out[11]:
0     aardvark
1    artichoke
2          NaN
3      avocado
dtype: object

In [12]: string_data.isnull()
Out[12]:
0    False
1    False
2     True
3    False
dtype: bool
```

In pandas, we’ve adopted a convention used in the R programming language by referring to missing data as NA, which stands for *not available*. In statistics applications, NA data may either be data that does not exist or that exists but was not observed (through problems with data collection, for example). When cleaning up data for analysis, it is often important to do analysis on the missing data itself to identify data collection problems or potential biases in the data caused by missing data.

The built-in Python `None` value is also treated as NA in object arrays:

```
In [13]: string_data[0] = None
```

```
In [14]: string_data.isnull()
Out[14]:
0     True
1    False
2     True
3    False
dtype: bool
```

There is work ongoing in the pandas project to improve the internal details of how missing data is handled, but the user API functions, like `pandas.isnull`, abstract away many of the annoying details. See Table 7-1 for a list of some functions related to missing data handling.

Table 7-1. NA handling methods

Argument	Description
`dropna`	Filter axis labels based on whether values for each label have missing data, with varying thresholds for how much missing data to tolerate.
`fillna`	Fill in missing data with some value or using an interpolation method such as `'ffill'` or `'bfill'`.
`isnull`	Return boolean values indicating which values are missing/NA.
`notnull`	Negation of `isnull`.

Filtering Out Missing Data

There are a few ways to filter out missing data. While you always have the option to do it by hand using `pandas.isnull` and boolean indexing, the `dropna` can be helpful. On a Series, it returns the Series with only the non-null data and index values:

```
In [15]: from numpy import nan as NA

In [16]: data = pd.Series([1, NA, 3.5, NA, 7])

In [17]: data.dropna()
Out[17]:
0    1.0
2    3.5
4    7.0
dtype: float64
```

This is equivalent to:

```
In [18]: data[data.notnull()]
Out[18]:
0    1.0
2    3.5
4    7.0
dtype: float64
```

With DataFrame objects, things are a bit more complex. You may want to drop rows or columns that are all NA or only those containing any NAs. `dropna` by default drops any row containing a missing value:

```
In [19]: data = pd.DataFrame([[1., 6.5, 3.], [1., NA, NA],
   ....:                      [NA, NA, NA], [NA, 6.5, 3.]])

In [20]: cleaned = data.dropna()

In [21]: data
Out[21]:
     0    1    2
0  1.0  6.5  3.0
1  1.0  NaN  NaN
2  NaN  NaN  NaN
3  NaN  6.5  3.0

In [22]: cleaned
```

```
Out[22]:
     0    1    2
0  1.0  6.5  3.0
```

Passing `how='all'` will only drop rows that are all NA:

```
In [23]: data.dropna(how='all')
Out[23]:
     0    1    2
0  1.0  6.5  3.0
1  1.0  NaN  NaN
3  NaN  6.5  3.0
```

To drop columns in the same way, pass `axis=1`:

```
In [24]: data[4] = NA

In [25]: data
Out[25]:
     0    1    2   4
0  1.0  6.5  3.0 NaN
1  1.0  NaN  NaN NaN
2  NaN  NaN  NaN NaN
3  NaN  6.5  3.0 NaN

In [26]: data.dropna(axis=1, how='all')
Out[26]:
     0    1    2
0  1.0  6.5  3.0
1  1.0  NaN  NaN
2  NaN  NaN  NaN
3  NaN  6.5  3.0
```

A related way to filter out DataFrame rows tends to concern time series data. Suppose you want to keep only rows containing a certain number of observations. You can indicate this with the `thresh` argument:

```
In [27]: df = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(7, 3))

In [28]: df.iloc[:4, 1] = NA

In [29]: df.iloc[:2, 2] = NA

In [30]: df
Out[30]:
          0         1         2
0 -0.204708       NaN       NaN
1 -0.555730       NaN       NaN
2  0.092908       NaN  0.769023
```

```
3  1.246435       NaN -1.296221
4  0.274992  0.228913  1.352917
5  0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843
6  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741

In [31]: df.dropna()
Out[31]:
          0         1         2
4  0.274992  0.228913  1.352917
5  0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843
6  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741

In [32]: df.dropna(thresh=2)
Out[32]:
          0         1         2
2  0.092908       NaN  0.769023
3  1.246435       NaN -1.296221
4  0.274992  0.228913  1.352917
5  0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843
6  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741
```

Filling In Missing Data

Rather than filtering out missing data (and potentially discarding other data along with it), you may want to fill in the "holes" in any number of ways. For most purposes, the `fillna` method is the workhorse function to use. Calling `fillna` with a constant replaces missing values with that value:

```
In [33]: df.fillna(0)
Out[33]:
          0         1         2
0 -0.204708  0.000000  0.000000
1 -0.555730  0.000000  0.000000
2  0.092908  0.000000  0.769023
3  1.246435  0.000000 -1.296221
4  0.274992  0.228913  1.352917
5  0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843
6  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741
```

Calling `fillna` with a dict, you can use a different fill value for each column:

```
In [34]: df.fillna({1: 0.5, 2: 0})
Out[34]:
          0         1         2
0 -0.204708  0.500000  0.000000
1 -0.555730  0.500000  0.000000
2  0.092908  0.500000  0.769023
3  1.246435  0.500000 -1.296221
4  0.274992  0.228913  1.352917
5  0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843
6  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741
```

`fillna` returns a new object, but you can modify the existing object in-place:

```
In [35]: _ = df.fillna(0, inplace=True)

In [36]: df
Out[36]:
          0         1         2
0 -0.204708  0.000000  0.000000
1 -0.555730  0.000000  0.000000
2  0.092908  0.000000  0.769023
3  1.246435  0.000000 -1.296221
4  0.274992  0.228913  1.352917
5  0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843
6  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741
```

The same interpolation methods available for reindexing can be used with `fillna`:

```
In [37]: df = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(6, 3))

In [38]: df.iloc[2:, 1] = NA

In [39]: df.iloc[4:, 2] = NA

In [40]: df
Out[40]:
          0         1         2
0  0.476985  3.248944 -1.021228
1 -0.577087  0.124121  0.302614
2  0.523772       NaN  1.343810
3 -0.713544       NaN -2.370232
4 -1.860761       NaN       NaN
5 -1.265934       NaN       NaN

In [41]: df.fillna(method='ffill')
Out[41]:
          0         1         2
0  0.476985  3.248944 -1.021228
1 -0.577087  0.124121  0.302614
2  0.523772  0.124121  1.343810
3 -0.713544  0.124121 -2.370232
4 -1.860761  0.124121 -2.370232
5 -1.265934  0.124121 -2.370232

In [42]: df.fillna(method='ffill', limit=2)
Out[42]:
          0         1         2
0  0.476985  3.248944 -1.021228
1 -0.577087  0.124121  0.302614
2  0.523772  0.124121  1.343810
3 -0.713544  0.124121 -2.370232
4 -1.860761       NaN -2.370232
5 -1.265934       NaN -2.370232
```

With `fillna` you can do lots of other things with a little creativity. For example, you might pass the mean or median value of a Series:

```
In [43]: data = pd.Series([1., NA, 3.5, NA, 7])

In [44]: data.fillna(data.mean())
Out[44]:
0    1.000000
1    3.833333
2    3.500000
3    3.833333
4    7.000000
dtype: float64
```

See Table 7-2 for a reference on `fillna`.

Table 7-2. fillna function arguments

Argument	Description
`value`	Scalar value or dict-like object to use to fill missing values
`method`	Interpolation; by default `'ffill'` if function called with no other arguments
`axis`	Axis to fill on; default `axis=0`
`inplace`	Modify the calling object without producing a copy
`limit`	For forward and backward filling, maximum number of consecutive periods to fill

7.2 Data Transformation

So far in this chapter we've been concerned with rearranging data. Filtering, cleaning, and other transformations are another class of important operations.

Removing Duplicates

Duplicate rows may be found in a DataFrame for any number of reasons. Here is an example:

```
In [45]: data = pd.DataFrame({'k1': ['one', 'two'] * 3 + ['two'],
   ....:                      'k2': [1, 1, 2, 3, 3, 4, 4]})

In [46]: data
Out[46]:
    k1  k2
0  one   1
1  two   1
2  one   2
3  two   3
4  one   3
5  two   4
6  two   4
```

The DataFrame method `duplicated` returns a boolean Series indicating whether each row is a duplicate (has been observed in a previous row) or not:

```
In [47]: data.duplicated()
Out[47]:
0    False
1    False
2    False
3    False
4    False
5    False
6     True
dtype: bool
```

Relatedly, `drop_duplicates` returns a DataFrame where the `duplicated` array is `False`:

```
In [48]: data.drop_duplicates()
Out[48]:
    k1  k2
0  one   1
1  two   1
2  one   2
3  two   3
4  one   3
5  two   4
```

Both of these methods by default consider all of the columns; alternatively, you can specify any subset of them to detect duplicates. Suppose we had an additional column of values and wanted to filter duplicates only based on the `'k1'` column:

```
In [49]: data['v1'] = range(7)

In [50]: data.drop_duplicates(['k1'])
Out[50]:
    k1  k2  v1
0  one   1   0
1  two   1   1
```

`duplicated` and `drop_duplicates` by default keep the first observed value combination. Passing `keep='last'` will return the last one:

```
In [51]: data.drop_duplicates(['k1', 'k2'], keep='last')
Out[51]:
    k1  k2  v1
0  one   1   0
1  two   1   1
2  one   2   2
3  two   3   3
4  one   3   4
6  two   4   6
```

Transforming Data Using a Function or Mapping

For many datasets, you may wish to perform some transformation based on the values in an array, Series, or column in a DataFrame. Consider the following hypothetical data collected about various kinds of meat:

```
In [52]: data = pd.DataFrame({'food': ['bacon', 'pulled pork', 'bacon',
   ....:                               'Pastrami', 'corned beef', 'Bacon',
   ....:                               'pastrami', 'honey ham', 'nova lox'],
   ....:                      'ounces': [4, 3, 12, 6, 7.5, 8, 3, 5, 6]})

In [53]: data
Out[53]:
          food  ounces
0        bacon     4.0
1  pulled pork     3.0
2        bacon    12.0
3     Pastrami     6.0
4  corned beef     7.5
5        Bacon     8.0
6     pastrami     3.0
7    honey ham     5.0
8     nova lox     6.0
```

Suppose you wanted to add a column indicating the type of animal that each food came from. Let's write down a mapping of each distinct meat type to the kind of animal:

```
meat_to_animal = {
  'bacon': 'pig',
  'pulled pork': 'pig',
  'pastrami': 'cow',
  'corned beef': 'cow',
  'honey ham': 'pig',
  'nova lox': 'salmon'
}
```

The `map` method on a Series accepts a function or dict-like object containing a mapping, but here we have a small problem in that some of the meats are capitalized and others are not. Thus, we need to convert each value to lowercase using the `str.lower` Series method:

```
In [55]: lowercased = data['food'].str.lower()
```

```
In [56]: lowercased
Out[56]:
0          bacon
1    pulled pork
2          bacon
3       pastrami
4    corned beef
5          bacon
6       pastrami
7      honey ham
8       nova lox
Name: food, dtype: object

In [57]: data['animal'] = lowercased.map(meat_to_animal)

In [58]: data
Out[58]:
          food  ounces  animal
0        bacon     4.0     pig
1  pulled pork     3.0     pig
2        bacon    12.0     pig
3     Pastrami     6.0     cow
4  corned beef     7.5     cow
5        Bacon     8.0     pig
6     pastrami     3.0     cow
7    honey ham     5.0     pig
8     nova lox     6.0  salmon
```

We could also have passed a function that does all the work:

```
In [59]: data['food'].map(lambda x: meat_to_animal[x.lower()])
Out[59]:
0       pig
1       pig
2       pig
3       cow
4       cow
5       pig
6       cow
7       pig
8    salmon
Name: food, dtype: object
```

Using `map` is a convenient way to perform element-wise transformations and other data cleaning–related operations.

Replacing Values

Filling in missing data with the `fillna` method is a special case of more general value replacement. As you've already seen, `map` can be used to modify a subset of values in an object but `replace` provides a simpler and more flexible way to do so. Let's consider this Series:

```
In [60]: data = pd.Series([1., -999., 2., -999., -1000., 3.])

In [61]: data
Out[61]:
0       1.0
1    -999.0
2       2.0
3    -999.0
4   -1000.0
5       3.0
dtype: float64
```

The `-999` values might be sentinel values for missing data. To replace these with NA values that pandas understands, we can use `replace`, producing a new Series (unless you pass `inplace=True`):

```
In [62]: data.replace(-999, np.nan)
Out[62]:
0       1.0
1       NaN
2       2.0
3       NaN
4   -1000.0
5       3.0
dtype: float64
```

If you want to replace multiple values at once, you instead pass a list and then the substitute value:

```
In [63]: data.replace([-999, -1000], np.nan)
Out[63]:
0    1.0
1    NaN
2    2.0
3    NaN
4    NaN
5    3.0
```

```
dtype: float64
```

To use a different replacement for each value, pass a list of substitutes:

```
In [64]: data.replace([-999, -1000], [np.nan, 0])
Out[64]:
0    1.0
1    NaN
2    2.0
3    NaN
4    0.0
5    3.0
dtype: float64
```

The argument passed can also be a dict:

```
In [65]: data.replace({-999: np.nan, -1000: 0})
Out[65]:
0    1.0
1    NaN
2    2.0
3    NaN
4    0.0
5    3.0
dtype: float64
```

NOTE

The `data.replace` method is distinct from `data.str.replace`, which performs string substitution element-wise. We look at these string methods on Series later in the chapter.

Renaming Axis Indexes

Like values in a Series, axis labels can be similarly transformed by a function or mapping of some form to produce new, differently labeled objects. You can also modify the axes in-place without creating a new data structure. Here's a simple example:

```
In [66]: data = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(12).reshape((3, 4)),
   ....:                     index=['Ohio', 'Colorado', 'New York'],
   ....:                     columns=['one', 'two', 'three', 'four'])
```

Like a Series, the axis indexes have a `map` method:

```
In [67]: transform = lambda x: x[:4].upper()

In [68]: data.index.map(transform)
Out[68]: Index(['OHIO', 'COLO', 'NEW '], dtype='object')
```

You can assign to `index`, modifying the DataFrame in-place:

```
In [69]: data.index = data.index.map(transform)

In [70]: data
Out[70]:
      one  two  three  four
OHIO    0    1      2     3
COLO    4    5      6     7
NEW     8    9     10    11
```

If you want to create a transformed version of a dataset without modifying the original, a useful method is `rename`:

```
In [71]: data.rename(index=str.title, columns=str.upper)
Out[71]:
      ONE  TWO  THREE  FOUR
Ohio    0    1      2     3
Colo    4    5      6     7
New     8    9     10    11
```

Notably, `rename` can be used in conjunction with a dict-like object providing new values for a subset of the axis labels:

```
In [72]: data.rename(index={'OHIO': 'INDIANA'},
   ....:             columns={'three': 'peekaboo'})
Out[72]:
         one  two  peekaboo  four
INDIANA    0    1         2     3
COLO       4    5         6     7
NEW        8    9        10    11
```

`rename` saves you from the chore of copying the DataFrame manually and assigning to its `index` and `columns` attributes. Should you wish to modify a dataset in-place, pass `inplace=True`:

```
In [73]: data.rename(index={'OHIO': 'INDIANA'}, inplace=True)

In [74]: data
Out[74]:
         one  two  three  four
INDIANA    0    1      2     3
COLO       4    5      6     7
NEW        8    9     10    11
```

Discretization and Binning

Continuous data is often discretized or otherwise separated into "bins" for analysis. Suppose you have data about a group of people in a study, and you want to group them into discrete age buckets:

```
In [75]: ages = [20, 22, 25, 27, 21, 23, 37, 31, 61, 45, 41, 32]
```

Let's divide these into bins of 18 to 25, 26 to 35, 36 to 60, and finally 61 and older. To do so, you have to use `cut`, a function in pandas:

```
In [76]: bins = [18, 25, 35, 60, 100]

In [77]: cats = pd.cut(ages, bins)

In [78]: cats
Out[78]:
[(18, 25], (18, 25], (18, 25], (25, 35], (18, 25], ..., (25, 35], (60, 100],
(35,
 60], (35, 60], (25, 35]]
Length: 12
Categories (4, interval[int64]): [(18, 25] < (25, 35] < (35, 60] < (60, 100]]
```

The object pandas returns is a special `Categorical` object. The output you see describes the bins computed by `pandas.cut`. You can treat it like an array of strings indicating the bin name; internally it contains a `categories` array specifying the distinct category names along with a labeling for the `ages` data in the `codes` attribute:

```
In [79]: cats.codes
Out[79]: array([0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 2, 1, 3, 2, 2, 1], dtype=int8)

In [80]: cats.categories
Out[80]:
IntervalIndex([(18, 25], (25, 35], (35, 60], (60, 100]]
              closed='right',
              dtype='interval[int64]')

In [81]: pd.value_counts(cats)
Out[81]:
(18, 25]     5
(35, 60]     3
(25, 35]     3
```

```
(60, 100]    1
dtype: int64
```

Note that `pd.value_counts(cats)` are the bin counts for the result of `pandas.cut`.

Consistent with mathematical notation for intervals, a parenthesis means that the side is *open*, while the square bracket means it is *closed* (inclusive). You can change which side is closed by passing `right=False`:

```
In [82]: pd.cut(ages, [18, 26, 36, 61, 100], right=False)
Out[82]: 
[[18, 26), [18, 26), [18, 26), [26, 36), [18, 26), ..., [26, 36), [61, 100), 
[36,
 61), [36, 61), [26, 36)]
Length: 12
Categories (4, interval[int64]): [[18, 26) < [26, 36) < [36, 61) < [61, 100)]
```

You can also pass your own bin names by passing a list or array to the `labels` option:

```
In [83]: group_names = ['Youth', 'YoungAdult', 'MiddleAged', 'Senior']

In [84]: pd.cut(ages, bins, labels=group_names)
Out[84]: 
[Youth, Youth, Youth, YoungAdult, Youth, ..., YoungAdult, Senior, MiddleAged, 
Mid
dleAged, YoungAdult]
Length: 12
Categories (4, object): [Youth < YoungAdult < MiddleAged < Senior]
```

If you pass an integer number of bins to `cut` instead of explicit bin edges, it will compute equal-length bins based on the minimum and maximum values in the data. Consider the case of some uniformly distributed data chopped into fourths:

```
In [85]: data = np.random.rand(20)

In [86]: pd.cut(data, 4, precision=2)
Out[86]: 
[(0.34, 0.55], (0.34, 0.55], (0.76, 0.97], (0.76, 0.97], (0.34, 0.55], ..., 
(0.34
, 0.55], (0.34, 0.55], (0.55, 0.76], (0.34, 0.55], (0.12, 0.34]]
Length: 20
Categories (4, interval[float64]): [(0.12, 0.34] < (0.34, 0.55] < (0.55,
```

```
0.76] <
(0.76, 0.97]]
```

The `precision=2` option limits the decimal precision to two digits.

A closely related function, `qcut`, bins the data based on sample quantiles. Depending on the distribution of the data, using `cut` will not usually result in each bin having the same number of data points. Since `qcut` uses sample quantiles instead, by definition you will obtain roughly equal-size bins:

```
In [87]: data = np.random.randn(1000)  # Normally distributed

In [88]: cats = pd.qcut(data, 4)  # Cut into quartiles

In [89]: cats
Out[89]:
[(-0.0265, 0.62], (0.62, 3.928], (-0.68, -0.0265], (0.62, 3.928], (-0.0265,
0.62]
, ..., (-0.68, -0.0265], (-0.68, -0.0265], (-2.95, -0.68], (0.62, 3.928],
(-0.68,
 -0.0265]]
Length: 1000
Categories (4, interval[float64]): [(-2.95, -0.68] < (-0.68, -0.0265] <
(-0.0265,
 0.62] <
                                    (0.62, 3.928]]

In [90]: pd.value_counts(cats)
Out[90]:
(0.62, 3.928]       250
(-0.0265, 0.62]     250
(-0.68, -0.0265]    250
(-2.95, -0.68]      250
dtype: int64
```

Similar to `cut` you can pass your own quantiles (numbers between 0 and 1, inclusive):

```
In [91]: pd.qcut(data, [0, 0.1, 0.5, 0.9, 1.])
Out[91]:
[(-0.0265, 1.286], (-0.0265, 1.286], (-1.187, -0.0265], (-0.0265, 1.286],
(-0.026
5, 1.286], ..., (-1.187, -0.0265], (-1.187, -0.0265], (-2.95, -1.187],
(-0.0265,
1.286], (-1.187, -0.0265]]
Length: 1000
Categories (4, interval[float64]): [(-2.95, -1.187] < (-1.187, -0.0265] <
(-0.026
5, 1.286] <
```

```
(1.286, 3.928]]
```

We'll return to `cut` and `qcut` later in the chapter during our discussion of aggregation and group operations, as these discretization functions are especially useful for quantile and group analysis.

Detecting and Filtering Outliers

Filtering or transforming outliers is largely a matter of applying array operations. Consider a DataFrame with some normally distributed data:

```
In [92]: data = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(1000, 4))

In [93]: data.describe()
Out[93]:
                 0            1            2            3
count  1000.000000  1000.000000  1000.000000  1000.000000
mean      0.049091     0.026112    -0.002544    -0.051827
std       0.996947     1.007458     0.995232     0.998311
min      -3.645860    -3.184377    -3.745356    -3.428254
25%      -0.599807    -0.612162    -0.687373    -0.747478
50%       0.047101    -0.013609    -0.022158    -0.088274
75%       0.756646     0.695298     0.699046     0.623331
max       2.653656     3.525865     2.735527     3.366626
```

Suppose you wanted to find values in one of the columns exceeding 3 in absolute value:

```
In [94]: col = data[2]

In [95]: col[np.abs(col) > 3]
Out[95]:
41    -3.399312
136   -3.745356
Name: 2, dtype: float64
```

To select all rows having a value exceeding 3 or –3, you can use the `any` method on a boolean DataFrame:

```
In [96]: data[(np.abs(data) > 3).any(1)]
Out[96]:
            0         1         2         3
41   0.457246 -0.025907 -3.399312 -0.974657
60   1.951312  3.260383  0.963301  1.201206
136  0.508391 -0.196713 -3.745356 -1.520113
235 -0.242459 -3.056990  1.918403 -0.578828
258  0.682841  0.326045  0.425384 -3.428254
322  1.179227 -3.184377  1.369891 -1.074833
544 -3.548824  1.553205 -2.186301  1.277104
635 -0.578093  0.193299  1.397822  3.366626
782 -0.207434  3.525865  0.283070  0.544635
803 -3.645860  0.255475 -0.549574 -1.907459
```

Values can be set based on these criteria. Here is code to cap values outside the interval –3 to 3:

```
In [97]: data[np.abs(data) > 3] = np.sign(data) * 3

In [98]: data.describe()
Out[98]:
                 0            1            2            3
count  1000.000000  1000.000000  1000.000000  1000.000000
mean      0.050286     0.025567    -0.001399    -0.051765
std       0.992920     1.004214     0.991414     0.995761
min      -3.000000    -3.000000    -3.000000    -3.000000
25%      -0.599807    -0.612162    -0.687373    -0.747478
50%       0.047101    -0.013609    -0.022158    -0.088274
75%       0.756646     0.695298     0.699046     0.623331
max       2.653656     3.000000     2.735527     3.000000
```

The statement `np.sign(data)` produces 1 and –1 values based on whether the values in `data` are positive or negative:

```
In [99]: np.sign(data).head()
Out[99]:
     0    1    2    3
0 -1.0  1.0 -1.0  1.0
1  1.0 -1.0  1.0 -1.0
2  1.0  1.0  1.0 -1.0
3 -1.0 -1.0  1.0 -1.0
4 -1.0  1.0 -1.0 -1.0
```

Permutation and Random Sampling

Permuting (randomly reordering) a Series or the rows in a DataFrame is easy to do using the `numpy.random.permutation` function. Calling `permutation` with the length of the axis you want to permute produces an array of integers indicating the new ordering:

```
In [100]: df = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(5 * 4).reshape((5, 4)))

In [101]: sampler = np.random.permutation(5)

In [102]: sampler
Out[102]: array([3, 1, 4, 2, 0])
```

That array can then be used in `iloc`-based indexing or the equivalent `take` function:

```
In [103]: df
Out[103]:
    0   1   2   3
0   0   1   2   3
1   4   5   6   7
2   8   9  10  11
3  12  13  14  15
4  16  17  18  19

In [104]: df.take(sampler)
Out[104]:
    0   1   2   3
3  12  13  14  15
1   4   5   6   7
4  16  17  18  19
2   8   9  10  11
0   0   1   2   3
```

To select a random subset without replacement, you can use the `sample` method on Series and DataFrame:

```
In [105]: df.sample(n=3)
Out[105]:
    0   1   2   3
3  12  13  14  15
4  16  17  18  19
2   8   9  10  11
```

To generate a sample *with* replacement (to allow repeat choices), pass `replace=True` to `sample`:

```
In [106]: choices = pd.Series([5, 7, -1, 6, 4])

In [107]: draws = choices.sample(n=10, replace=True)

In [108]: draws
Out[108]:
4    4
1    7
4    4
2   -1
0    5
3    6
1    7
4    4
0    5
4    4
dtype: int64
```

Computing Indicator/Dummy Variables

Another type of transformation for statistical modeling or machine learning applications is converting a categorical variable into a “dummy” or “indicator” matrix. If a column in a DataFrame has `k` distinct values, you would derive a matrix or DataFrame with `k` columns containing all 1s and 0s. pandas has a `get_dummies` function for doing this, though devising one yourself is not difficult. Let’s return to an earlier example DataFrame:

```
In [109]: df = pd.DataFrame({'key': ['b', 'b', 'a', 'c', 'a', 'b'],
   .....:                    'data1': range(6)})

In [110]: pd.get_dummies(df['key'])
Out[110]:
   a  b  c
0  0  1  0
1  0  1  0
2  1  0  0
3  0  0  1
4  1  0  0
5  0  1  0
```

In some cases, you may want to add a prefix to the columns in the indicator DataFrame, which can then be merged with the other data. `get_dummies` has a prefix argument for doing this:

```
In [111]: dummies = pd.get_dummies(df['key'], prefix='key')

In [112]: df_with_dummy = df[['data1']].join(dummies)

In [113]: df_with_dummy
Out[113]:
   data1  key_a  key_b  key_c
0      0      0      1      0
1      1      0      1      0
2      2      1      0      0
3      3      0      0      1
4      4      1      0      0
5      5      0      1      0
```

If a row in a DataFrame belongs to multiple categories, things are a bit more complicated. Let’s look at the MovieLens 1M dataset, which is investigated in more detail in Chapter 14:

```
In [114]: mnames = ['movie_id', 'title', 'genres']

In [115]: movies = pd.read_table('datasets/movielens/movies.dat', sep='::',
   .....:                         header=None, names=mnames)

In [116]: movies[:10]
Out[116]:
   movie_id                               title                        genres
0         1                    Toy Story (1995)   Animation|Children's|Comedy
1         2                      Jumanji (1995)  Adventure|Children's|Fantasy
2         3             Grumpier Old Men (1995)                Comedy|Romance
3         4            Waiting to Exhale (1995)                  Comedy|Drama
4         5  Father of the Bride Part II (1995)                        Comedy
5         6                         Heat (1995)         Action|Crime|Thriller
6         7                      Sabrina (1995)                Comedy|Romance
7         8                 Tom and Huck (1995)          Adventure|Children's
8         9                 Sudden Death (1995)                        Action
9        10                    GoldenEye (1995)     Action|Adventure|Thriller
```

Adding indicator variables for each genre requires a little bit of wrangling. First, we extract the list of unique genres in the dataset:

```
In [117]: all_genres = []

In [118]: for x in movies.genres:
   .....:     all_genres.extend(x.split('|'))

In [119]: genres = pd.unique(all_genres)
```

Now we have:

```
In [120]: genres
Out[120]:
array(['Animation', "Children's", 'Comedy', 'Adventure', 'Fantasy',
       'Romance', 'Drama', 'Action', 'Crime', 'Thriller', 'Horror',
       'Sci-Fi', 'Documentary', 'War', 'Musical', 'Mystery', 'Film-Noir',
       'Western'], dtype=object)
```

One way to construct the indicator DataFrame is to start with a DataFrame of all zeros:

```
In [121]: zero_matrix = np.zeros((len(movies), len(genres)))

In [122]: dummies = pd.DataFrame(zero_matrix, columns=genres)
```

Now, iterate through each movie and set entries in each row of `dummies` to 1. To do this, we use the `dummies.columns` to compute the column indices for each genre:

```
In [123]: gen = movies.genres[0]

In [124]: gen.split('|')
Out[124]: ['Animation', "Children's", 'Comedy']

In [125]: dummies.columns.get_indexer(gen.split('|'))
Out[125]: array([0, 1, 2])
```

Then, we can use `.iloc` to set values based on these indices:

```
In [126]: for i, gen in enumerate(movies.genres):
   .....:     indices = dummies.columns.get_indexer(gen.split('|'))
   .....:     dummies.iloc[i, indices] = 1
   .....:
```

Then, as before, you can combine this with `movies`:

```
In [127]: movies_windic = movies.join(dummies.add_prefix('Genre_'))

In [128]: movies_windic.iloc[0]
Out[128]:
movie_id                                       1
title                           Toy Story (1995)
genres               Animation|Children's|Comedy
Genre_Animation                                1
Genre_Children's                               1
Genre_Comedy                                   1
Genre_Adventure                                0
Genre_Fantasy                                  0
Genre_Romance                                  0
Genre_Drama                                    0
                                ...
Genre_Crime                                    0
Genre_Thriller                                 0
Genre_Horror                                   0
Genre_Sci-Fi                                   0
Genre_Documentary                              0
Genre_War                                      0
Genre_Musical                                  0
Genre_Mystery                                  0
Genre_Film-Noir                                0
Genre_Western                                  0
Name: 0, Length: 21, dtype: object
```

NOTE

For much larger data, this method of constructing indicator variables with multiple membership is not especially speedy. It would be better to write a lower-level function that writes directly to a NumPy array, and then wrap the result in a DataFrame.

A useful recipe for statistical applications is to combine `get_dummies` with a discretization function like `cut`:

```
In [129]: np.random.seed(12345)

In [130]: values = np.random.rand(10)

In [131]: values
Out[131]:
array([ 0.9296,  0.3164,  0.1839,  0.2046,  0.5677,  0.5955,  0.9645,
        0.6532,  0.7489,  0.6536])

In [132]: bins = [0, 0.2, 0.4, 0.6, 0.8, 1]

In [133]: pd.get_dummies(pd.cut(values, bins))
Out[133]:
   (0.0, 0.2]  (0.2, 0.4]  (0.4, 0.6]  (0.6, 0.8]  (0.8, 1.0]
0           0           0           0           0           1
1           0           1           0           0           0
2           1           0           0           0           0
3           0           1           0           0           0
4           0           0           1           0           0
5           0           0           1           0           0
6           0           0           0           0           1
7           0           0           0           1           0
8           0           0           0           1           0
9           0           0           0           1           0
```

We set the random seed with `numpy.random.seed` to make the example deterministic. We will look again at `pandas.get_dummies` later in the book.

7.3 String Manipulation

Python has long been a popular raw data manipulation language in part due to its ease of use for string and text processing. Most text operations are made simple with the string object's built-in methods. For more complex pattern matching and text manipulations, regular expressions may be needed. pandas adds to the mix by enabling you to apply string and regular expressions concisely on whole arrays of data, additionally handling the annoyance of missing data.

String Object Methods

In many string munging and scripting applications, built-in string methods are sufficient. As an example, a comma-separated string can be broken into pieces with `split`:

```
In [134]: val = 'a,b,  guido'

In [135]: val.split(',')
Out[135]: ['a', 'b', '  guido']
```

`split` is often combined with `strip` to trim whitespace (including line breaks):

```
In [136]: pieces = [x.strip() for x in val.split(',')]

In [137]: pieces
Out[137]: ['a', 'b', 'guido']
```

These substrings could be concatenated together with a two-colon delimiter using addition:

```
In [138]: first, second, third = pieces

In [139]: first + '::' + second + '::' + third
Out[139]: 'a::b::guido'
```

But this isn't a practical generic method. A faster and more Pythonic way is to pass a list or tuple to the `join` method on the string `'::'`:

```
In [140]: '::'.join(pieces)
Out[140]: 'a::b::guido'
```

Other methods are concerned with locating substrings. Using Python's `in` keyword is the best way to detect a substring, though `index` and `find` can also be used:

```
In [141]: 'guido' in val
Out[141]: True
```

```
In [142]: val.index(',')
Out[142]: 1

In [143]: val.find(':')
Out[143]: -1
```

Note the difference between `find` and `index` is that `index` raises an exception if the string isn't found (versus returning –1):

```
In [144]: val.index(':')
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
ValueError                                Traceback (most recent call last)
<ipython-input-144-280f8b2856ce> in <module>()
----> 1 val.index(':')
ValueError: substring not found
```

Relatedly, `count` returns the number of occurrences of a particular substring:

```
In [145]: val.count(',')
Out[145]: 2
```

`replace` will substitute occurrences of one pattern for another. It is commonly used to delete patterns, too, by passing an empty string:

```
In [146]: val.replace(',', '::')
Out[146]: 'a::b::  guido'

In [147]: val.replace(',', '')
Out[147]: 'ab  guido'
```

See Table 7-3 for a listing of some of Python's string methods.

Regular expressions can also be used with many of these operations, as you'll see.

Table 7-3. Python built-in string methods

Argument	Description
`count`	Return the number of non-overlapping occurrences of substring in the string.
`endswith`	Returns `True` if string ends with suffix.
`startswith`	Returns `True` if string starts with prefix.
`join`	Use string as delimiter for concatenating a sequence of other strings.

`index`	Return position of first character in substring if found in the string; raises `ValueError` if not found.
`find`	Return position of first character of *first* occurrence of substring in the string; like `index`, but returns –1 if not found.
`rfind`	Return position of first character of *last* occurrence of substring in the string; returns –1 if not found.
`replace`	Replace occurrences of string with another string.
`strip`, `rstrip`, `lstrip`	Trim whitespace, including newlines; equivalent to `x.strip()` (and `rstrip`, `lstrip`, respectively) for each element.
`split`	Break string into list of substrings using passed delimiter.
`lower`	Convert alphabet characters to lowercase.
`upper`	Convert alphabet characters to uppercase.
`casefold`	Convert characters to lowercase, and convert any region-specific variable character combinations to a common comparable form.
`ljust`, `rjust`	Left justify or right justify, respectively; pad opposite side of string with spaces (or some other fill character) to return a string with a minimum width.

Regular Expressions

Regular expressions provide a flexible way to search or match (often more complex) string patterns in text. A single expression, commonly called a *regex*, is a string formed according to the regular expression language. Python's built-in `re` module is responsible for applying regular expressions to strings; I'll give a number of examples of its use here.

> **NOTE**
>
> The art of writing regular expressions could be a chapter of its own and thus is outside the book's scope. There are many excellent tutorials and references available on the internet and in other books.

The `re` module functions fall into three categories: pattern matching, substitution, and splitting. Naturally these are all related; a regex describes a pattern to locate in the text, which can then be used for many purposes. Let's look at a simple example: suppose we wanted to split a string with a variable number of whitespace characters (tabs, spaces, and newlines). The regex describing one or more whitespace characters is `\s+`:

```
In [148]: import re

In [149]: text = "foo    bar\t baz  \tqux"

In [150]: re.split('\s+', text)
Out[150]: ['foo', 'bar', 'baz', 'qux']
```

When you call `re.split('\s+', text)`, the regular expression is first *compiled*, and then its `split` method is called on the passed text. You can compile the regex yourself with `re.compile`, forming a reusable regex object:

```
In [151]: regex = re.compile('\s+')

In [152]: regex.split(text)
Out[152]: ['foo', 'bar', 'baz', 'qux']
```

If, instead, you wanted to get a list of all patterns matching the regex, you can use the `findall` method:

```
In [153]: regex.findall(text)
Out[153]: ['    ', '\t ', '  \t']
```

> **NOTE**
>
> To avoid unwanted escaping with `\` in a regular expression, use *raw* string literals like `r'C:\x'` instead of the equivalent `'C:\\x'`.

Creating a regex object with `re.compile` is highly recommended if you intend to apply the same expression to many strings; doing so will save CPU cycles.

`match` and `search` are closely related to `findall`. While `findall` returns all matches in a string, `search` returns only the first match. More rigidly, `match` *only* matches at the beginning of the string. As a less trivial example, let's consider a block of text and a regular expression capable of identifying most email addresses:

```
text = """Dave dave@google.com
Steve steve@gmail.com
Rob rob@gmail.com
Ryan ryan@yahoo.com
"""
pattern = r'[A-Z0-9._%+-]+@[A-Z0-9.-]+\.[A-Z]{2,4}'

# re.IGNORECASE makes the regex case-insensitive
regex = re.compile(pattern, flags=re.IGNORECASE)
```

Using `findall` on the text produces a list of the email addresses:

```
In [155]: regex.findall(text)
Out[155]:
['dave@google.com',
 'steve@gmail.com',
 'rob@gmail.com',
 'ryan@yahoo.com']
```

`search` returns a special match object for the first email address in the text. For the preceding regex, the match object can only tell us the start and end position of the pattern in the string:

```
In [156]: m = regex.search(text)

In [157]: m
Out[157]: <_sre.SRE_Match object; span=(5, 20), match='dave@google.com'>

In [158]: text[m.start():m.end()]
Out[158]: 'dave@google.com'
```

`regex.match` returns `None`, as it only will match if the pattern occurs at the start of the string:

```
In [159]: print(regex.match(text))
None
```

Relatedly, `sub` will return a new string with occurrences of the pattern replaced by the a new string:

```
In [160]: print(regex.sub('REDACTED', text))
Dave REDACTED
Steve REDACTED
Rob REDACTED
Ryan REDACTED
```

Suppose you wanted to find email addresses and simultaneously segment each address into its three components: username, domain name, and domain suffix. To do this, put parentheses around the parts of the pattern to segment:

```
In [161]: pattern = r'([A-Z0-9._%+-]+)@([A-Z0-9.-]+)\.([A-Z]{2,4})'

In [162]: regex = re.compile(pattern, flags=re.IGNORECASE)
```

A match object produced by this modified regex returns a tuple of the pattern components with its `groups` method:

```
In [163]: m = regex.match('wesm@bright.net')

In [164]: m.groups()
Out[164]: ('wesm', 'bright', 'net')
```

`findall` returns a list of tuples when the pattern has groups:

```
In [165]: regex.findall(text)
Out[165]:
[('dave', 'google', 'com'),
 ('steve', 'gmail', 'com'),
 ('rob', 'gmail', 'com'),
 ('ryan', 'yahoo', 'com')]
```

`sub` also has access to groups in each match using special symbols like `\1` and `\2`. The symbol `\1` corresponds to the first matched group, `\2` corresponds to the second, and so forth:

```
In [166]: print(regex.sub(r'Username: \1, Domain: \2, Suffix: \3', text))
Dave Username: dave, Domain: google, Suffix: com
Steve Username: steve, Domain: gmail, Suffix: com
Rob Username: rob, Domain: gmail, Suffix: com
Ryan Username: ryan, Domain: yahoo, Suffix: com
```

There is much more to regular expressions in Python, most of which is outside the book's scope. Table 7-4 provides a brief summary.

Table 7-4. Regular expression methods

Argument	Description
`findall`	Return all non-overlapping matching patterns in a string as a list
`finditer`	Like `findall`, but returns an iterator
`match`	Match pattern at start of string and optionally segment pattern components into groups; if the pattern matches, returns a match object, and otherwise `None`
`search`	Scan string for match to pattern; returning a match object if so; unlike `match`, the match can be anywhere in the string as opposed to only at the beginning
`split`	Break string into pieces at each occurrence of pattern
`sub, subn`	Replace all (`sub`) or first `n` occurrences (`subn`) of pattern in string with replacement expression; use symbols `\1, \2, ...` to refer to match group elements in the replacement string

Vectorized String Functions in pandas

Cleaning up a messy dataset for analysis often requires a lot of string munging and regularization. To complicate matters, a column containing strings will sometimes have missing data:

```
In [167]: data = {'Dave': 'dave@google.com', 'Steve': 'steve@gmail.com',
   .....:         'Rob': 'rob@gmail.com', 'Wes': np.nan}

In [168]: data = pd.Series(data)

In [169]: data
Out[169]:
Dave     dave@google.com
Rob        rob@gmail.com
Steve    steve@gmail.com
Wes                  NaN
dtype: object

In [170]: data.isnull()
Out[170]:
Dave     False
Rob      False
Steve    False
Wes       True
dtype: bool
```

You can apply string and regular expression methods can be applied (passing a `lambda` or other function) to each value using `data.map`, but it will fail on the NA (null) values. To cope with this, Series has array-oriented methods for string operations that skip NA values. These are accessed through Series's `str` attribute; for example, we could check whether each email address has `'gmail'` in it with `str.contains`:

```
In [171]: data.str.contains('gmail')
Out[171]:
Dave     False
Rob       True
Steve     True
Wes        NaN
dtype: object
```

Regular expressions can be used, too, along with any `re` options like `IGNORECASE`:

```
In [172]: pattern
Out[172]: '([A-Z0-9._%+-]+)@([A-Z0-9.-]+)\\.([A-Z]{2,4})'

In [173]: data.str.findall(pattern, flags=re.IGNORECASE)
Out[173]:
Dave     [(dave, google, com)]
Rob        [(rob, gmail, com)]
Steve    [(steve, gmail, com)]
Wes                        NaN
dtype: object
```

There are a couple of ways to do vectorized element retrieval. Either use `str.get` or index into the `str` attribute:

```
In [174]: matches = data.str.match(pattern, flags=re.IGNORECASE)

In [175]: matches
Out[175]:
Dave     True
Rob      True
Steve    True
Wes       NaN
dtype: object
```

To access elements in the embedded lists, we can pass an index to either of these functions:

```
In [176]: matches.str.get(1)
Out[176]:
Dave    NaN
Rob     NaN
Steve   NaN
Wes     NaN
dtype: float64

In [177]: matches.str[0]
Out[177]:
Dave    NaN
Rob     NaN
Steve   NaN
Wes     NaN
dtype: float64
```

You can similarly slice strings using this syntax:

```
In [178]: data.str[:5]
Out[178]:
Dave     dave@
```

```
Rob        rob@g
Steve      steve
Wes          NaN
dtype: object
```

See Table 7-5 for more pandas string methods.

Table 7-5. Partial listing of vectorized string methods

Method	Description
`cat`	Concatenate strings element-wise with optional delimiter
`contains`	Return boolean array if each string contains pattern/regex
`count`	Count occurrences of pattern
`extract`	Use a regular expression with groups to extract one or more strings from a Series of strings; the result will be a DataFrame with one column per group
`endswith`	Equivalent to `x.endswith(pattern)` for each element
`startswith`	Equivalent to `x.startswith(pattern)` for each element
`findall`	Compute list of all occurrences of pattern/regex for each string
`get`	Index into each element (retrieve *i*-th element)
`isalnum`	Equivalent to built-in `str.alnum`
`isalpha`	Equivalent to built-in `str.isalpha`
`isdecimal`	Equivalent to built-in `str.isdecimal`
`isdigit`	Equivalent to built-in `str.isdigit`
`islower`	Equivalent to built-in `str.islower`
`isnumeric`	Equivalent to built-in `str.isnumeric`
`isupper`	Equivalent to built-in `str.isupper`
`join`	Join strings in each element of the Series with passed separator
`len`	Compute length of each string
`lower, upper`	Convert cases; equivalent to `x.lower()` or `x.upper()` for each element
`match`	Use `re.match` with the passed regular expression on each element, returning matched groups as list
`pad`	Add whitespace to left, right, or both sides of strings

`center`	Equivalent to `pad(side='both')`
`repeat`	Duplicate values (e.g., `s.str.repeat(3)` is equivalent to `x * 3` for each string)
`replace`	Replace occurrences of pattern/regex with some other string
`slice`	Slice each string in the Series
`split`	Split strings on delimiter or regular expression
`strip`	Trim whitespace from both sides, including newlines
`rstrip`	Trim whitespace on right side
`lstrip`	Trim whitespace on left side

7.4 Conclusion

Effective data preparation can significantly improve productive by enabling you to spend more time analyzing data and less time getting it ready for analysis. We have explored a number of tools in this chapter, but the coverage here is by no means comprehensive. In the next chapter, we will explore pandas's joining and grouping functionality.

Chapter 8. Data Wrangling: Join, Combine, and Reshape

In many applications, data may be spread across a number of files or databases or be arranged in a form that is not easy to analyze. This chapter focuses on tools to help combine, join, and rearrange data.

First, I introduce the concept of *hierarchical indexing* in pandas, which is used extensively in some of these operations. I then dig into the particular data manipulations. You can see various applied usages of these tools in Chapter 14.

8.1 Hierarchical Indexing

Hierarchical indexing is an important feature of pandas that enables you to have multiple (two or more) index *levels* on an axis. Somewhat abstractly, it provides a way for you to work with higher dimensional data in a lower dimensional form. Let's start with a simple example; create a Series with a list of lists (or arrays) as the index:

```
In [9]: data = pd.Series(np.random.randn(9),
   ...:                  index=[['a', 'a', 'a', 'b', 'b', 'c', 'c', 'd',
'd'],
   ...:                         [1, 2, 3, 1, 3, 1, 2, 2, 3]])

In [10]: data
Out[10]:
a  1   -0.204708
   2    0.478943
   3   -0.519439
b  1   -0.555730
   3    1.965781
c  1    1.393406
   2    0.092908
d  2    0.281746
   3    0.769023
dtype: float64
```

What you're seeing is a prettified view of a Series with a `MultiIndex` as its index. The "gaps" in the index display mean "use the label directly above":

```
In [11]: data.index
Out[11]:
MultiIndex(levels=[['a', 'b', 'c', 'd'], [1, 2, 3]],
           labels=[[0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 2, 2, 3, 3], [0, 1, 2, 0, 2, 0, 1, 1, 2]])
```

With a hierarchically indexed object, so-called *partial* indexing is possible, enabling you to concisely select subsets of the data:

```
In [12]: data['b']
Out[12]:
1   -0.555730
3    1.965781
dtype: float64

In [13]: data['b':'c']
```

```
Out[13]:
b  1   -0.555730
   3    1.965781
c  1    1.393406
   2    0.092908
dtype: float64

In [14]: data.loc[['b', 'd']]
Out[14]:
b  1   -0.555730
   3    1.965781
d  2    0.281746
   3    0.769023
dtype: float64
```

Selection is even possible from an "inner" level:

```
In [15]: data.loc[:, 2]
Out[15]:
a    0.478943
c    0.092908
d    0.281746
dtype: float64
```

Hierarchical indexing plays an important role in reshaping data and group-based operations like forming a pivot table. For example, you could rearrange the data into a DataFrame using its `unstack` method:

```
In [16]: data.unstack()
Out[16]:
          1         2         3
a -0.204708  0.478943 -0.519439
b -0.555730       NaN  1.965781
c  1.393406  0.092908       NaN
d       NaN  0.281746  0.769023
```

The inverse operation of `unstack` is stack:

```
In [17]: data.unstack().stack()
Out[17]:
a  1   -0.204708
   2    0.478943
   3   -0.519439
b  1   -0.555730
   3    1.965781
c  1    1.393406
   2    0.092908
d  2    0.281746
   3    0.769023
```

```
dtype: float64
```

`stack` and `unstack` will be explored in more detail later in this chapter.

With a DataFrame, either axis can have a hierarchical index:

```
In [18]: frame = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(12).reshape((4, 3)),
   ....:                      index=[['a', 'a', 'b', 'b'], [1, 2, 1, 2]],
   ....:                      columns=[['Ohio', 'Ohio', 'Colorado'],
   ....:                               ['Green', 'Red', 'Green']])

In [19]: frame
Out[19]:
     Ohio     Colorado
    Green Red    Green
a 1     0   1        2
  2     3   4        5
b 1     6   7        8
  2     9  10       11
```

The hierarchical levels can have names (as strings or any Python objects). If so, these will show up in the console output:

```
In [20]: frame.index.names = ['key1', 'key2']

In [21]: frame.columns.names = ['state', 'color']

In [22]: frame
Out[22]:
state      Ohio     Colorado
color     Green Red    Green
key1 key2
a    1        0   1        2
     2        3   4        5
b    1        6   7        8
     2        9  10       11
```

> **CAUTION**
>
> Be careful to distinguish the index names `'state'` and `'color'` from the row labels.

With partial column indexing you can similarly select groups of columns:

```
In [23]: frame['Ohio']
```

```
Out[23]:
color      Green  Red
key1 key2
a    1         0    1
     2         3    4
b    1         6    7
     2         9   10
```

A `MultiIndex` can be created by itself and then reused; the columns in the preceding DataFrame with level names could be created like this:

```
MultiIndex.from_arrays([['Ohio', 'Ohio', 'Colorado'], ['Green', 'Red',
'Green']],
                       names=['state', 'color'])
```

Reordering and Sorting Levels

At times you will need to rearrange the order of the levels on an axis or sort the data by the values in one specific level. The `swaplevel` takes two level numbers or names and returns a new object with the levels interchanged (but the data is otherwise unaltered):

```
In [24]: frame.swaplevel('key1', 'key2')
Out[24]:
state       Ohio     Colorado
color      Green Red    Green
key2 key1
1    a         0   1        2
2    a         3   4        5
1    b         6   7        8
2    b         9  10       11
```

`sort_index`, on the other hand, sorts the data using only the values in a single level. When swapping levels, it's not uncommon to also use `sort_index` so that the result is lexicographically sorted by the indicated level:

```
In [25]: frame.sort_index(level=1)
Out[25]:
state       Ohio     Colorado
color      Green Red    Green
key1 key2
a    1         0   1        2
b    1         6   7        8
a    2         3   4        5
b    2         9  10       11

In [26]: frame.swaplevel(0, 1).sort_index(level=0)
Out[26]:
state       Ohio     Colorado
color      Green Red    Green
key2 key1
1    a         0   1        2
     b         6   7        8
2    a         3   4        5
     b         9  10       11
```

NOTE

Data selection performance is much better on hierarchically indexed objects if the index is lexicographically sorted starting with the outermost level — that is, the result of calling `sort_index(level=0)` or `sort_index()`.

Summary Statistics by Level

Many descriptive and summary statistics on DataFrame and Series have a `level` option in which you can specify the level you want to aggregate by on a particular axis. Consider the above DataFrame; we can aggregate by level on either the rows or columns like so:

```
In [27]: frame.sum(level='key2')
Out[27]:
state  Ohio      Colorado
color Green Red     Green
key2
1         6   8        10
2        12  14        16

In [28]: frame.sum(level='color', axis=1)
Out[28]:
color      Green  Red
key1 key2
a    1         2    1
     2         8    4
b    1        14    7
     2        20   10
```

Under the hood, this utilizes pandas's groupby machinery, which will be discussed in more detail later in the book.

Indexing with a DataFrame's columns

It's not unusual to want to use one or more columns from a DataFrame as the row index; alternatively, you may wish to move the row index into the DataFrame's columns. Here's an example DataFrame:

```
In [29]: frame = pd.DataFrame({'a': range(7), 'b': range(7, 0, -1),
    ....:                      'c': ['one', 'one', 'one', 'two', 'two',
    ....:                            'two', 'two'],
    ....:                      'd': [0, 1, 2, 0, 1, 2, 3]})

In [30]: frame
Out[30]:
   a  b    c  d
0  0  7  one  0
1  1  6  one  1
2  2  5  one  2
3  3  4  two  0
4  4  3  two  1
5  5  2  two  2
6  6  1  two  3
```

DataFrame's `set_index` function will create a new DataFrame using one or more of its columns as the index:

```
In [31]: frame2 = frame.set_index(['c', 'd'])

In [32]: frame2
Out[32]:
       a  b
c   d
one 0  0  7
    1  1  6
    2  2  5
two 0  3  4
    1  4  3
    2  5  2
    3  6  1
```

By default the columns are removed from the DataFrame, though you can leave them in:

```
In [33]: frame.set_index(['c', 'd'], drop=False)
Out[33]:
       a  b    c  d
c   d
```

```
one 0   0  7  one   0
    1   1  6  one   1
    2   2  5  one   2
two 0   3  4  two   0
    1   4  3  two   1
    2   5  2  two   2
    3   6  1  two   3
```

`reset_index`, on the other hand, does the opposite of `set_index`; the hierarchical index levels are moved into the columns:

```
In [34]: frame2.reset_index()
Out[34]:
     c  d  a  b
0  one  0  0  7
1  one  1  1  6
2  one  2  2  5
3  two  0  3  4
4  two  1  4  3
5  two  2  5  2
6  two  3  6  1
```

8.2 Combining and Merging Datasets

Data contained in pandas objects can be combined together in a number of ways:

- `pandas.merge` connects rows in DataFrames based on one or more keys. This will be familiar to users of SQL or other relational databases, as it implements database *join* operations.
- `pandas.concat` concatenates or "stacks" together objects along an axis.
- The `combine_first` instance method enables splicing together overlapping data to fill in missing values in one object with values from another.

I will address each of these and give a number of examples. They'll be utilized in examples throughout the rest of the book.

Database-Style DataFrame Joins

Merge or *join* operations combine datasets by linking rows using one or more *keys*. These operations are central to relational databases (e.g., SQL-based). The `merge` function in pandas is the main entry point for using these algorithms on your data.

Let's start with a simple example:

```
In [35]: df1 = pd.DataFrame({'key': ['b', 'b', 'a', 'c', 'a', 'a', 'b'],
   ....:                     'data1': range(7)})

In [36]: df2 = pd.DataFrame({'key': ['a', 'b', 'd'],
   ....:                     'data2': range(3)})

In [37]: df1
Out[37]:
   data1 key
0      0   b
1      1   b
2      2   a
3      3   c
4      4   a
5      5   a
6      6   b

In [38]: df2
Out[38]:
   data2 key
0      0   a
1      1   b
2      2   d
```

This is an example of a *many-to-one* join; the data in `df1` has multiple rows labeled `a` and `b`, whereas `df2` has only one row for each value in the `key` column. Calling `merge` with these objects we obtain:

```
In [39]: pd.merge(df1, df2)
Out[39]:
   data1 key  data2
0      0   b      1
1      1   b      1
2      6   b      1
3      2   a      0
4      4   a      0
5      5   a      0
```

Note that I didn't specify which column to join on. If that information is not specified, `merge` uses the overlapping column names as the keys. It's a good practice to specify explicitly, though:

```
In [40]: pd.merge(df1, df2, on='key')
Out[40]:
   data1 key  data2
0      0   b      1
1      1   b      1
2      6   b      1
3      2   a      0
4      4   a      0
5      5   a      0
```

If the column names are different in each object, you can specify them separately:

```
In [41]: df3 = pd.DataFrame({'lkey': ['b', 'b', 'a', 'c', 'a', 'a', 'b'],
   ....:                     'data1': range(7)})

In [42]: df4 = pd.DataFrame({'rkey': ['a', 'b', 'd'],
   ....:                     'data2': range(3)})

In [43]: pd.merge(df3, df4, left_on='lkey', right_on='rkey')
Out[43]:
   data1 lkey  data2 rkey
0      0    b      1    b
1      1    b      1    b
2      6    b      1    b
3      2    a      0    a
4      4    a      0    a
5      5    a      0    a
```

You may notice that the `'c'` and `'d'` values and associated data are missing from the result. By default `merge` does an `'inner'` join; the keys in the result are the intersection, or the common set found in both tables. Other possible options are `'left'`, `'right'`, and `'outer'`. The outer join takes the union of the keys, combining the effect of applying both left and right joins:

```
In [44]: pd.merge(df1, df2, how='outer')
Out[44]:
   data1 key  data2
0    0.0   b    1.0
1    1.0   b    1.0
2    6.0   b    1.0
3    2.0   a    0.0
```

```
4    4.0   a    0.0
5    5.0   a    0.0
6    3.0   c    NaN
7    NaN   d    2.0
```

See Table 8-1 for a summary of the options for `how`.

Table 8-1. Different join types with how argument

Option	Behavior
`'inner'`	Use only the key combinations observed in both tables
`'left'`	Use all key combinations found in the left table
`'right'`	Use all key combinations found in the right table
`'output'`	Use all key combinations observed in both tables together

Many-to-many merges have well-defined, though not necessarily intuitive, behavior. Here's an example:

```
In [45]: df1 = pd.DataFrame({'key': ['b', 'b', 'a', 'c', 'a', 'b'],
   ....:                     'data1': range(6)})

In [46]: df2 = pd.DataFrame({'key': ['a', 'b', 'a', 'b', 'd'],
   ....:                     'data2': range(5)})

In [47]: df1
Out[47]:
   data1 key
0      0   b
1      1   b
2      2   a
3      3   c
4      4   a
5      5   b

In [48]: df2
Out[48]:
   data2 key
0      0   a
1      1   b
2      2   a
3      3   b
4      4   d

In [49]: pd.merge(df1, df2, on='key', how='left')
Out[49]:
    data1 key  data2
0       0   b    1.0
```

```
1        0   b    3.0
2        1   b    1.0
3        1   b    3.0
4        2   a    0.0
5        2   a    2.0
6        3   c    NaN
7        4   a    0.0
8        4   a    2.0
9        5   b    1.0
10       5   b    3.0
```

Many-to-many joins form the Cartesian product of the rows. Since there were three `'b'` rows in the left DataFrame and two in the right one, there are six `'b'` rows in the result. The join method only affects the distinct key values appearing in the result:

```
In [50]: pd.merge(df1, df2, how='inner')
Out[50]:
   data1 key  data2
0      0   b      1
1      0   b      3
2      1   b      1
3      1   b      3
4      5   b      1
5      5   b      3
6      2   a      0
7      2   a      2
8      4   a      0
9      4   a      2
```

To merge with multiple keys, pass a list of column names:

```
In [51]: left = pd.DataFrame({'key1': ['foo', 'foo', 'bar'],
   ....:                      'key2': ['one', 'two', 'one'],
   ....:                      'lval': [1, 2, 3]})

In [52]: right = pd.DataFrame({'key1': ['foo', 'foo', 'bar', 'bar'],
   ....:                       'key2': ['one', 'one', 'one', 'two'],
   ....:                       'rval': [4, 5, 6, 7]})

In [53]: pd.merge(left, right, on=['key1', 'key2'], how='outer')
Out[53]:
  key1 key2  lval  rval
0  foo  one   1.0   4.0
1  foo  one   1.0   5.0
2  foo  two   2.0   NaN
3  bar  one   3.0   6.0
4  bar  two   NaN   7.0
```

To determine which key combinations will appear in the result depending on the choice of merge method, think of the multiple keys as forming an array of tuples to be used as a single join key (even though it's not actually implemented that way).

> **CAUTION**
>
> When you're joining columns-on-columns, the indexes on the passed DataFrame objects are discarded.

A last issue to consider in merge operations is the treatment of overlapping column names. While you can address the overlap manually (see the earlier section on renaming axis labels), `merge` has a `suffixes` option for specifying strings to append to overlapping names in the left and right DataFrame objects:

```
In [54]: pd.merge(left, right, on='key1')
Out[54]:
  key1 key2_x  lval key2_y  rval
0  foo    one     1    one     4
1  foo    one     1    one     5
2  foo    two     2    one     4
3  foo    two     2    one     5
4  bar    one     3    one     6
5  bar    one     3    two     7

In [55]: pd.merge(left, right, on='key1', suffixes=('_left', '_right'))
Out[55]:
  key1 key2_left  lval key2_right  rval
0  foo       one     1        one     4
1  foo       one     1        one     5
2  foo       two     2        one     4
3  foo       two     2        one     5
4  bar       one     3        one     6
5  bar       one     3        two     7
```

See Table 8-2 for an argument reference on `merge`. Joining using the DataFrame's row index is the subject of the next section.

Table 8-2. merge function arguments

Argument	Description
`left`	DataFrame to be merged on the left side.
`right`	DataFrame to be merged on the right side.
`how`	One of `'inner'`, `'outer'`, `'left'`, or `'right'`; defaults to `'inner'`.
`on`	Column names to join on. Must be found in both DataFrame objects. If not specified and no other join keys given, will use the intersection of the column names in `left` and `right` as the join keys.
`left_on`	Columns in `left` DataFrame to use as join keys.
`right_on`	Analogous to `left_on` for `left` DataFrame.
`left_index`	Use row index in `left` as its join key (or keys, if a MultiIndex).
`right_index`	Analogous to `left_index`.
`sort`	Sort merged data lexicographically by join keys; `True` by default (disable to get better performance in some cases on large datasets).
`suffixes`	Tuple of string values to append to column names in case of overlap; defaults to `('_x', '_y')` (e.g., if `'data'` in both DataFrame objects, would appear as `'data_x'` and `'data_y'` in result).
`copy`	If `False`, avoid copying data into resulting data structure in some exceptional cases; by default always copies.
`indicator`	Adds a special column `_merge` that indicates the source of each row; values will be `'left_only'`, `'right_only'`, or `'both'` based on the origin of the joined data in each row.

Merging on Index

In some cases, the merge key(s) in a DataFrame will be found in its index. In this case, you can pass `left_index=True` or `right_index=True` (or both) to indicate that the index should be used as the merge key:

```
In [56]: left1 = pd.DataFrame({'key': ['a', 'b', 'a', 'a', 'b', 'c'],
   ....:                       'value': range(6)})

In [57]: right1 = pd.DataFrame({'group_val': [3.5, 7]}, index=['a', 'b'])

In [58]: left1
Out[58]:
  key  value
0   a      0
1   b      1
2   a      2
3   a      3
4   b      4
5   c      5

In [59]: right1
Out[59]:
   group_val
a        3.5
b        7.0

In [60]: pd.merge(left1, right1, left_on='key', right_index=True)
Out[60]:
  key  value  group_val
0   a      0        3.5
2   a      2        3.5
3   a      3        3.5
1   b      1        7.0
4   b      4        7.0
```

Since the default merge method is to intersect the join keys, you can instead form the union of them with an outer join:

```
In [61]: pd.merge(left1, right1, left_on='key', right_index=True,
how='outer')
Out[61]:
  key  value  group_val
0   a      0        3.5
2   a      2        3.5
3   a      3        3.5
1   b      1        7.0
4   b      4        7.0
5   c      5        NaN
```

With hierarchically indexed data, things are more complicated, as joining on index is implicitly a multiple-key merge:

```
In [62]: lefth = pd.DataFrame({'key1': ['Ohio', 'Ohio', 'Ohio',
   ....:                                'Nevada', 'Nevada'],
   ....:                       'key2': [2000, 2001, 2002, 2001, 2002],
   ....:                       'data': np.arange(5.)})

In [63]: righth = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(12).reshape((6, 2)),
   ....:                       index=[['Nevada', 'Nevada', 'Ohio', 'Ohio',
   ....:                               'Ohio', 'Ohio'],
   ....:                              [2001, 2000, 2000, 2000, 2001, 2002]],
   ....:                       columns=['event1', 'event2'])

In [64]: lefth
Out[64]:
   data    key1  key2
0   0.0    Ohio  2000
1   1.0    Ohio  2001
2   2.0    Ohio  2002
3   3.0  Nevada  2001
4   4.0  Nevada  2002

In [65]: righth
Out[65]:
             event1  event2
Nevada 2001       0       1
       2000       2       3
Ohio   2000       4       5
       2000       6       7
       2001       8       9
       2002      10      11
```

In this case, you have to indicate multiple columns to merge on as a list (note the handling of duplicate index values with `how='outer'`):

```
In [66]: pd.merge(lefth, righth, left_on=['key1', 'key2'], right_index=True)
Out[66]:
   data    key1  key2  event1  event2
0   0.0    Ohio  2000       4       5
0   0.0    Ohio  2000       6       7
1   1.0    Ohio  2001       8       9
2   2.0    Ohio  2002      10      11
3   3.0  Nevada  2001       0       1

In [67]: pd.merge(lefth, righth, left_on=['key1', 'key2'],
   ....:          right_index=True, how='outer')
Out[67]:
   data    key1  key2  event1  event2
0   0.0    Ohio  2000     4.0     5.0
0   0.0    Ohio  2000     6.0     7.0
1   1.0    Ohio  2001     8.0     9.0
```

```
2   2.0    Ohio  2002    10.0    11.0
3   3.0  Nevada  2001     0.0     1.0
4   4.0  Nevada  2002     NaN     NaN
4   NaN  Nevada  2000     2.0     3.0
```

Using the indexes of both sides of the merge is also possible:

```
In [68]: left2 = pd.DataFrame([[1., 2.], [3., 4.], [5., 6.]],
   ....:                      index=['a', 'c', 'e'],
   ....:                      columns=['Ohio', 'Nevada'])

In [69]: right2 = pd.DataFrame([[7., 8.], [9., 10.], [11., 12.], [13, 14]],
   ....:                       index=['b', 'c', 'd', 'e'],
   ....:                       columns=['Missouri', 'Alabama'])

In [70]: left2
Out[70]:
   Ohio  Nevada
a   1.0     2.0
c   3.0     4.0
e   5.0     6.0

In [71]: right2
Out[71]:
   Missouri  Alabama
b       7.0      8.0
c       9.0     10.0
d      11.0     12.0
e      13.0     14.0

In [72]: pd.merge(left2, right2, how='outer', left_index=True,
right_index=True)
Out[72]:
   Ohio  Nevada  Missouri  Alabama
a   1.0     2.0       NaN      NaN
b   NaN     NaN       7.0      8.0
c   3.0     4.0       9.0     10.0
d   NaN     NaN      11.0     12.0
e   5.0     6.0      13.0     14.0
```

DataFrame has a convenient `join` instance for merging by index. It can also be used to combine together many DataFrame objects having the same or similar indexes but non-overlapping columns. In the prior example, we could have written:

```
In [73]: left2.join(right2, how='outer')
Out[73]:
   Ohio  Nevada  Missouri  Alabama
a   1.0     2.0       NaN      NaN
b   NaN     NaN       7.0      8.0
c   3.0     4.0       9.0     10.0
```

```
d   NaN     NaN      11.0     12.0
e   5.0     6.0      13.0     14.0
```

In part for legacy reasons (i.e., much earlier versions of pandas), DataFrame's `join` method performs a left join on the join keys, exactly preserving the left frame's row index. It also supports joining the index of the passed DataFrame on one of the columns of the calling DataFrame:

```
In [74]: left1.join(right1, on='key')
Out[74]:
  key  value  group_val
0   a      0        3.5
1   b      1        7.0
2   a      2        3.5
3   a      3        3.5
4   b      4        7.0
5   c      5        NaN
```

Lastly, for simple index-on-index merges, you can pass a list of DataFrames to `join` as an alternative to using the more general `concat` function described in the next section:

```
In [75]: another = pd.DataFrame([[7., 8.], [9., 10.], [11., 12.], [16.,
17.]],
   ....:                        index=['a', 'c', 'e', 'f'],
   ....:                        columns=['New York', 'Oregon'])

In [76]: another
Out[76]:
   New York  Oregon
a       7.0     8.0
c       9.0    10.0
e      11.0    12.0
f      16.0    17.0

In [77]: left2.join([right2, another])
Out[77]:
   Ohio  Nevada  Missouri  Alabama  New York  Oregon
a   1.0     2.0       NaN      NaN       7.0     8.0
c   3.0     4.0       9.0     10.0       9.0    10.0
e   5.0     6.0      13.0     14.0      11.0    12.0

In [78]: left2.join([right2, another], how='outer')
Out[78]:
   Ohio  Nevada  Missouri  Alabama  New York  Oregon
a   1.0     2.0       NaN      NaN       7.0     8.0
b   NaN     NaN       7.0      8.0       NaN     NaN
c   3.0     4.0       9.0     10.0       9.0    10.0
d   NaN     NaN      11.0     12.0       NaN     NaN
```

```
e   5.0     6.0      13.0     14.0      11.0    12.0
f   NaN     NaN       NaN      NaN      16.0    17.0
```

Concatenating Along an Axis

Another kind of data combination operation is referred to interchangeably as concatenation, binding, or stacking. NumPy's `concatenate` function can do this with NumPy arrays:

```
In [79]: arr = np.arange(12).reshape((3, 4))

In [80]: arr
Out[80]:
array([[ 0,  1,  2,  3],
       [ 4,  5,  6,  7],
       [ 8,  9, 10, 11]])

In [81]: np.concatenate([arr, arr], axis=1)
Out[81]:
array([[ 0,  1,  2,  3,  0,  1,  2,  3],
       [ 4,  5,  6,  7,  4,  5,  6,  7],
       [ 8,  9, 10, 11,  8,  9, 10, 11]])
```

In the context of pandas objects such as Series and DataFrame, having labeled axes enable you to further generalize array concatenation. In particular, you have a number of additional things to think about:

- If the objects are indexed differently on the other axes, should we combine the distinct elements in these axes or use only the shared values (the intersection)?
- Do the concatenated chunks of data need to be identifiable in the resulting object?
- Does the "concatenation axis" contain data that needs to be preserved? In many cases, the default integer labels in a DataFrame are best discarded during concatenation.

The `concat` function in pandas provides a consistent way to address each of these concerns. I'll give a number of examples to illustrate how it works. Suppose we have three Series with no index overlap:

```
In [82]: s1 = pd.Series([0, 1], index=['a', 'b'])
```

```
In [83]: s2 = pd.Series([2, 3, 4], index=['c', 'd', 'e'])

In [84]: s3 = pd.Series([5, 6], index=['f', 'g'])
```

Calling `concat` with these objects in a list glues together the values and indexes:

```
In [85]: pd.concat([s1, s2, s3])
Out[85]:
a    0
b    1
c    2
d    3
e    4
f    5
g    6
dtype: int64
```

By default `concat` works along `axis=0`, producing another Series. If you pass `axis=1`, the result will instead be a DataFrame (`axis=1` is the columns):

```
In [86]: pd.concat([s1, s2, s3], axis=1)
Out[86]:
     0    1    2
a  0.0  NaN  NaN
b  1.0  NaN  NaN
c  NaN  2.0  NaN
d  NaN  3.0  NaN
e  NaN  4.0  NaN
f  NaN  NaN  5.0
g  NaN  NaN  6.0
```

In this case there is no overlap on the other axis, which as you can see is the sorted union (the `'outer'` join) of the indexes. You can instead intersect them by passing `join='inner'`:

```
In [87]: s4 = pd.concat([s1, s3])

In [88]: s4
Out[88]:
a    0
b    1
f    5
g    6
dtype: int64

In [89]: pd.concat([s1, s4], axis=1)
```

```
Out[89]:
     0  1
a  0.0  0
b  1.0  1
f  NaN  5
g  NaN  6

In [90]: pd.concat([s1, s4], axis=1, join='inner')
Out[90]:
   0  1
a  0  0
b  1  1
```

In this last example, the `'f'` and `'g'` labels disappeared because of the `join='inner'` option.

You can even specify the axes to be used on the other axes with `join_axes`:

```
In [91]: pd.concat([s1, s4], axis=1, join_axes=[['a', 'c', 'b', 'e']])
Out[91]:
     0    1
a  0.0  0.0
c  NaN  NaN
b  1.0  1.0
e  NaN  NaN
```

A potential issue is that the concatenated pieces are not identifiable in the result. Suppose instead you wanted to create a hierarchical index on the concatenation axis. To do this, use the `keys` argument:

```
In [92]: result = pd.concat([s1, s1, s3], keys=['one', 'two', 'three'])

In [93]: result
Out[93]:
one    a    0
       b    1
two    a    0
       b    1
three  f    5
       g    6
dtype: int64

In [94]: result.unstack()
Out[94]:
         a    b    f    g
one    0.0  1.0  NaN  NaN
two    0.0  1.0  NaN  NaN
three  NaN  NaN  5.0  6.0
```

In the case of combining Series along `axis=1`, the `keys` become the DataFrame column headers:

```
In [95]: pd.concat([s1, s2, s3], axis=1, keys=['one', 'two', 'three'])
Out[95]:
   one  two  three
a  0.0  NaN    NaN
b  1.0  NaN    NaN
c  NaN  2.0    NaN
d  NaN  3.0    NaN
e  NaN  4.0    NaN
f  NaN  NaN    5.0
g  NaN  NaN    6.0
```

The same logic extends to DataFrame objects:

```
In [96]: df1 = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(6).reshape(3, 2), index=['a', 'b',
'c'],
   ....:                    columns=['one', 'two'])

In [97]: df2 = pd.DataFrame(5 + np.arange(4).reshape(2, 2), index=['a', 'c'],
   ....:                    columns=['three', 'four'])

In [98]: df1
Out[98]:
   one  two
a    0    1
b    2    3
c    4    5

In [99]: df2
Out[99]:
   three  four
a      5     6
c      7     8

In [100]: pd.concat([df1, df2], axis=1, keys=['level1', 'level2'])
Out[100]:
  level1     level2
     one two  three four
a      0   1    5.0  6.0
b      2   3    NaN  NaN
c      4   5    7.0  8.0
```

If you pass a dict of objects instead of a list, the dict’s keys will be used for the `keys` option:

```
In [101]: pd.concat({'level1': df1, 'level2': df2}, axis=1)
Out[101]:
  level1     level2
```

```
     one two  three four
a      0   1    5.0  6.0
b      2   3    NaN  NaN
c      4   5    7.0  8.0
```

There are additional arguments governing how the hierarchical index is created (see Table 8-3). For example, we can name the created axis levels with the `names` argument:

```
In [102]: pd.concat([df1, df2], axis=1, keys=['level1', 'level2'],
   .....:           names=['upper', 'lower'])
Out[102]:
upper level1     level2
lower    one two  three four
a          0   1    5.0  6.0
b          2   3    NaN  NaN
c          4   5    7.0  8.0
```

A last consideration concerns DataFrames in which the row index does not contain any relevant data:

```
In [103]: df1 = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(3, 4), columns=['a', 'b', 'c',
'd'])

In [104]: df2 = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(2, 3), columns=['b', 'd', 'a'])

In [105]: df1
Out[105]:
          a         b         c         d
0  1.246435  1.007189 -1.296221  0.274992
1  0.228913  1.352917  0.886429 -2.001637
2 -0.371843  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741

In [106]: df2
Out[106]:
          b         d         a
0  0.476985  3.248944 -1.021228
1 -0.577087  0.124121  0.302614
```

In this case, you can pass `ignore_index=True`:

```
In [107]: pd.concat([df1, df2], ignore_index=True)
Out[107]:
          a         b         c         d
0  1.246435  1.007189 -1.296221  0.274992
1  0.228913  1.352917  0.886429 -2.001637
2 -0.371843  1.669025 -0.438570 -0.539741
3 -1.021228  0.476985       NaN  3.248944
4  0.302614 -0.577087       NaN  0.124121
```

Table 8-3. concat function arguments

Argument	Description
`objs`	List or dict of pandas objects to be concatenated; this is the only required argument
`axis`	Axis to concatenate along; defaults to 0 (along rows)
`join`	Either `'inner'` or `'outer'` (`'outer'` by default); whether to intersection (inner) or union (outer) together indexes along the other axes
`join_axes`	Specific indexes to use for the other *n*–1 axes instead of performing union/intersection logic
`keys`	Values to associate with objects being concatenated, forming a hierarchical index along the concatenation axis; can either be a list or array of arbitrary values, an array of tuples, or a list of arrays (if multiple-level arrays passed in `levels`)
`levels`	Specific indexes to use as hierarchical index level or levels if keys passed
`names`	Names for created hierarchical levels if `keys` and/or `levels` passed
`verify_integrity`	Check new axis in concatenated object for duplicates and raise exception if so; by default (`False`) allows duplicates
`ignore_index`	Do not preserve indexes along concatenation `axis`, instead producing a new `range(total_length)` index

Combining Data with Overlap

There is another data combination situation that can't be expressed as either a merge or concatenation operation. You may have two datasets whose indexes overlap in full or part. As a motivating example, consider NumPy's `where` function, which performs the array-oriented equivalent of an if-else expression:

```
In [108]: a = pd.Series([np.nan, 2.5, np.nan, 3.5, 4.5, np.nan],
   .....:               index=['f', 'e', 'd', 'c', 'b', 'a'])

In [109]: b = pd.Series(np.arange(len(a), dtype=np.float64),
   .....:               index=['f', 'e', 'd', 'c', 'b', 'a'])

In [110]: b[-1] = np.nan

In [111]: a
Out[111]:
f    NaN
e    2.5
d    NaN
c    3.5
b    4.5
a    NaN
dtype: float64

In [112]: b
Out[112]:
f    0.0
e    1.0
d    2.0
c    3.0
b    4.0
a    NaN
dtype: float64

In [113]: np.where(pd.isnull(a), b, a)
Out[113]: array([ 0. ,  2.5,  2. ,  3.5,  4.5,  nan])
```

Series has a `combine_first` method, which performs the equivalent of this operation along with pandas's usual data alignment logic:

```
In [114]: b[:-2].combine_first(a[2:])
Out[114]:
a    NaN
b    4.5
c    3.0
```

```
d    2.0
e    1.0
f    0.0
dtype: float64
```

With DataFrames, `combine_first` does the same thing column by column, so you can think of it as "patching" missing data in the calling object with data from the object you pass:

```
In [115]: df1 = pd.DataFrame({'a': [1., np.nan, 5., np.nan],
   .....:                     'b': [np.nan, 2., np.nan, 6.],
   .....:                     'c': range(2, 18, 4)})

In [116]: df2 = pd.DataFrame({'a': [5., 4., np.nan, 3., 7.],
   .....:                     'b': [np.nan, 3., 4., 6., 8.]})

In [117]: df1
Out[117]:
     a    b   c
0  1.0  NaN   2
1  NaN  2.0   6
2  5.0  NaN  10
3  NaN  6.0  14

In [118]: df2
Out[118]:
     a    b
0  5.0  NaN
1  4.0  3.0
2  NaN  4.0
3  3.0  6.0
4  7.0  8.0

In [119]: df1.combine_first(df2)
Out[119]:
     a    b     c
0  1.0  NaN   2.0
1  4.0  2.0   6.0
2  5.0  4.0  10.0
3  3.0  6.0  14.0
4  7.0  8.0   NaN
```

8.3 Reshaping and Pivoting

There are a number of basic operations for rearranging tabular data. These are alternatingly referred to as *reshape* or *pivot* operations.

Reshaping with Hierarchical Indexing

Hierarchical indexing provides a consistent way to rearrange data in a DataFrame. There are two primary actions:

stack

This "rotates" or pivots from the columns in the data to the rows

unstack

This pivots from the rows into the columns

I'll illustrate these operations through a series of examples. Consider a small DataFrame with string arrays as row and column indexes:

```
In [120]: data = pd.DataFrame(np.arange(6).reshape((2, 3)),
   .....:                          index=pd.Index(['Ohio', 'Colorado'],
name='state'),
   .....:                          columns=pd.Index(['one', 'two', 'three'],
   .....:                          name='number'))

In [121]: data
Out[121]:
number    one  two  three
state
Ohio        0    1      2
Colorado    3    4      5
```

Using the `stack` method on this data pivots the columns into the rows, producing a Series:

```
In [122]: result = data.stack()

In [123]: result
Out[123]:
state     number
Ohio      one       0
          two       1
          three     2
Colorado  one       3
          two       4
          three     5
dtype: int64
```

From a hierarchically indexed Series, you can rearrange the data back into a

DataFrame with `unstack`:

```
In [124]: result.unstack()
Out[124]:
number    one  two  three
state
Ohio        0    1      2
Colorado    3    4      5
```

By default the innermost level is unstacked (same with `stack`). You can unstack a different level by passing a level number or name:

```
In [125]: result.unstack(0)
Out[125]:
state   Ohio  Colorado
number
one        0         3
two        1         4
three      2         5

In [126]: result.unstack('state')
Out[126]:
state   Ohio  Colorado
number
one        0         3
two        1         4
three      2         5
```

Unstacking might introduce missing data if all of the values in the level aren't found in each of the subgroups:

```
In [127]: s1 = pd.Series([0, 1, 2, 3], index=['a', 'b', 'c', 'd'])

In [128]: s2 = pd.Series([4, 5, 6], index=['c', 'd', 'e'])

In [129]: data2 = pd.concat([s1, s2], keys=['one', 'two'])

In [130]: data2
Out[130]:
one  a    0
     b    1
     c    2
     d    3
two  c    4
     d    5
     e    6
dtype: int64

In [131]: data2.unstack()
Out[131]:
```

```
       a    b    c    d    e
one  0.0  1.0  2.0  3.0  NaN
two  NaN  NaN  4.0  5.0  6.0
```

Stacking filters out missing data by default, so the operation is more easily invertible:

```
In [132]: data2.unstack()
Out[132]:
       a    b    c    d    e
one  0.0  1.0  2.0  3.0  NaN
two  NaN  NaN  4.0  5.0  6.0

In [133]: data2.unstack().stack()
Out[133]:
one  a    0.0
     b    1.0
     c    2.0
     d    3.0
two  c    4.0
     d    5.0
     e    6.0
dtype: float64

In [134]: data2.unstack().stack(dropna=False)
Out[134]:
one  a    0.0
     b    1.0
     c    2.0
     d    3.0
     e    NaN
two  a    NaN
     b    NaN
     c    4.0
     d    5.0
     e    6.0
dtype: float64
```

When you unstack in a DataFrame, the level unstacked becomes the lowest level in the result:

```
In [135]: df = pd.DataFrame({'left': result, 'right': result + 5},
   .....:                   columns=pd.Index(['left', 'right'], name='side'))

In [136]: df
Out[136]:
side             left  right
state    number
Ohio     one        0      5
         two        1      6
         three      2      7
Colorado one        3      8
```

```
         two          4       9
         three        5      10

In [137]: df.unstack('state')
Out[137]:
side   left           right
state  Ohio Colorado  Ohio Colorado
number
one       0        3     5        8
two       1        4     6        9
three     2        5     7       10
```

When calling `stack`, we can indicate the name of the axis to stack:

```
In [138]: df.unstack('state').stack('side')
Out[138]:
state         Colorado  Ohio
number side
one    left          3     0
       right         8     5
two    left          4     1
       right         9     6
three  left          5     2
       right        10     7
```

Pivoting "Long" to "Wide" Format

A common way to store multiple time series in databases and CSV is in so-called *long* or *stacked* format. Let's load some example data and do a small amount of time series wrangling and other data cleaning:

```
In [139]: data = pd.read_csv('examples/macrodata.csv')

In [140]: data.head()
Out[140]:
     year  quarter   realgdp  realcons  realinv  realgovt  realdpi    cpi  \
0  1959.0      1.0  2710.349    1707.4  286.898   470.045   1886.9  28.98
1  1959.0      2.0  2778.801    1733.7  310.859   481.301   1919.7  29.15
2  1959.0      3.0  2775.488    1751.8  289.226   491.260   1916.4  29.35
3  1959.0      4.0  2785.204    1753.7  299.356   484.052   1931.3  29.37
4  1960.0      1.0  2847.699    1770.5  331.722   462.199   1955.5  29.54
      m1  tbilrate  unemp      pop  infl  realint
0  139.7      2.82    5.8  177.146  0.00     0.00
1  141.7      3.08    5.1  177.830  2.34     0.74
2  140.5      3.82    5.3  178.657  2.74     1.09
3  140.0      4.33    5.6  179.386  0.27     4.06
4  139.6      3.50    5.2  180.007  2.31     1.19

In [141]: periods = pd.PeriodIndex(year=data.year, quarter=data.quarter,
   .....:                          name='date')

In [142]: columns = pd.Index(['realgdp', 'infl', 'unemp'], name='item')

In [143]: data = data.reindex(columns=columns)

In [144]: data.index = periods.to_timestamp('D', 'end')

In [145]: ldata = data.stack().reset_index().rename(columns={0: 'value'})
```

We will look at `PeriodIndex` a bit more closely in Chapter 11. In short, it combines the `year` and `quarter` columns to create a kind of time interval type.

Now, `ldata` looks like:

```
In [146]: ldata[:10]
Out[146]:
        date     item     value
0 1959-03-31  realgdp  2710.349
1 1959-03-31     infl     0.000
2 1959-03-31    unemp     5.800
3 1959-06-30  realgdp  2778.801
4 1959-06-30     infl     2.340
```

```
5 1959-06-30    unemp     5.100
6 1959-09-30  realgdp  2775.488
7 1959-09-30     infl     2.740
8 1959-09-30    unemp     5.300
9 1959-12-31  realgdp  2785.204
```

This is the so-called *long* format for multiple time series, or other observational data with two or more keys (here, our keys are date and item). Each row in the table represents a single observation.

Data is frequently stored this way in relational databases like MySQL, as a fixed schema (column names and data types) allows the number of distinct values in the `item` column to change as data is added to the table. In the previous example, `date` and `item` would usually be the primary keys (in relational database parlance), offering both relational integrity and easier joins. In some cases, the data may be more difficult to work with in this format; you might prefer to have a DataFrame containing one column per distinct `item` value indexed by timestamps in the `date` column. DataFrame's `pivot` method performs exactly this transformation:

```
In [147]: pivoted = ldata.pivot('date', 'item', 'value')

In [148]: pivoted
Out[148]:
item        infl    realgdp  unemp
date
1959-03-31  0.00   2710.349    5.8
1959-06-30  2.34   2778.801    5.1
1959-09-30  2.74   2775.488    5.3
1959-12-31  0.27   2785.204    5.6
1960-03-31  2.31   2847.699    5.2
1960-06-30  0.14   2834.390    5.2
1960-09-30  2.70   2839.022    5.6
1960-12-31  1.21   2802.616    6.3
1961-03-31 -0.40   2819.264    6.8
1961-06-30  1.47   2872.005    7.0
...          ...        ...    ...
2007-06-30  2.75  13203.977    4.5
2007-09-30  3.45  13321.109    4.7
2007-12-31  6.38  13391.249    4.8
2008-03-31  2.82  13366.865    4.9
2008-06-30  8.53  13415.266    5.4
2008-09-30 -3.16  13324.600    6.0
2008-12-31 -8.79  13141.920    6.9
2009-03-31  0.94  12925.410    8.1
2009-06-30  3.37  12901.504    9.2
2009-09-30  3.56  12990.341    9.6
```

```
[203 rows x 3 columns]
```

The first two values passed are the columns to be used respectively as the row and column index, then finally an optional value column to fill the DataFrame. Suppose you had two value columns that you wanted to reshape simultaneously:

```
In [149]: ldata['value2'] = np.random.randn(len(ldata))

In [150]: ldata[:10]
Out[150]:
        date     item     value    value2
0 1959-03-31  realgdp  2710.349  0.523772
1 1959-03-31     infl     0.000  0.000940
2 1959-03-31    unemp     5.800  1.343810
3 1959-06-30  realgdp  2778.801 -0.713544
4 1959-06-30     infl     2.340 -0.831154
5 1959-06-30    unemp     5.100 -2.370232
6 1959-09-30  realgdp  2775.488 -1.860761
7 1959-09-30     infl     2.740 -0.860757
8 1959-09-30    unemp     5.300  0.560145
9 1959-12-31  realgdp  2785.204 -1.265934
```

By omitting the last argument, you obtain a DataFrame with hierarchical columns:

```
In [151]: pivoted = ldata.pivot('date', 'item')

In [152]: pivoted[:5]
Out[152]:
           value                    value2
item        infl   realgdp unemp      infl   realgdp     unemp
date
1959-03-31  0.00  2710.349   5.8  0.000940  0.523772  1.343810
1959-06-30  2.34  2778.801   5.1 -0.831154 -0.713544 -2.370232
1959-09-30  2.74  2775.488   5.3 -0.860757 -1.860761  0.560145
1959-12-31  0.27  2785.204   5.6  0.119827 -1.265934 -1.063512
1960-03-31  2.31  2847.699   5.2 -2.359419  0.332883 -0.199543

In [153]: pivoted['value'][:5]
Out[153]:
item        infl   realgdp  unemp
date
1959-03-31  0.00  2710.349    5.8
1959-06-30  2.34  2778.801    5.1
1959-09-30  2.74  2775.488    5.3
1959-12-31  0.27  2785.204    5.6
1960-03-31  2.31  2847.699    5.2
```

Note that `pivot` is equivalent to creating a hierarchical index using `set_index` followed by a call to `unstack`:

```
In [154]: unstacked = ldata.set_index(['date', 'item']).unstack('item')

In [155]: unstacked[:7]
Out[155]:
           value                     value2
item        infl   realgdp unemp       infl   realgdp     unemp
date
1959-03-31  0.00  2710.349   5.8   0.000940  0.523772  1.343810
1959-06-30  2.34  2778.801   5.1  -0.831154 -0.713544 -2.370232
1959-09-30  2.74  2775.488   5.3  -0.860757 -1.860761  0.560145
1959-12-31  0.27  2785.204   5.6   0.119827 -1.265934 -1.063512
1960-03-31  2.31  2847.699   5.2  -2.359419  0.332883 -0.199543
1960-06-30  0.14  2834.390   5.2  -0.970736 -1.541996 -1.307030
1960-09-30  2.70  2839.022   5.6   0.377984  0.286350 -0.753887
```

Pivoting "Wide" to "Long" Format

An inverse operation to `pivot` for DataFrames is `pandas.melt`. Rather than transforming one column into many in a new DataFrame, it merges multiple columns into one, producing a DataFrame that is longer than the input. Let's look at an example:

```
In [157]: df = pd.DataFrame({'key': ['foo', 'bar', 'baz'],
   .....:                    'A': [1, 2, 3],
   .....:                    'B': [4, 5, 6],
   .....:                    'C': [7, 8, 9]})

In [158]: df
Out[158]:
   A  B  C  key
0  1  4  7  foo
1  2  5  8  bar
2  3  6  9  baz
```

The `'key'` column may be a group indicator, and the other columns are data values. When using `pandas.melt`, we must indicate which columns (if any) are group indicators. Let's use `'key'` as the only group indicator here:

```
In [159]: melted = pd.melt(df, ['key'])

In [160]: melted
Out[160]:
   key variable  value
0  foo        A      1
1  bar        A      2
2  baz        A      3
3  foo        B      4
4  bar        B      5
5  baz        B      6
6  foo        C      7
7  bar        C      8
8  baz        C      9
```

Using `pivot`, we can reshape back to the original layout:

```
In [161]: reshaped = melted.pivot('key', 'variable', 'value')

In [162]: reshaped
Out[162]:
variable  A  B  C
```

```
key
bar        2   5   8
baz        3   6   9
foo        1   4   7
```

Since the result of `pivot` creates an index from the column used as the row labels, we may want to use `reset_index` to move the data back into a column:

```
In [163]: reshaped.reset_index()
Out[163]:
variable  key  A   B   C
0         bar  2   5   8
1         baz  3   6   9
2         foo  1   4   7
```

You can also specify a subset of columns to use as value columns:

```
In [164]: pd.melt(df, id_vars=['key'], value_vars=['A', 'B'])
Out[164]:
   key variable  value
0  foo        A      1
1  bar        A      2
2  baz        A      3
3  foo        B      4
4  bar        B      5
5  baz        B      6
```

`pandas.melt` can be used without any group identifiers, too:

```
In [165]: pd.melt(df, value_vars=['A', 'B', 'C'])
Out[165]:
  variable  value
0        A      1
1        A      2
2        A      3
3        B      4
4        B      5
5        B      6
6        C      7
7        C      8
8        C      9

In [166]: pd.melt(df, value_vars=['key', 'A', 'B'])
Out[166]:
  variable value
0      key   foo
1      key   bar
2      key   baz
```

3	A	1
4	A	2
5	A	3
6	B	4
7	B	5
8	B	6

8.4 Conclusion

Now that you have some pandas basics for data import, cleaning, and reorganization under your belt, we are ready to move on to data visualization with matplotlib. We will return to pandas later in the book when we discuss more advanced analytics.

Chapter 9. Plotting and Visualization

Making informative visualizations (sometimes called *plots*) is one of the most important tasks in data analysis. It may be a part of the exploratory process — for example, to help identify outliers or needed data transformations, or as a way of generating ideas for models. For others, building an interactive visualization for the web may be the end goal. Python has many add-on libraries for making static or dynamic visualizations, but I'll be mainly focused on matplotlib and libraries that build on top of it.

matplotlib is a desktop plotting package designed for creating (mostly two-dimensional) publication-quality plots. The project was started by John Hunter in 2002 to enable a MATLAB-like plotting interface in Python. The matplotlib and IPython communities have collaborated to simplify interactive plotting from the IPython shell (and now, Jupyter notebook). matplotlib supports various GUI backends on all operating systems and additionally can export visualizations to all of the common vector and raster graphics formats (PDF, SVG, JPG, PNG, BMP, GIF, etc.). With the exception of a few diagrams, nearly all of the graphics in this book were produced using matplotlib.

Over time, matplotlib has spawned a number of add-on toolkits for data visualization that use matplotlib for their underlying plotting. One of these is seaborn, which we explore later in this chapter.

The simplest way to follow the code examples in the chapter is to use interactive plotting in the Jupyter notebook. To set this up, execute the following statement in a Jupyter notebook:

```
%matplotlib notebook
```

9.1 A Brief matplotlib API Primer

With matplotlib, we use the following import convention:

```
In [11]: import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
```

After running `%matplotlib notebook` in Jupyter (or simply `%matplotlib` in IPython), we can try creating a simple plot. If everything is set up right, a line plot like Figure 9-1 should appear:

```
In [12]: import numpy as np

In [13]: data = np.arange(10)

In [14]: data
Out[14]: array([0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9])

In [15]: plt.plot(data)
```

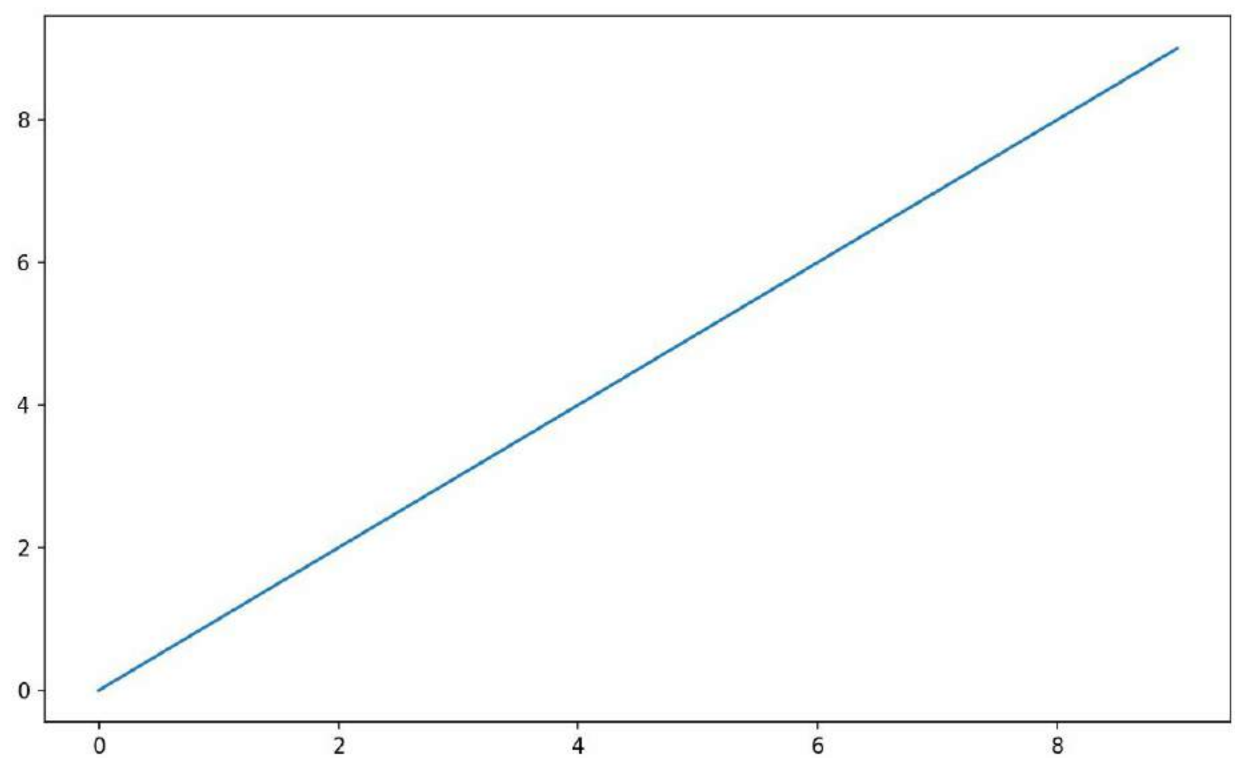


Figure 9-1. Simple line plot

While libraries like seaborn and pandas’s built-in plotting functions will deal with many of the mundane details of making plots, should you wish to customize them beyond the function options provided, you will need to learn a bit about the matplotlib API.

> **NOTE**
>
> There is not enough room in the book to give a comprehensive treatment to the breadth and depth of functionality in matplotlib. It should be enough to teach you the ropes to get up and running. The matplotlib gallery and documentation are the best resource for learning advanced features.

Figures and Subplots

Plots in matplotlib reside within a `Figure` object. You can create a new figure with `plt.figure`:

```
In [16]: fig = plt.figure()
```

In IPython, an empty plot window will appear, but in Jupyter nothing will be shown until we use a few more commands. `plt.figure` has a number of options; notably, `figsize` will guarantee the figure has a certain size and aspect ratio if saved to disk.

You can't make a plot with a blank figure. You have to create one or more `subplots` using `add_subplot`:

```
In [17]: ax1 = fig.add_subplot(2, 2, 1)
```

This means that the figure should be 2 × 2 (so up to four plots in total), and we're selecting the first of four subplots (numbered from 1). If you create the next two subplots, you'll end up with a visualization that looks like Figure 9-2:

```
In [18]: ax2 = fig.add_subplot(2, 2, 2)

In [19]: ax3 = fig.add_subplot(2, 2, 3)
```

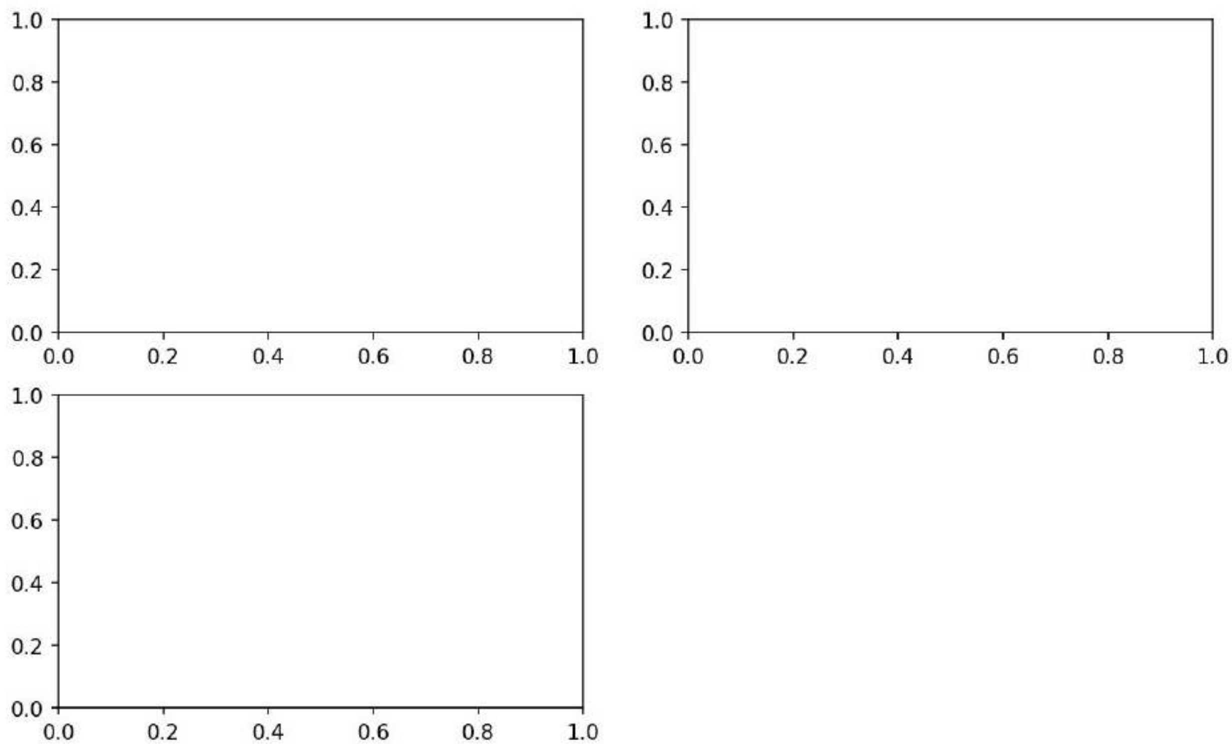


Figure 9-2. An empty matplotlib figure with three subplots

> **TIP**
>
> One nuance of using Jupyter notebooks is that plots are reset after each cell is evaluated, so for more complex plots you must put all of the plotting commands in a single notebook cell.

Here we run all of these commands in the same cell:

```
fig = plt.figure()
ax1 = fig.add_subplot(2, 2, 1)
ax2 = fig.add_subplot(2, 2, 2)
ax3 = fig.add_subplot(2, 2, 3)
```

When you issue a plotting command like `plt.plot([1.5, 3.5, -2, 1.6])`, matplotlib draws on the last figure and subplot used (creating one if necessary), thus hiding the figure and subplot creation. So if we add the following command, you'll get something like Figure 9-3:

```
In [20]: plt.plot(np.random.randn(50).cumsum(), 'k--')
```

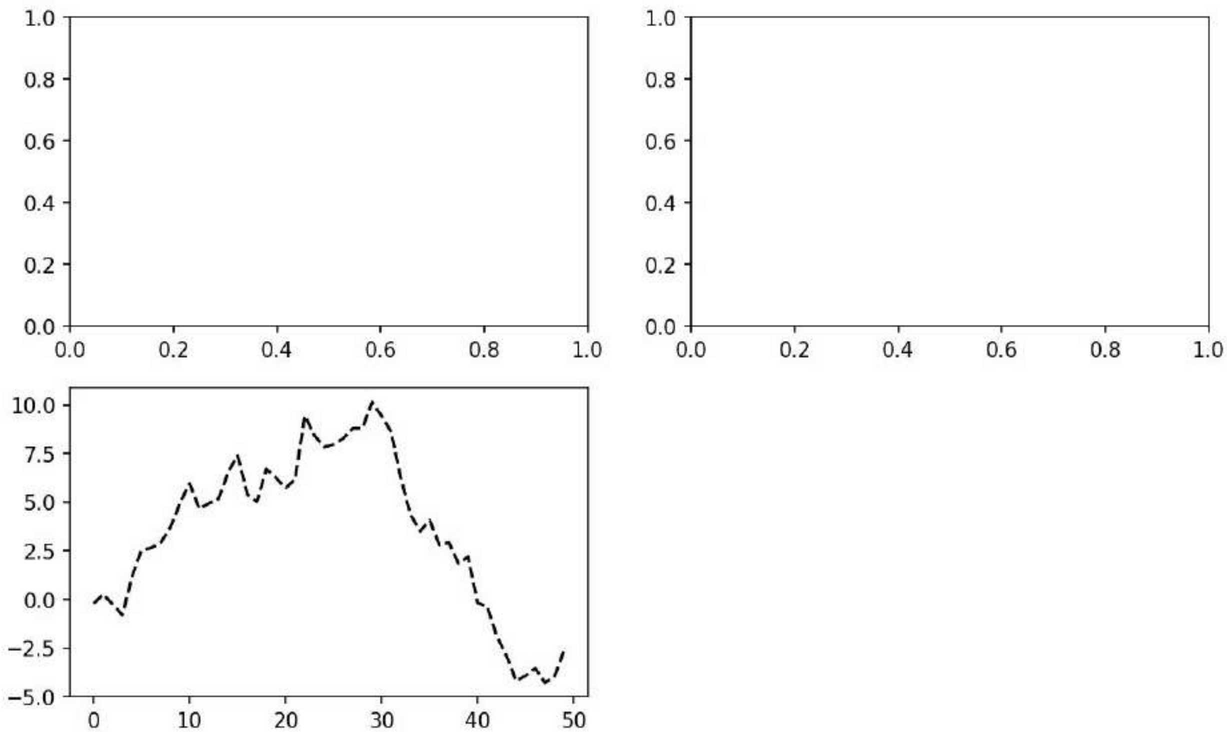


Figure 9-3. Data visualization after single plot

The `'k--'` is a *style* option instructing matplotlib to plot a black dashed line. The objects returned by `fig.add_subplot` here are `AxesSubplot` objects, on which you can directly plot on the other empty subplots by calling each one's instance method (see Figure 9-4):

```
In [21]: _ = ax1.hist(np.random.randn(100), bins=20, color='k', alpha=0.3)

In [22]: ax2.scatter(np.arange(30), np.arange(30) + 3 * np.random.randn(30))
```

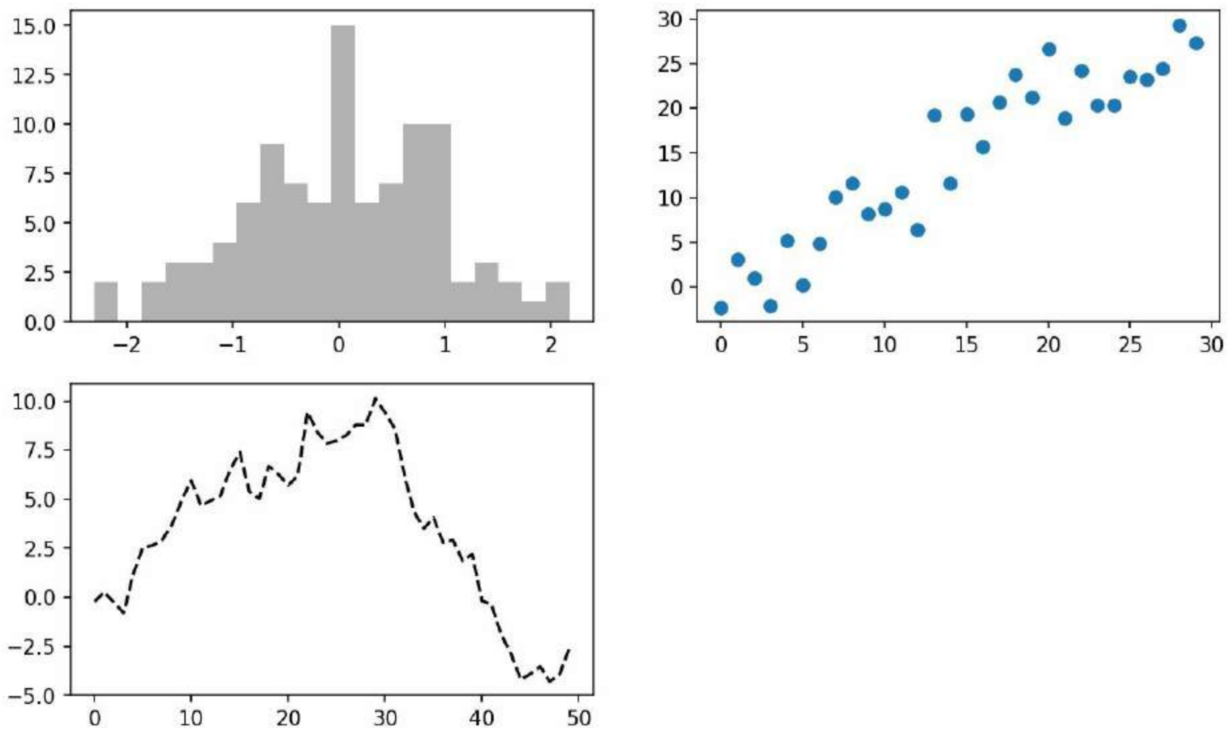


Figure 9-4. Data visualization after additional plots

You can find a comprehensive catalog of plot types in the matplotlib documentation.

Creating a figure with a grid of subplots is a very common task, so matplotlib includes a convenience method, `plt.subplots`, that creates a new figure and returns a NumPy array containing the created subplot objects:

```
In [24]: fig, axes = plt.subplots(2, 3)

In [25]: axes
Out[25]:
array([[<matplotlib.axes._subplots.AxesSubplot object at 0x7fb626374048>,
        <matplotlib.axes._subplots.AxesSubplot object at 0x7fb62625db00>,
        <matplotlib.axes._subplots.AxesSubplot object at 0x7fb6262f6c88>],
       [<matplotlib.axes._subplots.AxesSubplot object at 0x7fb6261a36a0>,
        <matplotlib.axes._subplots.AxesSubplot object at 0x7fb626181860>,
        <matplotlib.axes._subplots.AxesSubplot object at 0x7fb6260fd4e0>]],
dtype
=object)
```

This is very useful, as the `axes` array can be easily indexed like a two-dimensional array; for example, `axes[0, 1]`. You can also indicate that subplots should have the same x- or y-axis using `sharex` and `sharey`, respectively. This is especially useful when you're comparing data on the same scale; otherwise, matplotlib autoscales plot limits independently. See Table 9-1 for more on this method.

Table 9-1. pyplot.subplots options

Argument	Description
`nrows`	Number of rows of subplots
`ncols`	Number of columns of subplots
`sharex`	All subplots should use the same x-axis ticks (adjusting the `xlim` will affect all subplots)
`sharey`	All subplots should use the same y-axis ticks (adjusting the `ylim` will affect all subplots)
`subplot_kw`	Dict of keywords passed to `add_subplot` call used to create each subplot
`**fig_kw`	Additional keywords to `subplots` are used when creating the figure, such as `plt.subplots(2, 2, figsize=(8, 6))`

Adjusting the spacing around subplots

By default matplotlib leaves a certain amount of padding around the outside of the subplots and spacing between subplots. This spacing is all specified relative to the height and width of the plot, so that if you resize the plot either programmatically or manually using the GUI window, the plot will dynamically adjust itself. You can change the spacing using the `subplots_adjust` method on `Figure` objects, also available as a top-level function:

```
subplots_adjust(left=None, bottom=None, right=None, top=None,
                wspace=None, hspace=None)
```

`wspace` and `hspace` controls the percent of the figure width and figure height, respectively, to use as spacing between subplots. Here is a small example where I shrink the spacing all the way to zero (see Figure 9-5):

```
fig, axes = plt.subplots(2, 2, sharex=True, sharey=True)
for i in range(2):
    for j in range(2):
        axes[i, j].hist(np.random.randn(500), bins=50, color='k', alpha=0.5)
plt.subplots_adjust(wspace=0, hspace=0)
```

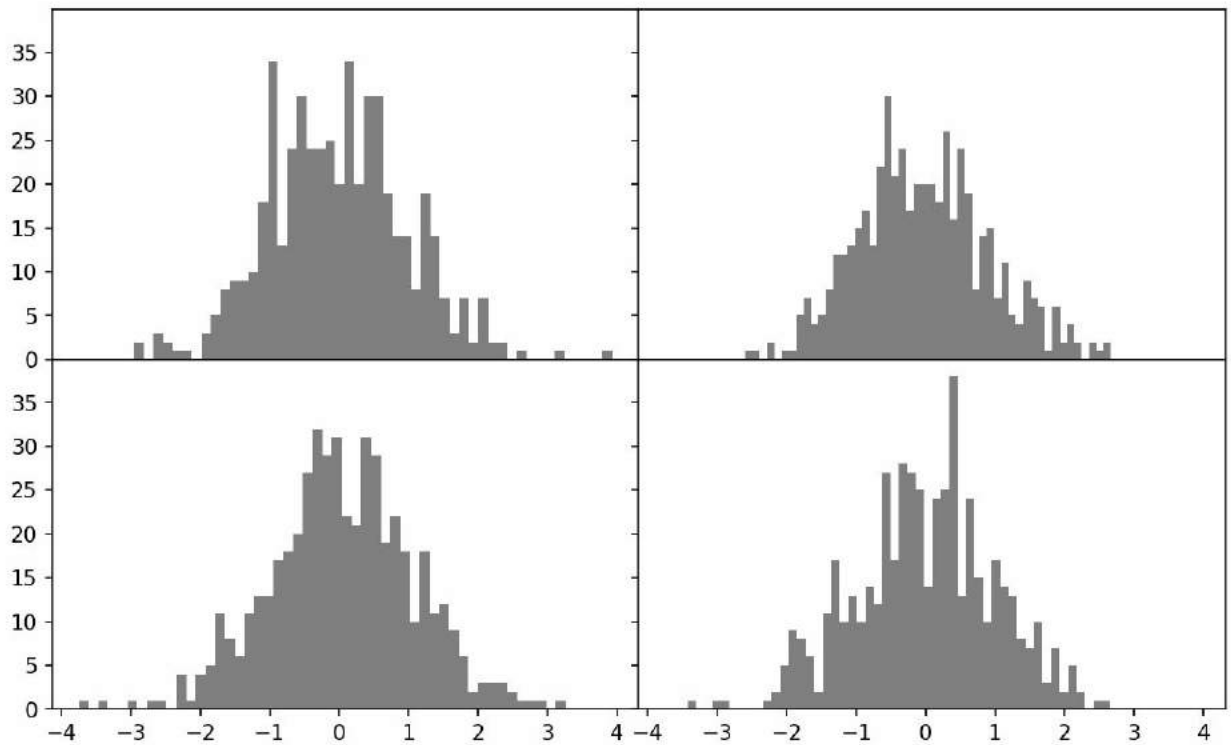


Figure 9-5. Data visualization with no inter-subplot spacing

You may notice that the axis labels overlap. matplotlib doesn’t check whether the labels overlap, so in a case like this you would need to fix the labels yourself by specifying explicit tick locations and tick labels (we’ll look at how to do this in the following sections).

Colors, Markers, and Line Styles

Matplotlib's main `plot` function accepts arrays of x and y coordinates and optionally a string abbreviation indicating color and line style. For example, to plot `x` versus `y` with green dashes, you would execute:

```
ax.plot(x, y, 'g--')
```

This way of specifying both color and line style in a string is provided as a convenience; in practice if you were creating plots programmatically you might prefer not to have to munge strings together to create plots with the desired style. The same plot could also have been expressed more explicitly as:

```
ax.plot(x, y, linestyle='--', color='g')
```

There are a number of color abbreviations provided for commonly used colors, but you can use any color on the spectrum by specifying its hex code (e.g., `'#CECECE'`). You can see the full set of line styles by looking at the docstring for `plot` (use `plot?` in IPython or Jupyter).

Line plots can additionally have *markers* to highlight the actual data points. Since matplotlib creates a continuous line plot, interpolating between points, it can occasionally be unclear where the points lie. The marker can be part of the style string, which must have color followed by marker type and line style (see Figure 9-6):

```
In [30]: from numpy.random import randn

In [31]: plt.plot(randn(30).cumsum(), 'ko--')
```

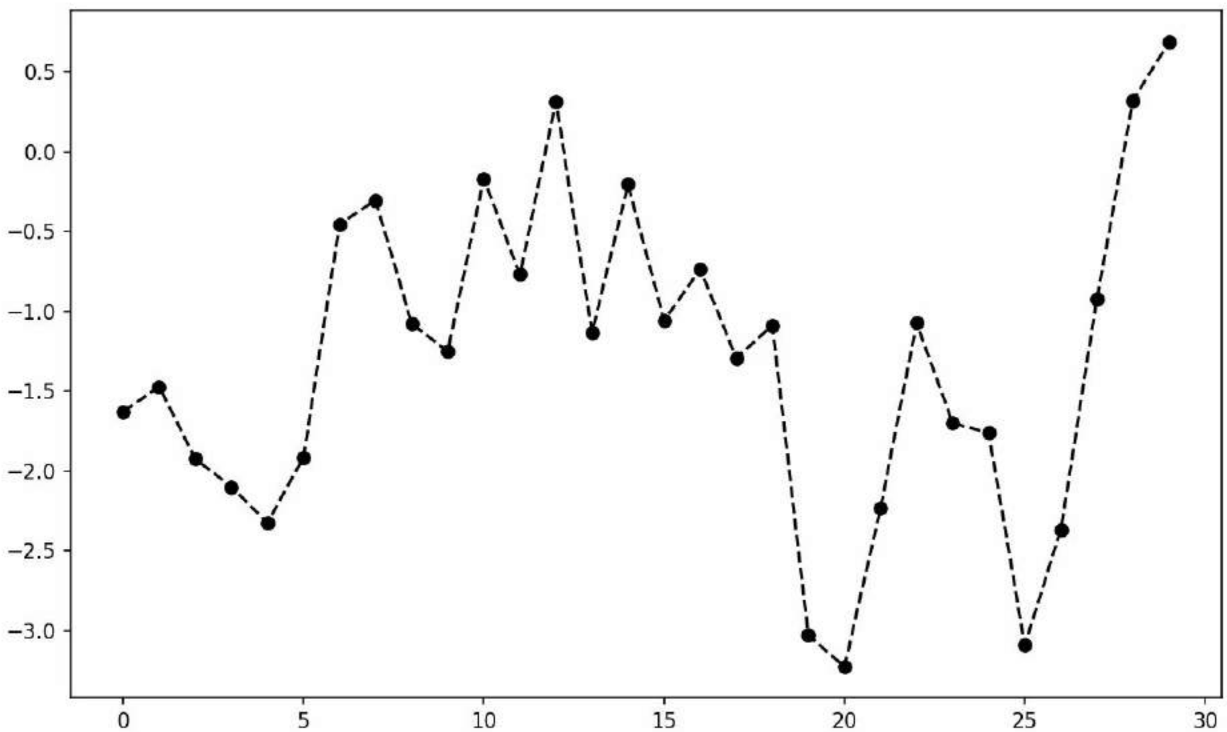


Figure 9-6. Line plot with markers

This could also have been written more explicitly as:

```
plot(randn(30).cumsum(), color='k', linestyle='dashed', marker='o')
```

For line plots, you will notice that subsequent points are linearly interpolated by default. This can be altered with the `drawstyle` option (Figure 9-7):

```
In [33]: data = np.random.randn(30).cumsum()

In [34]: plt.plot(data, 'k--', label='Default')
Out[34]: [<matplotlib.lines.Line2D at 0x7fb624d86160>]

In [35]: plt.plot(data, 'k-', drawstyle='steps-post', label='steps-post')
Out[35]: [<matplotlib.lines.Line2D at 0x7fb624d869e8>]

In [36]: plt.legend(loc='best')
```

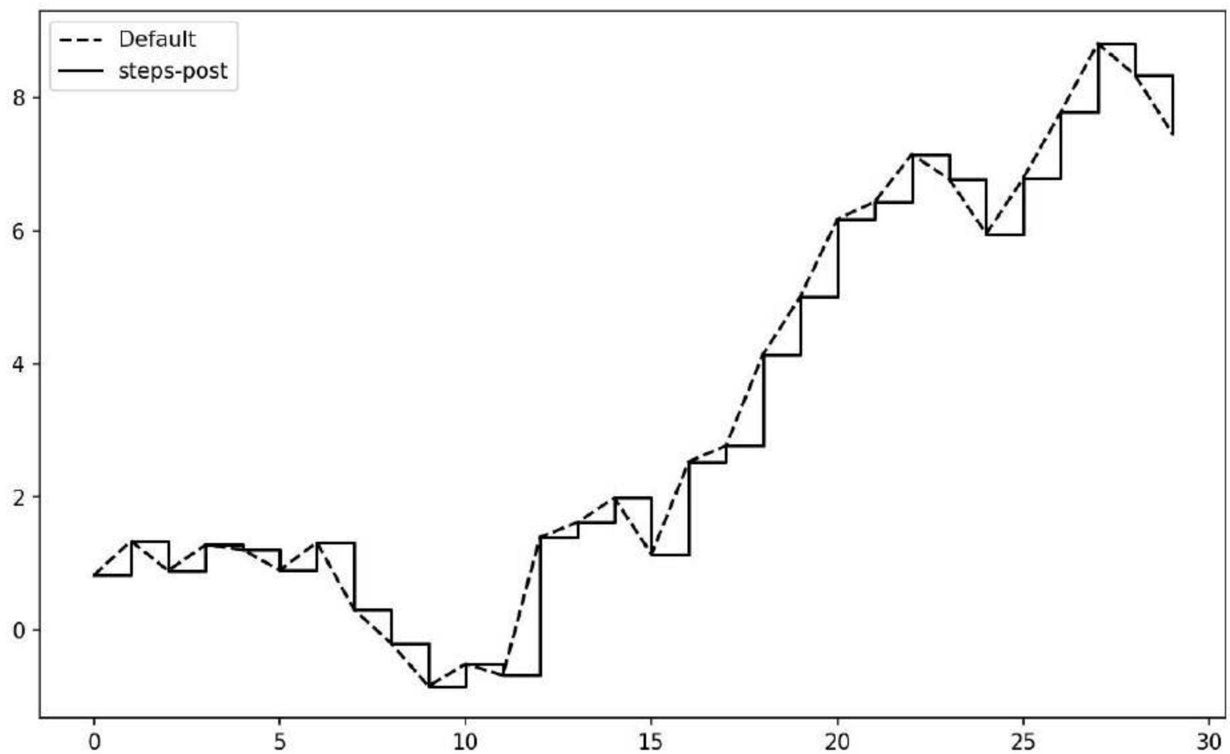


Figure 9-7. Line plot with different drawstyle options

You may notice output like `<matplotlib.lines.Line2D at ...>` when you run this. matplotlib returns objects that reference the plot subcomponent that was just added. A lot of the time you can safely ignore this output. Here, since we passed the `label` arguments to `plot`, we are able to create a plot legend to identify each line using `plt.legend`.

> **NOTE**
>
> You must call `plt.legend` (or `ax.legend`, if you have a reference to the axes) to create the legend, whether or not you passed the `label` options when plotting the data.

Ticks, Labels, and Legends

For most kinds of plot decorations, there are two main ways to do things: using the procedural `pyplot` interface (i.e., `matplotlib.pyplot`) and the more object-oriented native matplotlib API.

The `pyplot` interface, designed for interactive use, consists of methods like `xlim`, `xticks`, and `xticklabels`. These control the plot range, tick locations, and tick labels, respectively. They can be used in two ways:

- Called with no arguments returns the current parameter value (e.g., `plt.xlim()` returns the current x-axis plotting range)
- Called with parameters sets the parameter value (e.g., `plt.xlim([0, 10])`, sets the x-axis range to 0 to 10)

All such methods act on the active or most recently created `AxesSubplot`. Each of them corresponds to two methods on the subplot object itself; in the case of `xlim` these are `ax.get_xlim` and `ax.set_xlim`. I prefer to use the subplot instance methods myself in the interest of being explicit (and especially when working with multiple subplots), but you can certainly use whichever you find more convenient.

Setting the title, axis labels, ticks, and ticklabels

To illustrate customizing the axes, I'll create a simple figure and plot of a random walk (see Figure 9-8):

```
In [37]: fig = plt.figure()

In [38]: ax = fig.add_subplot(1, 1, 1)

In [39]: ax.plot(np.random.randn(1000).cumsum())
```

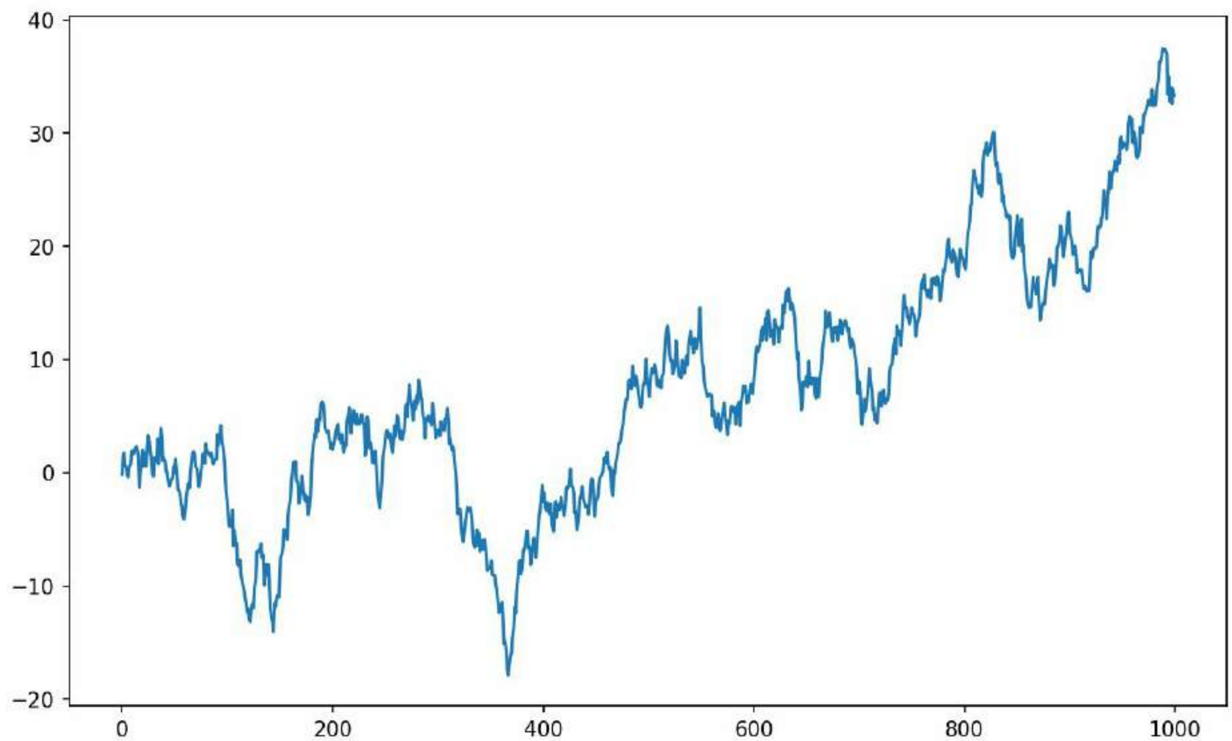


Figure 9-8. Simple plot for illustrating xticks (with label)

To change the x-axis ticks, it's easiest to use `set_xticks` and `set_xticklabels`. The former instructs matplotlib where to place the ticks along the data range; by default these locations will also be the labels. But we can set any other values as the labels using `set_xticklabels`:

```
In [40]: ticks = ax.set_xticks([0, 250, 500, 750, 1000])

In [41]: labels = ax.set_xticklabels(['one', 'two', 'three', 'four', 'five'],
   ....:                             rotation=30, fontsize='small')
```

The `rotation` option sets the x tick labels at a 30-degree rotation. Lastly, `set_xlabel` gives a name to the x-axis and `set_title` the subplot title (see Figure 9-9 for the resulting figure):

```
In [42]: ax.set_title('My first matplotlib plot')
Out[42]: <matplotlib.text.Text at 0x7fb624d055f8>

In [43]: ax.set_xlabel('Stages')
```

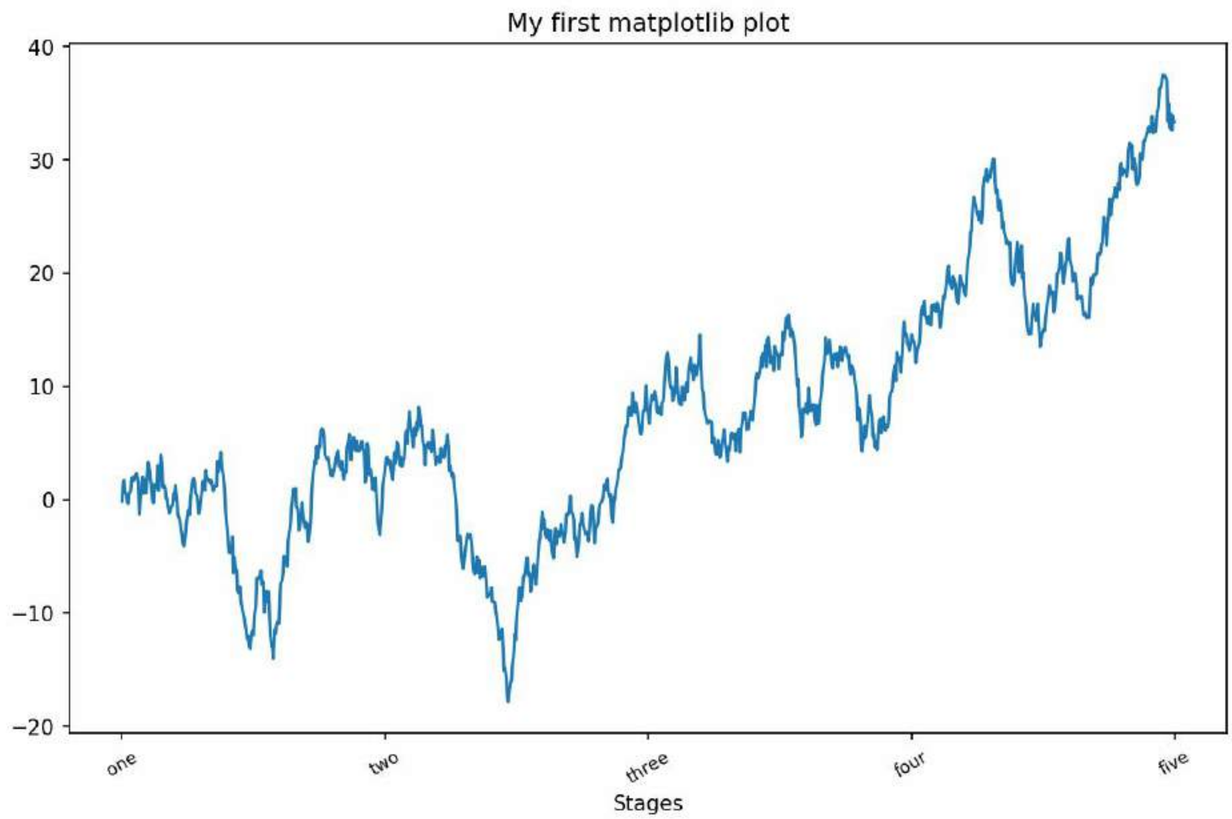


Figure 9-9. Simple plot for illustrating xticks

Modifying the y-axis consists of the same process, substituting `y` for `x` in the above. The axes class has a `set` method that allows batch setting of plot properties. From the prior example, we could also have written:

```
props = {
    'title': 'My first matplotlib plot',
    'xlabel': 'Stages'
}
ax.set(**props)
```

Adding legends

Legends are another critical element for identifying plot elements. There are a couple of ways to add one. The easiest is to pass the `label` argument when adding each piece of the plot:

```
In [44]: from numpy.random import randn
```

```
In [45]: fig = plt.figure(); ax = fig.add_subplot(1, 1, 1)

In [46]: ax.plot(randn(1000).cumsum(), 'k', label='one')
Out[46]: [<matplotlib.lines.Line2D at 0x7fb624bdf860>]

In [47]: ax.plot(randn(1000).cumsum(), 'k--', label='two')
Out[47]: [<matplotlib.lines.Line2D at 0x7fb624be90f0>]

In [48]: ax.plot(randn(1000).cumsum(), 'k.', label='three')
Out[48]: [<matplotlib.lines.Line2D at 0x7fb624be9160>]
```

Once you've done this, you can either call `ax.legend()` or `plt.legend()` to automatically create a legend. The resulting plot is in Figure 9-10:

```
In [49]: ax.legend(loc='best')
```

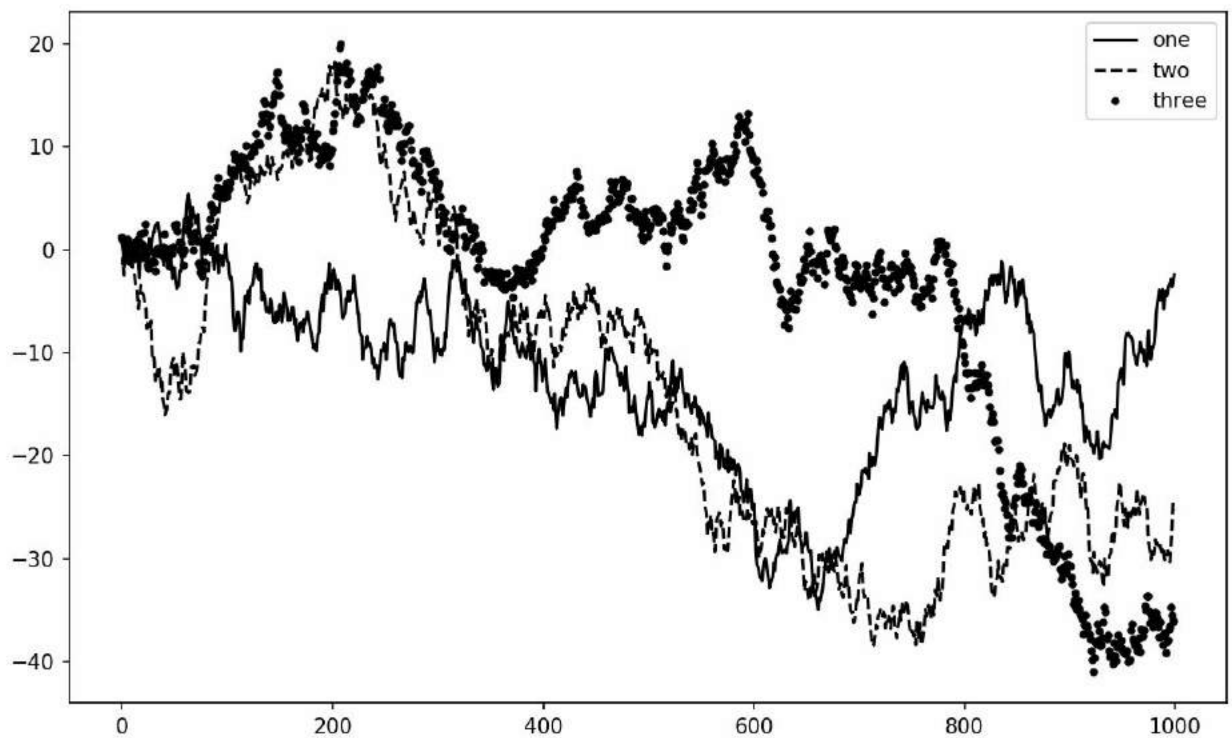


Figure 9-10. Simple plot with three lines and legend

The `legend` method has several other choices for the location `loc` argument. See the docstring (with `ax.legend?`) for more information.

The `loc` tells matplotlib where to place the plot. If you aren't picky, `'best'` is a good option, as it will choose a location that is most out of the way. To exclude one or more elements from the legend, pass no label or `label='_nolegend_'`.

Annotations and Drawing on a Subplot

In addition to the standard plot types, you may wish to draw your own plot annotations, which could consist of text, arrows, or other shapes. You can add annotations and text using the `text`, `arrow`, and `annotate` functions. `text` draws text at given coordinates `(x, y)` on the plot with optional custom styling:

```
ax.text(x, y, 'Hello world!',
        family='monospace', fontsize=10)
```

Annotations can draw both text and arrows arranged appropriately. As an example, let's plot the closing S&P 500 index price since 2007 (obtained from Yahoo! Finance) and annotate it with some of the important dates from the 2008–2009 financial crisis. You can most easily reproduce this code example in a single cell in a Jupyter notebook. See Figure 9-11 for the result:

```
from datetime import datetime

fig = plt.figure()
ax = fig.add_subplot(1, 1, 1)

data = pd.read_csv('examples/spx.csv', index_col=0, parse_dates=True)
spx = data['SPX']

spx.plot(ax=ax, style='k-')

crisis_data = [
    (datetime(2007, 10, 11), 'Peak of bull market'),
    (datetime(2008, 3, 12), 'Bear Stearns Fails'),
    (datetime(2008, 9, 15), 'Lehman Bankruptcy')
]

for date, label in crisis_data:
    ax.annotate(label, xy=(date, spx.asof(date) + 75),
                xytext=(date, spx.asof(date) + 225),
                arrowprops=dict(facecolor='black', headwidth=4, width=2,
                                headlength=4),
                horizontalalignment='left', verticalalignment='top')

# Zoom in on 2007-2010
ax.set_xlim(['1/1/2007', '1/1/2011'])
ax.set_ylim([600, 1800])

ax.set_title('Important dates in the 2008-2009 financial crisis')
```

Figure 9-11. Important dates in the 2008–2009 financial crisis

There are a couple of important points to highlight in this plot: the `ax.annotate` method can draw labels at the indicated x and y coordinates. We use the `set_xlim` and `set_ylim` methods to manually set the start and end boundaries for the plot rather than using matplotlib's default. Lastly, `ax.set_title` adds a main title to the plot.

See the online matplotlib gallery for many more annotation examples to learn from.

Drawing shapes requires some more care. matplotlib has objects that represent many common shapes, referred to as *patches*. Some of these, like `Rectangle` and `Circle`, are found in `matplotlib.pyplot`, but the full set is located in `matplotlib.patches`.

To add a shape to a plot, you create the patch object `shp` and add it to a subplot by calling `ax.add_patch(shp)` (see Figure 9-12):

```
fig = plt.figure()
ax = fig.add_subplot(1, 1, 1)
```

```python
rect = plt.Rectangle((0.2, 0.75), 0.4, 0.15, color='k', alpha=0.3)
circ = plt.Circle((0.7, 0.2), 0.15, color='b', alpha=0.3)
pgon = plt.Polygon([[0.15, 0.15], [0.35, 0.4], [0.2, 0.6]],
                   color='g', alpha=0.5)

ax.add_patch(rect)
ax.add_patch(circ)
ax.add_patch(pgon)
```

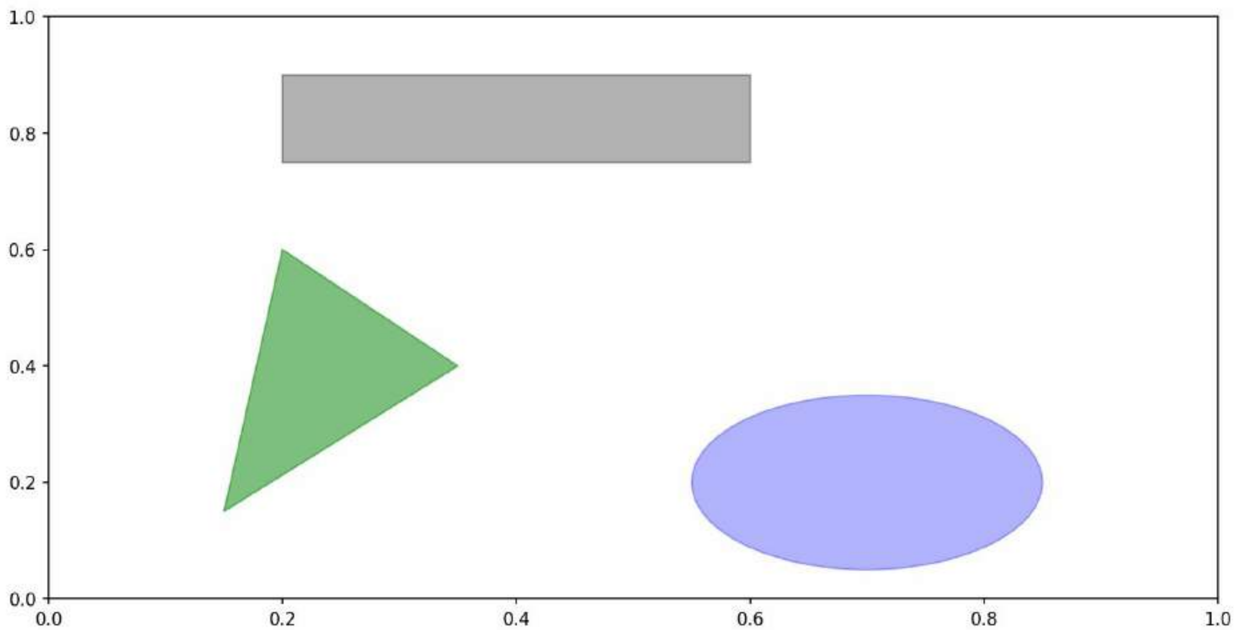


Figure 9-12. Data visualization composed from three different patches

If you look at the implementation of many familiar plot types, you will see that they are assembled from patches.

Saving Plots to File

You can save the active figure to file using `plt.savefig`. This method is equivalent to the figure object's `savefig` instance method. For example, to save an SVG version of a figure, you need only type:

```
plt.savefig('figpath.svg')
```

The file type is inferred from the file extension. So if you used `.pdf` instead, you would get a PDF. There are a couple of important options that I use frequently for publishing graphics: `dpi`, which controls the dots-per-inch resolution, and `bbox_inches`, which can trim the whitespace around the actual figure. To get the same plot as a PNG with minimal whitespace around the plot and at 400 DPI, you would do:

```
plt.savefig('figpath.png', dpi=400, bbox_inches='tight')
```

`savefig` doesn't have to write to disk; it can also write to any file-like object, such as a `BytesIO`:

```
from io import BytesIO
buffer = BytesIO()
plt.savefig(buffer)
plot_data = buffer.getvalue()
```

See Table 9-2 for a list of some other options for `savefig`.

Table 9-2. Figure.savefig options

Argument	Description
`fname`	String containing a filepath or a Python file-like object. The figure format is inferred from the file extension (e.g., `.pdf` for PDF or `.png` for PNG)
`dpi`	The figure resolution in dots per inch; defaults to 100 out of the box but can be configured
`facecolor, edgecolor`	The color of the figure background outside of the subplots; `'w'` (white), by default

`format`	The explicit file format to use (`'png'`, `'pdf'`, `'svg'`, `'ps'`, `'eps'`, ...)
`bbox_inches`	The portion of the figure to save; if `'tight'` is passed, will attempt to trim the empty space around the figure

matplotlib Configuration

matplotlib comes configured with color schemes and defaults that are geared primarily toward preparing figures for publication. Fortunately, nearly all of the default behavior can be customized via an extensive set of global parameters governing figure size, subplot spacing, colors, font sizes, grid styles, and so on. One way to modify the configuration programmatically from Python is to use the `rc` method; for example, to set the global default figure size to be 10 × 10, you could enter:

```
plt.rc('figure', figsize=(10, 10))
```

The first argument to `rc` is the component you wish to customize, such as `'figure'`, `'axes'`, `'xtick'`, `'ytick'`, `'grid'`, `'legend'`, or many others. After that can follow a sequence of keyword arguments indicating the new parameters. An easy way to write down the options in your program is as a dict:

```
font_options = {'family' : 'monospace',
                'weight' : 'bold',
                'size'   : 'small'}
plt.rc('font', **font_options)
```

For more extensive customization and to see a list of all the options, matplotlib comes with a configuration file *matplotlibrc* in the *matplotlib/mpl-data* directory. If you customize this file and place it in your home directory titled *.matplotlibrc*, it will be loaded each time you use matplotlib.

As we'll see in the next section, the seaborn package has several built-in plot themes or *styles* that use matplotlib's configuration system internally.

9.2 Plotting with pandas and seaborn

matplotlib can be a fairly low-level tool. You assemble a plot from its base components: the data display (i.e., the type of plot: line, bar, box, scatter, contour, etc.), legend, title, tick labels, and other annotations.

In pandas we may have multiple columns of data, along with row and column labels. pandas itself has built-in methods that simplify creating visualizations from DataFrame and Series objects. Another library is `seaborn`, a statistical graphics library created by Michael Waskom. Seaborn simplifies creating many common visualization types.

> **TIP**
>
> Importing seaborn modifies the default matplotlib color schemes and plot styles to improve readability and aesthetics. Even if you do not use the seaborn API, you may prefer to import seaborn as a simple way to improve the visual aesthetics of general matplotlib plots.

Line Plots

Series and DataFrame each have a `plot` attribute for making some basic plot types. By default, `plot()` makes line plots (see Figure 9-13):

```
In [60]: s = pd.Series(np.random.randn(10).cumsum(), index=np.arange(0, 100,
10))

In [61]: s.plot()
```

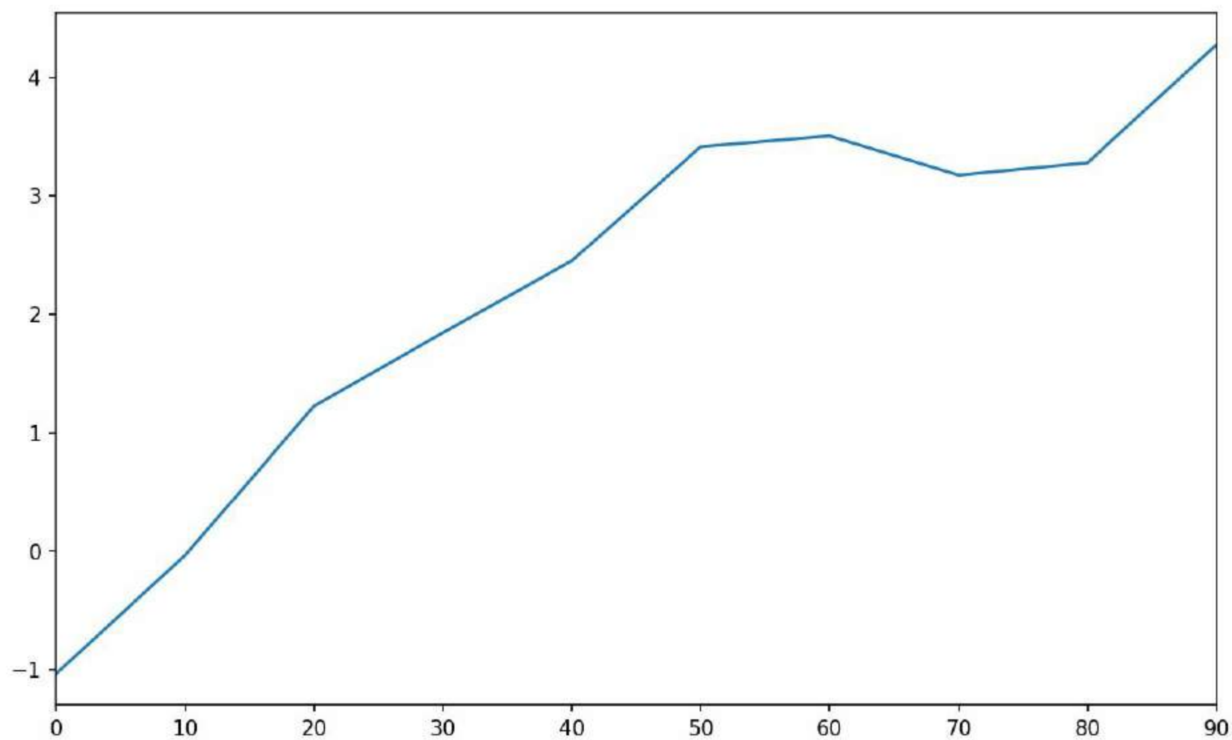


Figure 9-13. Simple Series plot

The Series object's index is passed to matplotlib for plotting on the x-axis, though you can disable this by passing `use_index=False`. The x-axis ticks and limits can be adjusted with the `xticks` and `xlim` options, and y-axis respectively with `yticks` and `ylim`. See Table 9-3 for a full listing of `plot` options. I'll comment on a few more of them throughout this section and leave the rest to you to explore.

Most of pandas's plotting methods accept an optional `ax` parameter, which can be a matplotlib subplot object. This gives you more flexible placement of subplots in a grid layout.

DataFrame's `plot` method plots each of its columns as a different line on the same subplot, creating a legend automatically (see Figure 9-14):

```
In [62]: df = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(10, 4).cumsum(0),
   ....:                   columns=['A', 'B', 'C', 'D'],
   ....:                   index=np.arange(0, 100, 10))

In [63]: df.plot()
```

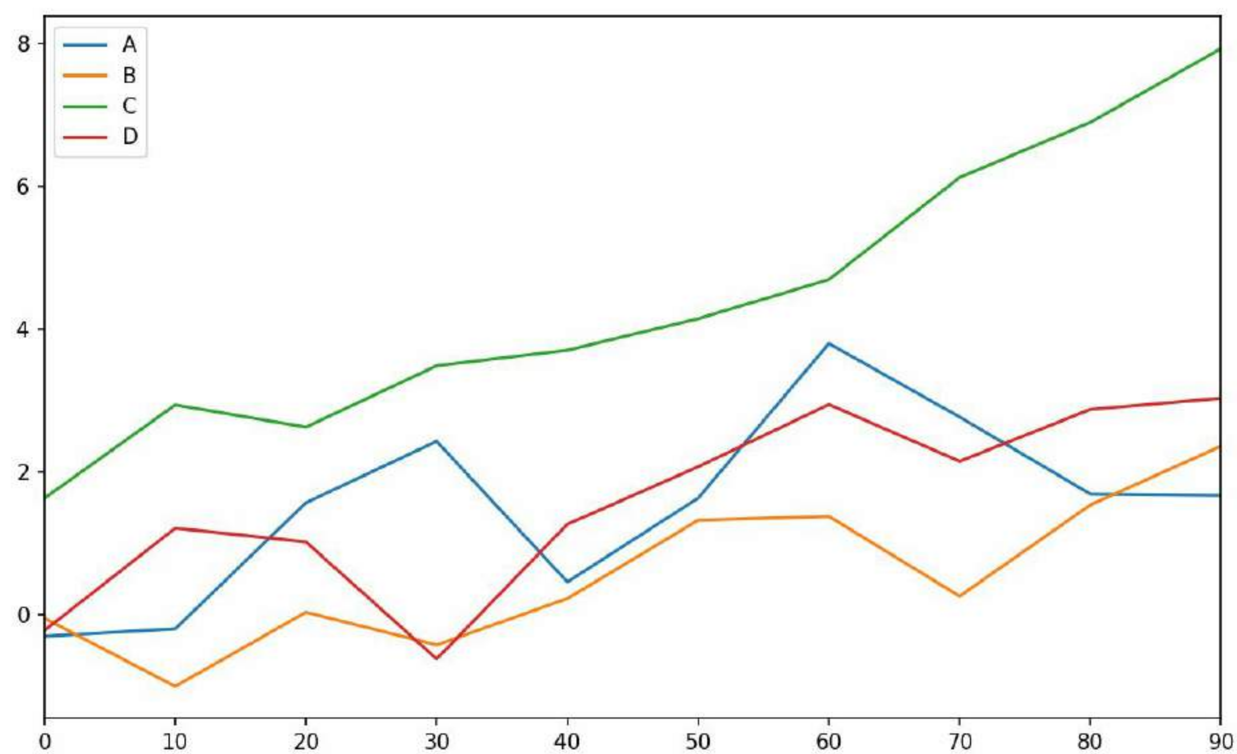


Figure 9-14. Simple DataFrame plot

The `plot` attribute contains a "family" of methods for different plot types. For example, `df.plot()` is equivalent to `df.plot.line()`. We'll explore some of these methods next.

> **NOTE**
>
> Additional keyword arguments to `plot` are passed through to the respective matplotlib plotting function, so you can further customize these plots by learning more about the matplotlib API.

Table 9-3. Series.plot method arguments

Argument	Description
`label`	Label for plot legend
`ax`	matplotlib subplot object to plot on; if nothing passed, uses active matplotlib subplot
`style`	Style string, like `'ko--'`, to be passed to matplotlib
`alpha`	The plot fill opacity (from 0 to 1)
`kind`	Can be `'area'`, `'bar'`, `'barh'`, `'density'`, `'hist'`, `'kde'`, `'line'`, `'pie'`
`logy`	Use logarithmic scaling on the y-axis
`use_index`	Use the object index for tick labels
`rot`	Rotation of tick labels (0 through 360)
`xticks`	Values to use for x-axis ticks
`yticks`	Values to use for y-axis ticks
`xlim`	x-axis limits (e.g., `[0, 10]`)
`ylim`	y-axis limits
`grid`	Display axis grid (on by default)

DataFrame has a number of options allowing some flexibility with how the columns are handled; for example, whether to plot them all on the same subplot or to create separate subplots. See Table 9-4 for more on these.

Table 9-4. DataFrame-specific plot arguments

Argument	Description
`subplots`	Plot each DataFrame column in a separate subplot

`sharex`	If `subplots=True`, share the same x-axis, linking ticks and limits
`sharey`	If `subplots=True`, share the same y-axis
`figsize`	Size of figure to create as tuple
`title`	Plot title as string
`legend`	Add a subplot legend (`True` by default)
`sort_columns`	Plot columns in alphabetical order; by default uses existing column order

NOTE

For time series plotting, see Chapter 11.

Bar Plots

The `plot.bar()` and `plot.barh()` make vertical and horizontal bar plots, respectively. In this case, the Series or DataFrame index will be used as the x (`bar`) or y (`barh`) ticks (see Figure 9-15):

```
In [64]: fig, axes = plt.subplots(2, 1)

In [65]: data = pd.Series(np.random.rand(16), index=list('abcdefghijklmnop'))

In [66]: data.plot.bar(ax=axes[0], color='k', alpha=0.7)
Out[66]: <matplotlib.axes._subplots.AxesSubplot at 0x7fb62493d470>

In [67]: data.plot.barh(ax=axes[1], color='k', alpha=0.7)
```

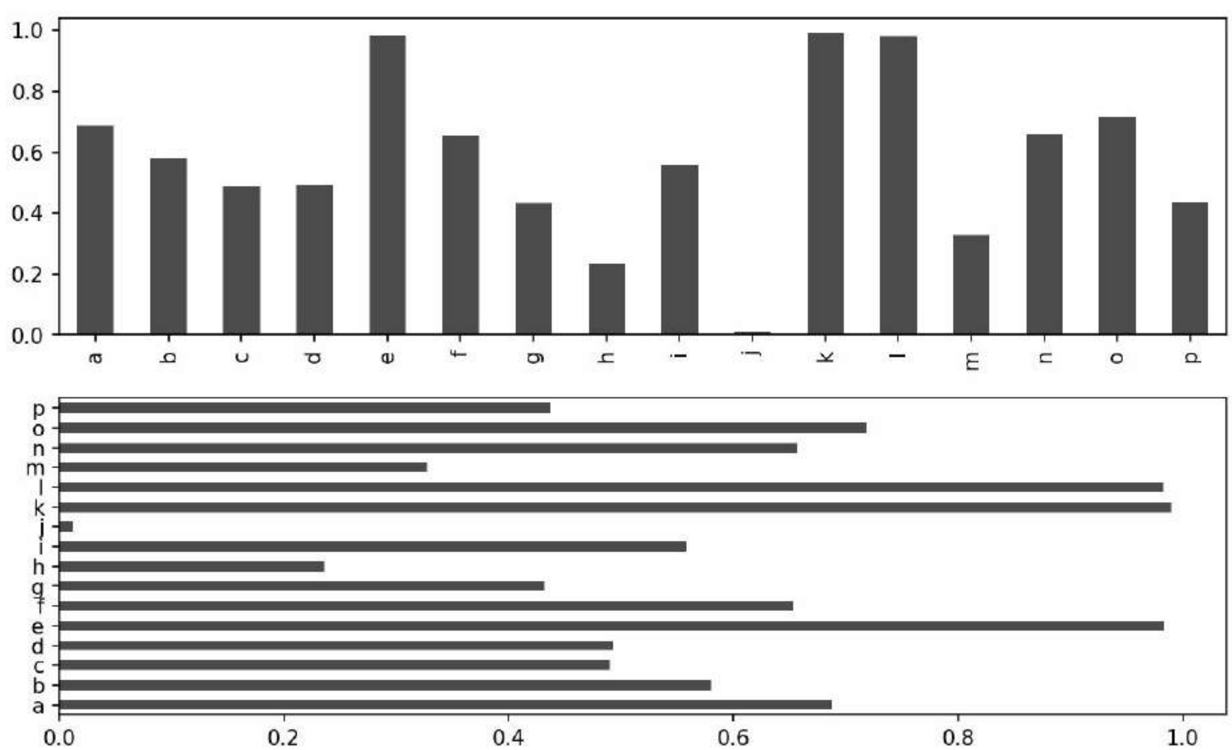


Figure 9-15. Horizonal and vertical bar plot

The options `color='k'` and `alpha=0.7` set the color of the plots to black and use partial transparency on the filling.

With a DataFrame, bar plots group the values in each row together in a group in bars, side by side, for each value. See Figure 9-16:

```
In [69]: df = pd.DataFrame(np.random.rand(6, 4),
   ....:                   index=['one', 'two', 'three', 'four', 'five',
'six'],
   ....:                   columns=pd.Index(['A', 'B', 'C', 'D'],
name='Genus'))

In [70]: df
Out[70]:
Genus         A         B         C         D
one    0.370670  0.602792  0.229159  0.486744
two    0.420082  0.571653  0.049024  0.880592
three  0.814568  0.277160  0.880316  0.431326
four   0.374020  0.899420  0.460304  0.100843
five   0.433270  0.125107  0.494675  0.961825
six    0.601648  0.478576  0.205690  0.560547

In [71]: df.plot.bar()
```

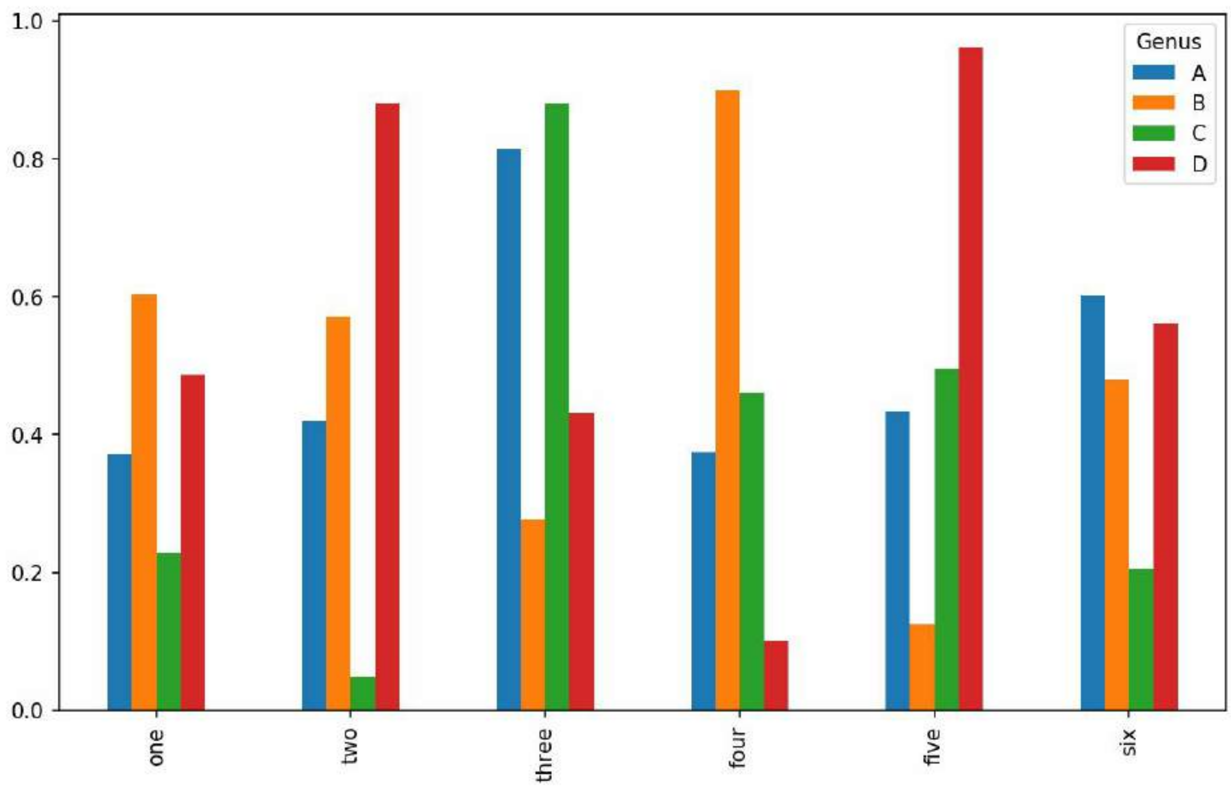


Figure 9-16. DataFrame bar plot

Note that the name “Genus” on the DataFrame’s columns is used to title the legend.

We create stacked bar plots from a DataFrame by passing `stacked=True`, resulting in the value in each row being stacked together (see Figure 9-17):

```
In [73]: df.plot.barh(stacked=True, alpha=0.5)
```

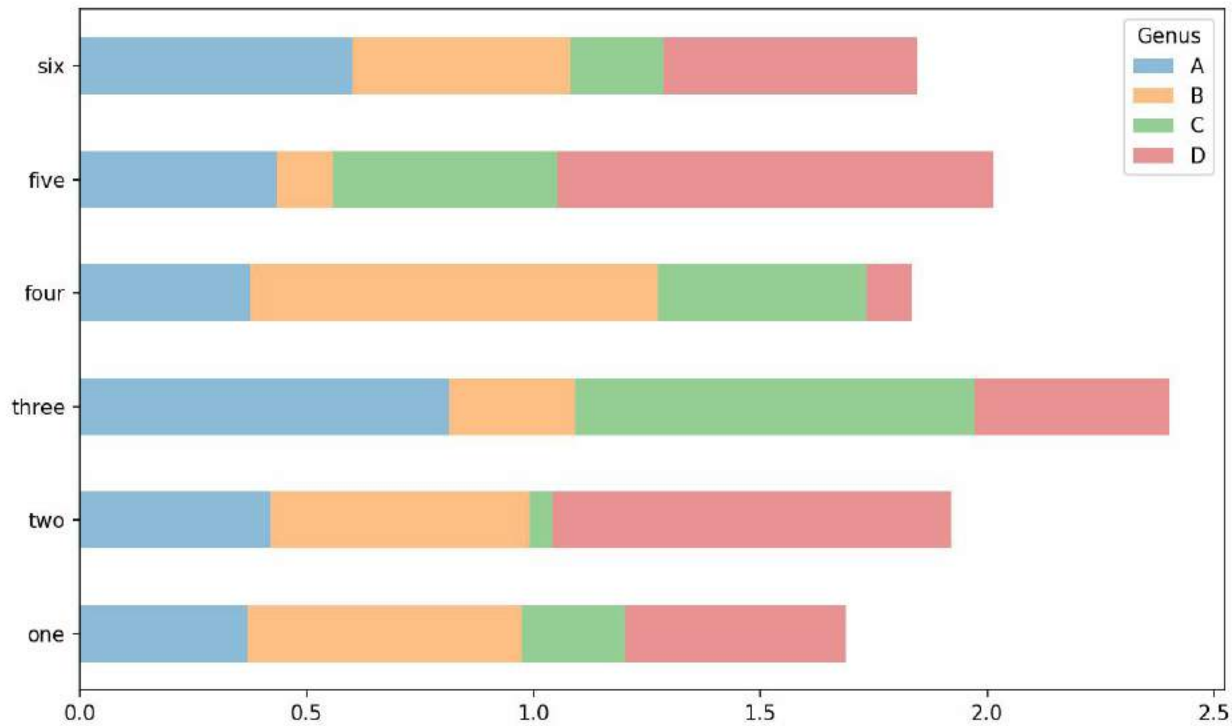


Figure 9-17. DataFrame stacked bar plot

> **NOTE**
>
> A useful recipe for bar plots is to visualize a Series's value frequency using `value_counts`: `s.value_counts().plot.bar()`.

Returning to the tipping dataset used earlier in the book, suppose we wanted to make a stacked bar plot showing the percentage of data points for each party size on each day. I load the data using `read_csv` and make a cross-tabulation by day and party size:

```
In [75]: tips = pd.read_csv('examples/tips.csv')

In [76]: party_counts = pd.crosstab(tips['day'], tips['size'])

In [77]: party_counts
Out[77]:
size  1   2   3   4  5  6
day
Fri   1  16   1   1  0  0
Sat   2  53  18  13  1  0
Sun   0  39  15  18  3  1
Thur  1  48   4   5  1  3

# Not many 1- and 6-person parties
In [78]: party_counts = party_counts.loc[:, 2:5]
```

Then, normalize so that each row sums to 1 and make the plot (see Figure 9-18):

```
# Normalize to sum to 1
In [79]: party_pcts = party_counts.div(party_counts.sum(1), axis=0)

In [80]: party_pcts
Out[80]:
size         2         3         4         5
day
Fri   0.888889  0.055556  0.055556  0.000000
Sat   0.623529  0.211765  0.152941  0.011765
Sun   0.520000  0.200000  0.240000  0.040000
Thur  0.827586  0.068966  0.086207  0.017241

In [81]: party_pcts.plot.bar()
```

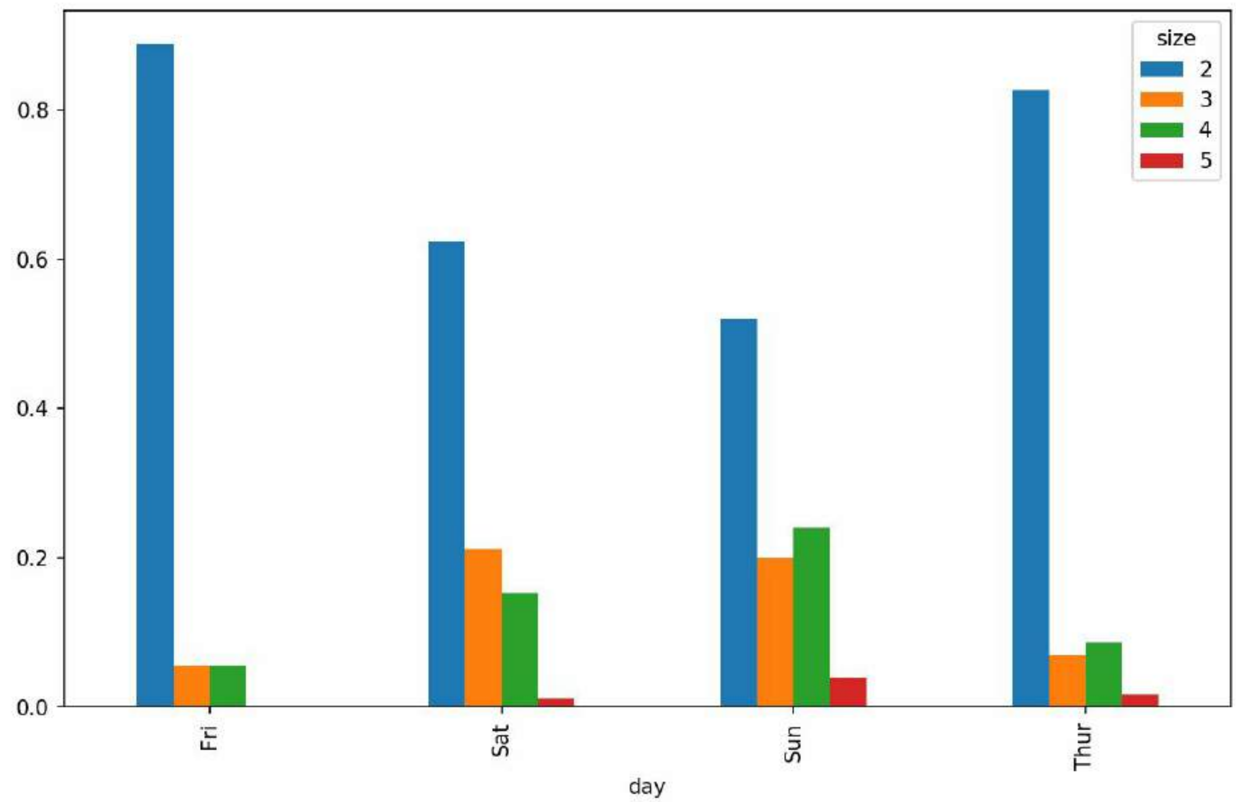


Figure 9-18. Fraction of parties by size on each day

So you can see that party sizes appear to increase on the weekend in this dataset.

With data that requires aggregation or summarization before making a plot, using the `seaborn` package can make things much simpler. Let's look now at the tipping percentage by day with seaborn (see Figure 9-19 for the resulting plot):

```
In [83]: import seaborn as sns

In [84]: tips['tip_pct'] = tips['tip'] / (tips['total_bill'] - tips['tip'])

In [85]: tips.head()
Out[85]:
   total_bill   tip smoker  day    time  size   tip_pct
0       16.99  1.01     No  Sun  Dinner     2  0.063204
1       10.34  1.66     No  Sun  Dinner     3  0.191244
2       21.01  3.50     No  Sun  Dinner     3  0.199886
3       23.68  3.31     No  Sun  Dinner     2  0.162494
4       24.59  3.61     No  Sun  Dinner     4  0.172069
```

```
In [86]: sns.barplot(x='tip_pct', y='day', data=tips, orient='h')
```

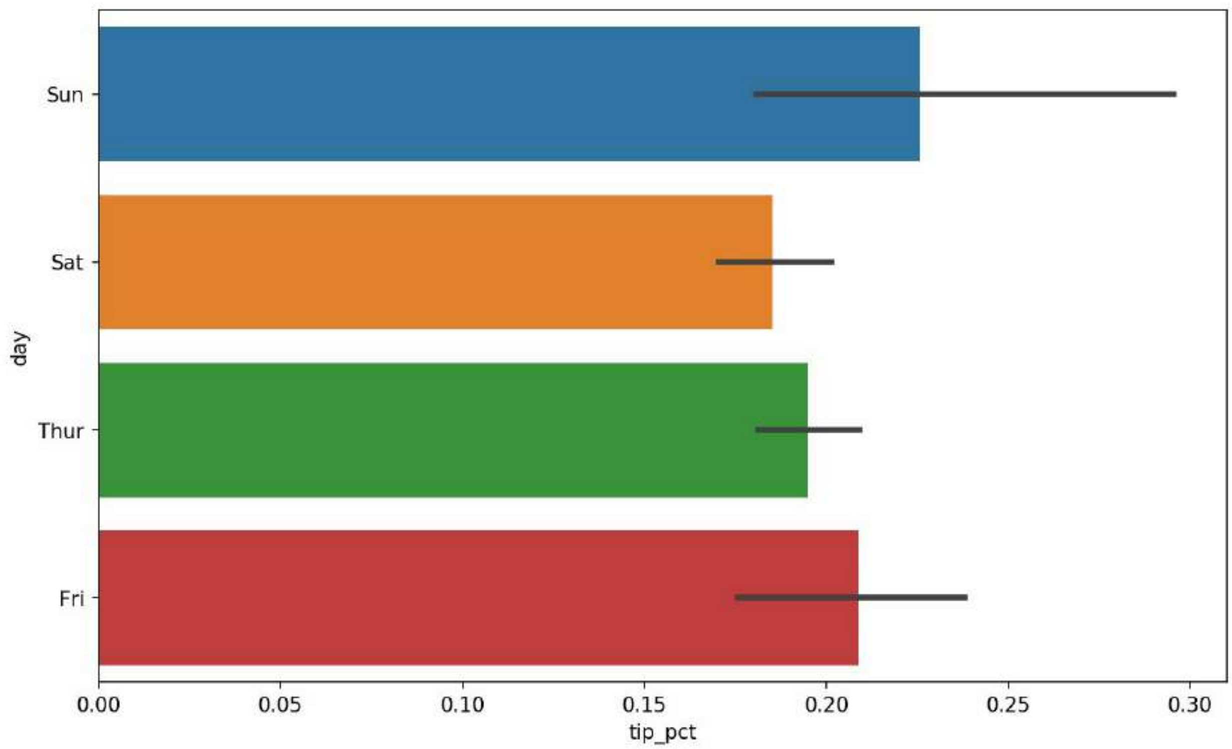


Figure 9-19. Tipping percentage by day with error bars

Plotting functions in seaborn take a `data` argument, which can be a pandas DataFrame. The other arguments refer to column names. Because there are multiple observations for each value in the `day`, the bars are the average value of `tip_pct`. The black lines drawn on the bars represent the 95% confidence interval (this can be configured through optional arguments).

`seaborn.barplot` has a `hue` option that enables us to split by an additional categorical value (Figure 9-20):

```
In [88]: sns.barplot(x='tip_pct', y='day', hue='time', data=tips, orient='h')
```

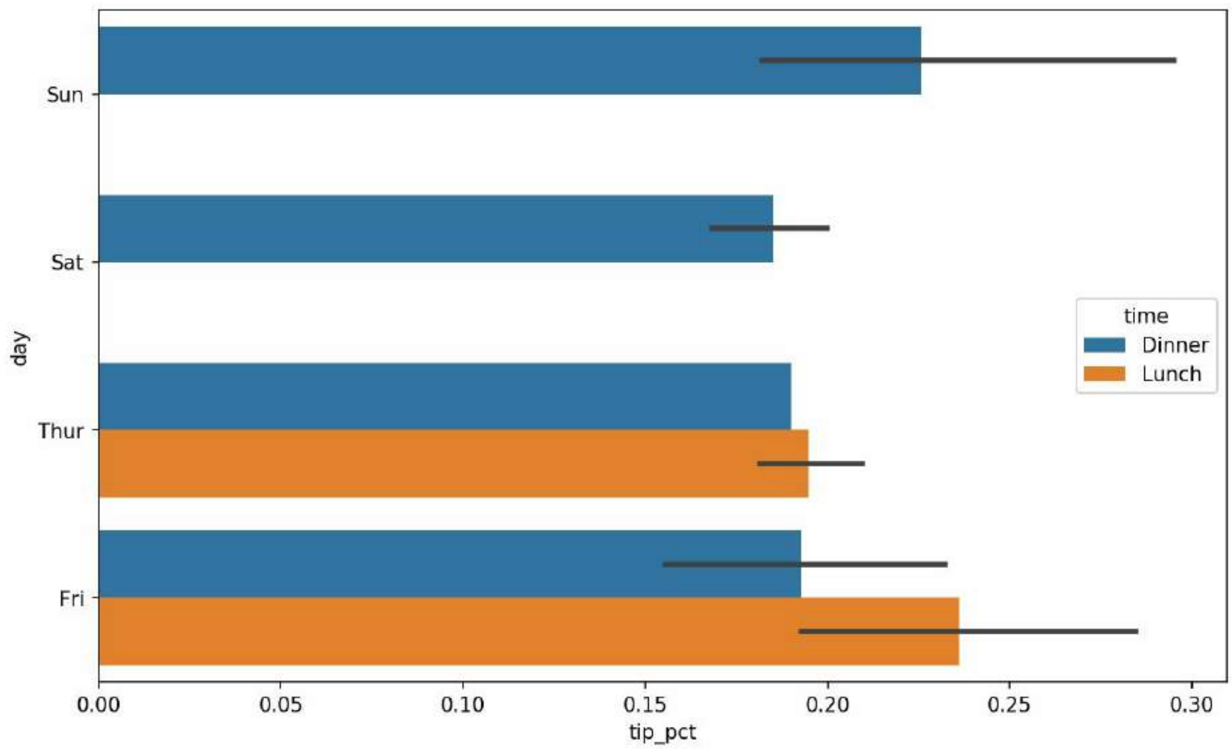


Figure 9-20. Tipping percentage by day and time

Notice that seaborn has automatically changed the aesthetics of plots: the default color palette, plot background, and grid line colors. You can switch between different plot appearances using `seaborn.set`:

```
In [90]: sns.set(style="whitegrid")
```

Histograms and Density Plots

A histogram is a kind of bar plot that gives a discretized display of value frequency. The data points are split into discrete, evenly spaced bins, and the number of data points in each bin is plotted. Using the tipping data from before, we can make a histogram of tip percentages of the total bill using the `plot.hist` method on the Series (see Figure 9-21):

```
In [92]: tips['tip_pct'].plot.hist(bins=50)
```

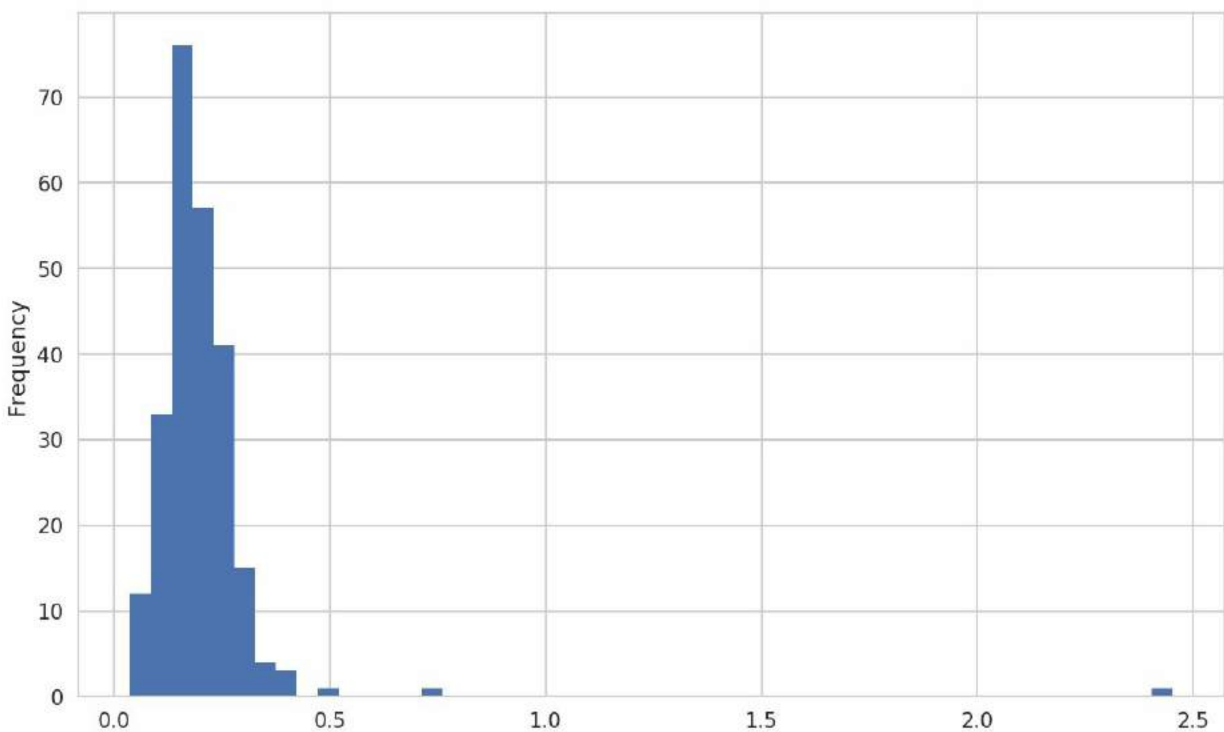


Figure 9-21. Histogram of tip percentages

A related plot type is a *density plot*, which is formed by computing an estimate of a continuous probability distribution that might have generated the observed data. The usual procedure is to approximate this distribution as a mixture of “kernels” — that is, simpler distributions like the normal distribution. Thus, density plots are also known as kernel density estimate (KDE) plots. Using `plot.kde` makes a density plot using the conventional mixture-of-normals estimate (see Figure 9-22):

```
In [94]: tips['tip_pct'].plot.density()
```

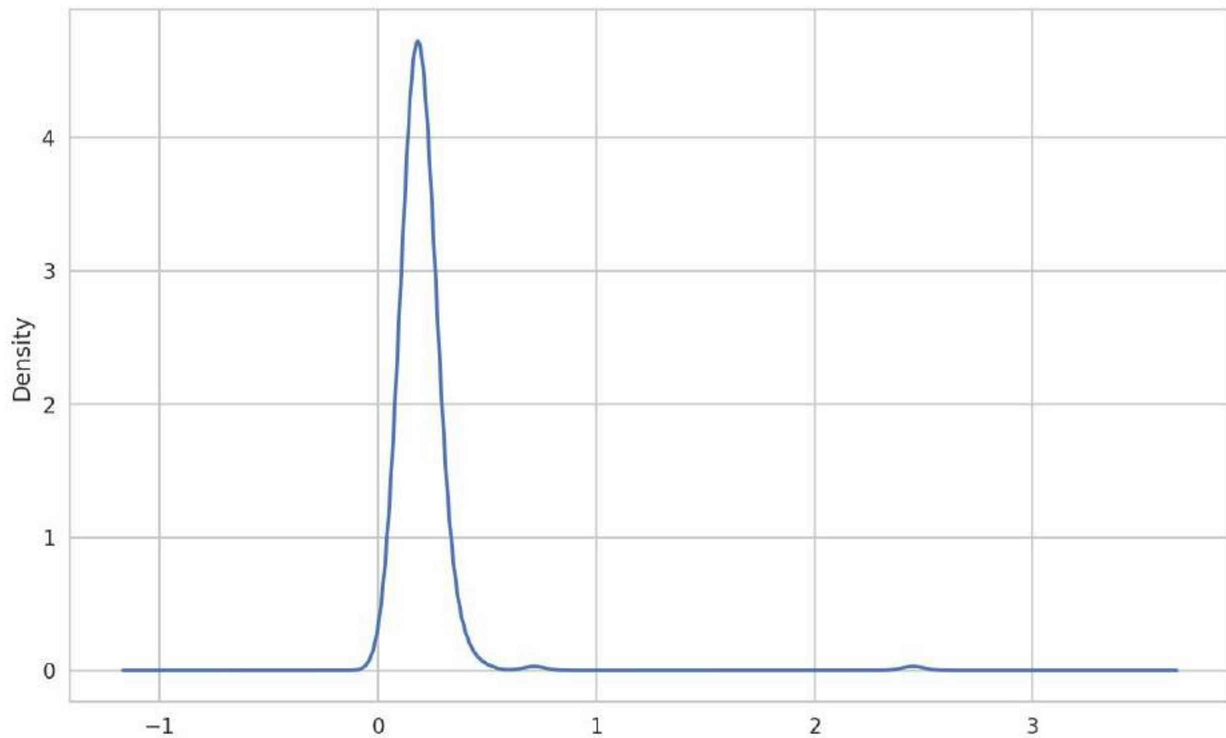


Figure 9-22. Density plot of tip percentages

Seaborn makes histograms and density plots even easier through its `distplot` method, which can plot both a histogram and a continuous density estimate simultaneously. As an example, consider a bimodal distribution consisting of draws from two different standard normal distributions (see Figure 9-23):

```
In [96]: comp1 = np.random.normal(0, 1, size=200)

In [97]: comp2 = np.random.normal(10, 2, size=200)

In [98]: values = pd.Series(np.concatenate([comp1, comp2]))

In [99]: sns.distplot(values, bins=100, color='k')
```

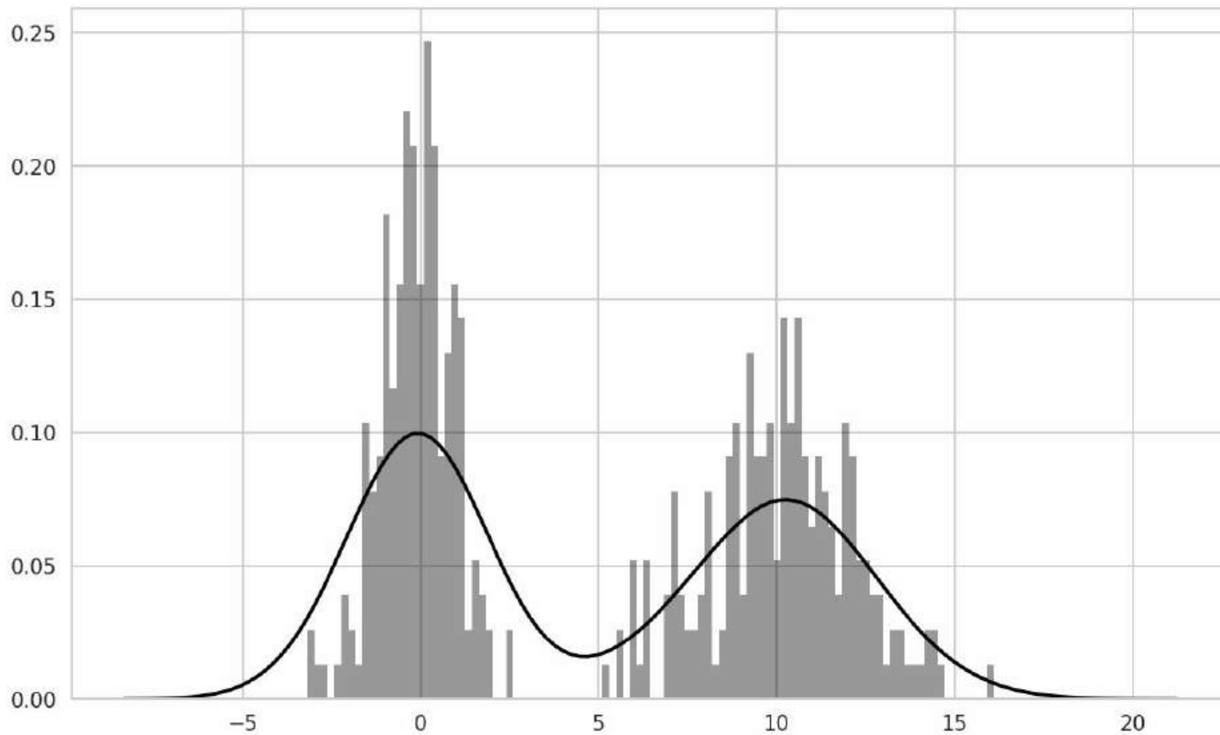


Figure 9-23. Normalized histogram of normal mixture with density estimate

Scatter or Point Plots

Point plots or scatter plots can be a useful way of examining the relationship between two one-dimensional data series. For example, here we load the `macrodata` dataset from the statsmodels project, select a few variables, then compute log differences:

```
In [100]: macro = pd.read_csv('examples/macrodata.csv')

In [101]: data = macro[['cpi', 'm1', 'tbilrate', 'unemp']]

In [102]: trans_data = np.log(data).diff().dropna()

In [103]: trans_data[-5:]
Out[103]:
          cpi        m1  tbilrate     unemp
198 -0.007904  0.045361 -0.396881  0.105361
199 -0.021979  0.066753 -2.277267  0.139762
200  0.002340  0.010286  0.606136  0.160343
201  0.008419  0.037461 -0.200671  0.127339
202  0.008894  0.012202 -0.405465  0.042560
```

We can then use seaborn's `regplot` method, which makes a scatter plot and fits a linear regression line (see Figure 9-24):

```
In [105]: sns.regplot('m1', 'unemp', data=trans_data)
Out[105]: <matplotlib.axes._subplots.AxesSubplot at 0x7fb613720be0>

In [106]: plt.title('Changes in log %s versus log %s' % ('m1', 'unemp'))
```

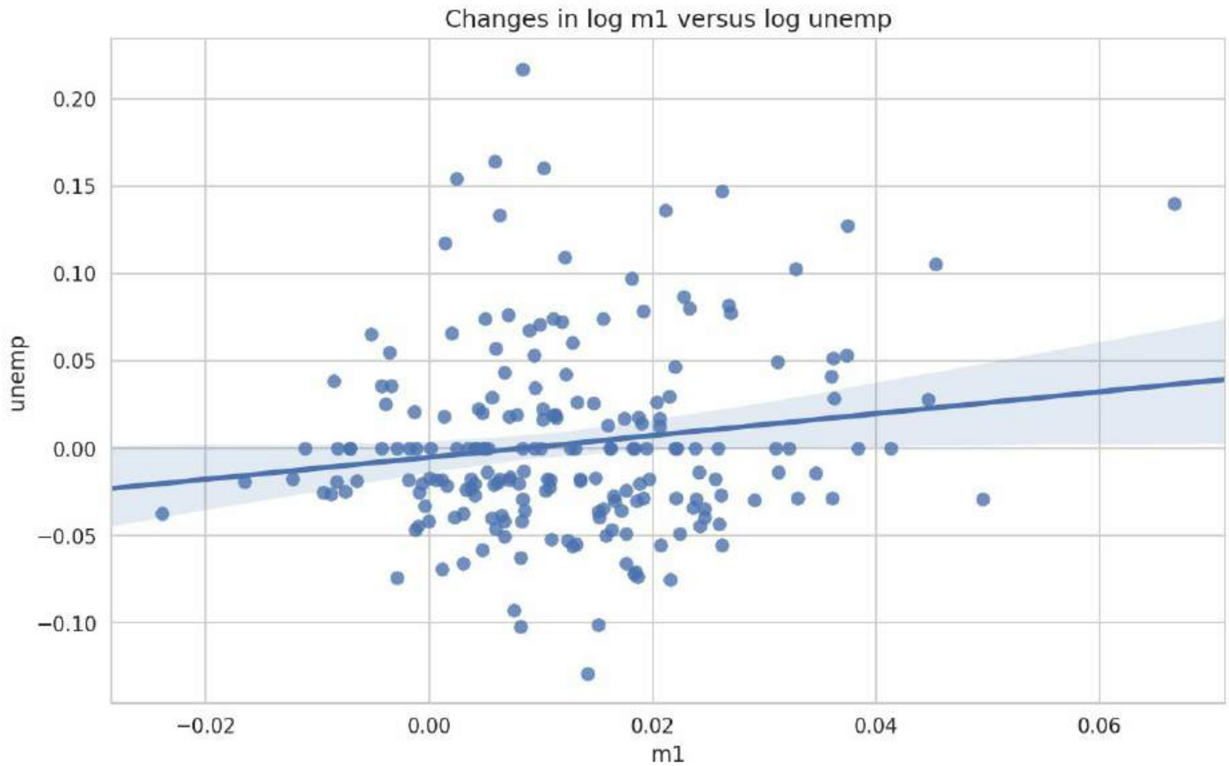


Figure 9-24. A seaborn regression/scatter plot

In exploratory data analysis it's helpful to be able to look at all the scatter plots among a group of variables; this is known as a *pairs* plot or *scatter plot matrix*. Making such a plot from scratch is a bit of work, so seaborn has a convenient `pairplot` function, which supports placing histograms or density estimates of each variable along the diagonal (see Figure 9-25 for the resulting plot):

```
In [107]: sns.pairplot(trans_data, diag_kind='kde', plot_kws={'alpha': 0.2})
```

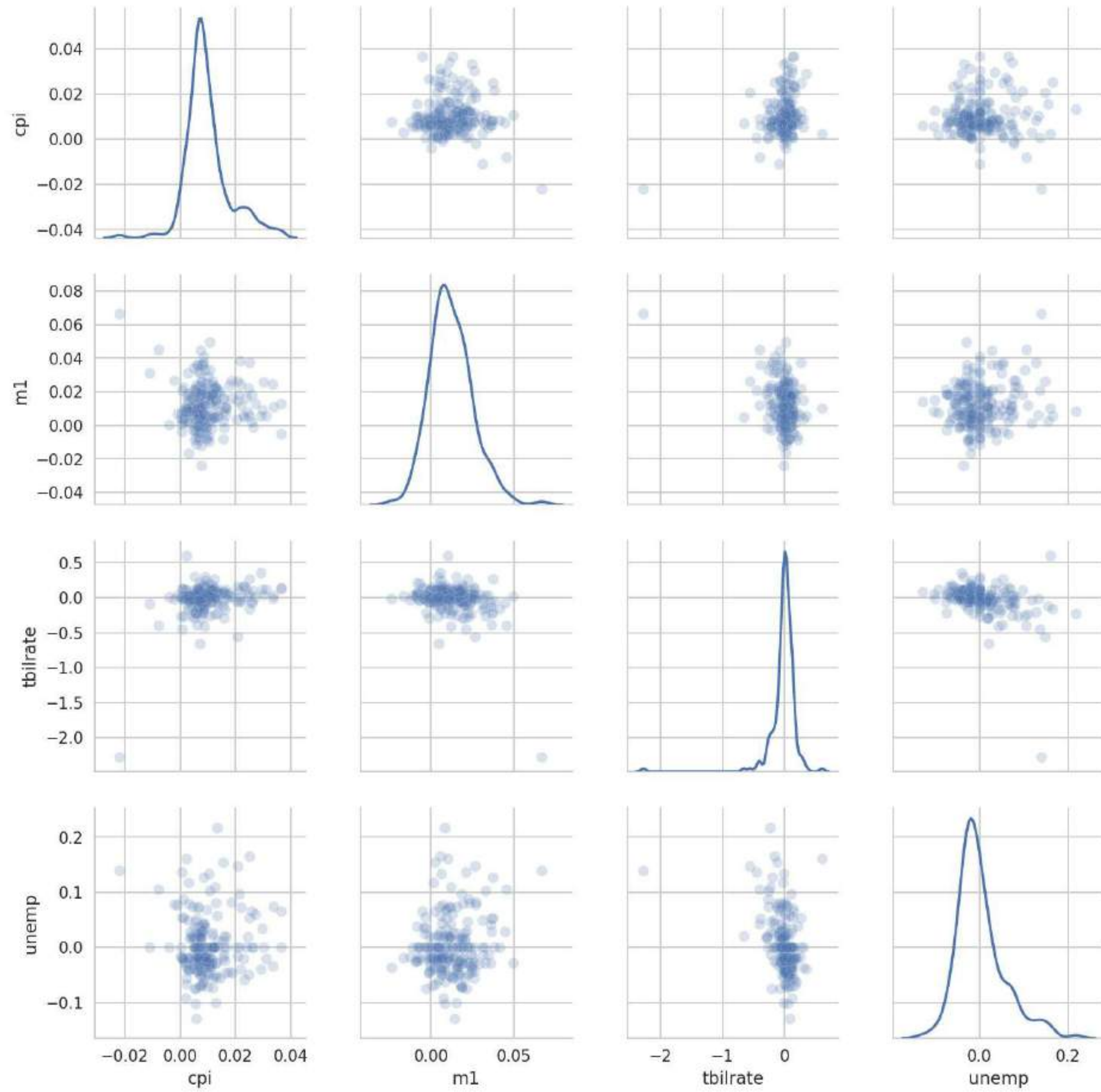


Figure 9-25. Pair plot matrix of statsmodels macro data

You may notice the `plot_kws` argument. This enables us to pass down configuration options to the individual plotting calls on the off-diagonal elements. Check out the `seaborn.pairplot` docstring for more granular configuration options.

Facet Grids and Categorical Data

What about datasets where we have additional grouping dimensions? One way to visualize data with many categorical variables is to use a *facet grid*. Seaborn has a useful built-in function `factorplot` that simplifies making many kinds of faceted plots (see Figure 9-26 for the resulting plot):

```
In [108]: sns.factorplot(x='day', y='tip_pct', hue='time', col='smoker',
   .....:                kind='bar', data=tips[tips.tip_pct < 1])
```

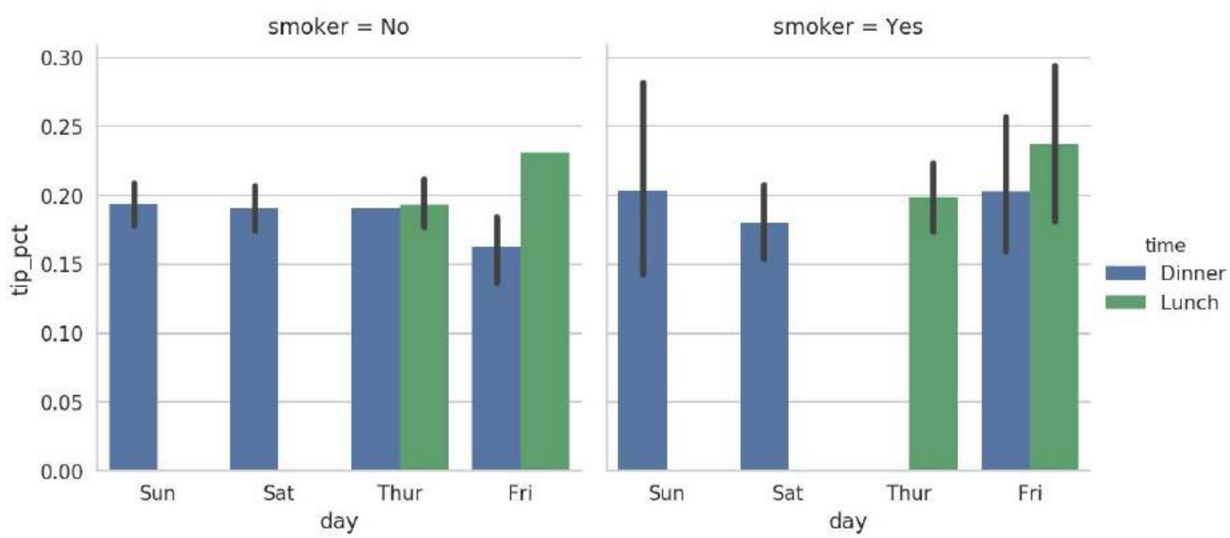


Figure 9-26. Tipping percentage by day/time/smoker

Instead of grouping by `'time'` by different bar colors within a facet, we can also expand the facet grid by adding one row per `time` value (Figure 9-27):

```
In [109]: sns.factorplot(x='day', y='tip_pct', row='time',
   .....:                col='smoker',
   .....:                kind='bar', data=tips[tips.tip_pct < 1])
```

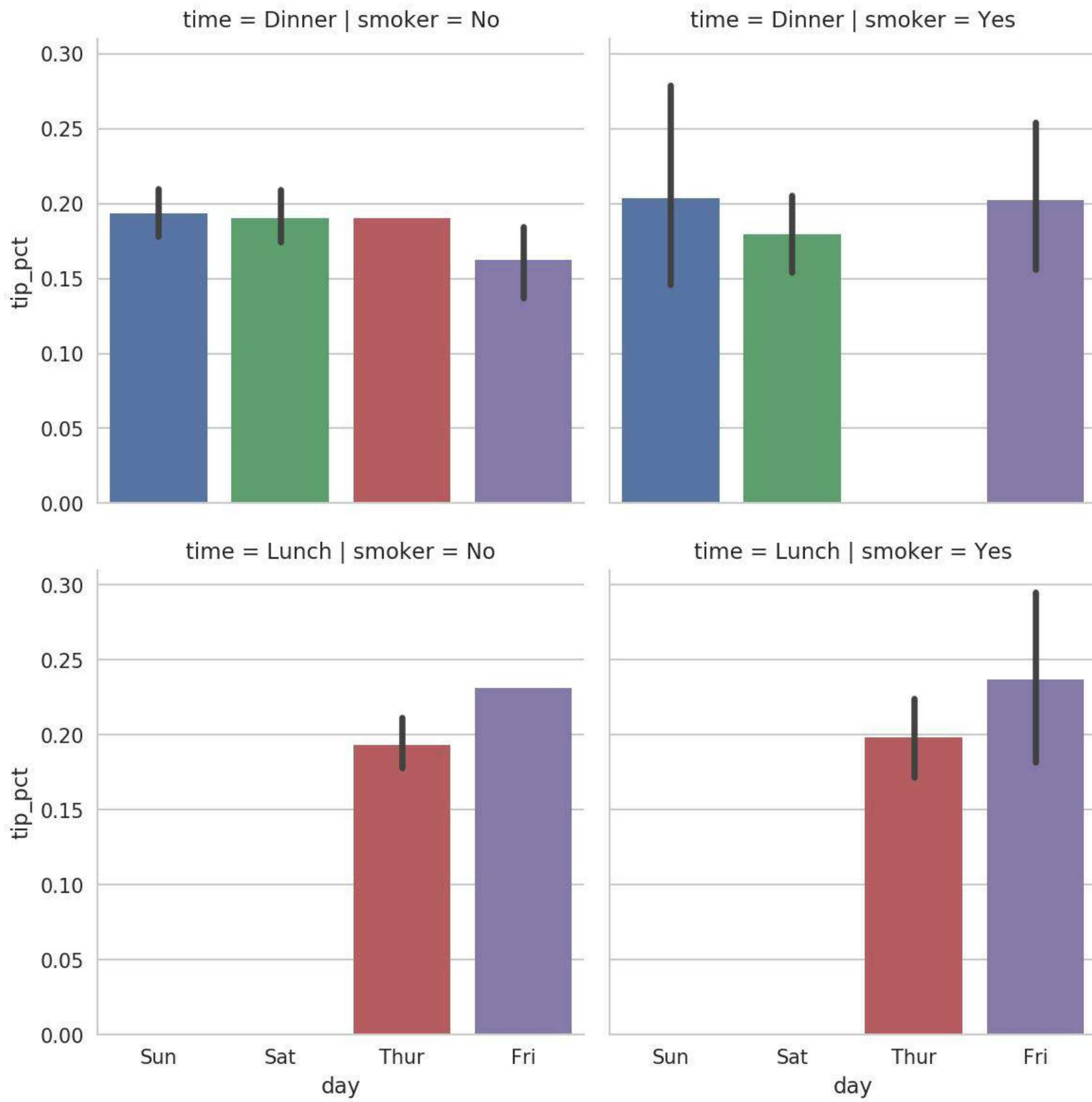


Figure 9-27. tip_pct by day; facet by time/smoker

`factorplot` supports other plot types that may be useful depending on what you are trying to display. For example, box plots (which show the median, quartiles, and outliers) can be an effective visualization type (Figure 9-28):

```
In [110]: sns.factorplot(x='tip_pct', y='day', kind='box',
   .....:                data=tips[tips.tip_pct < 0.5])
```

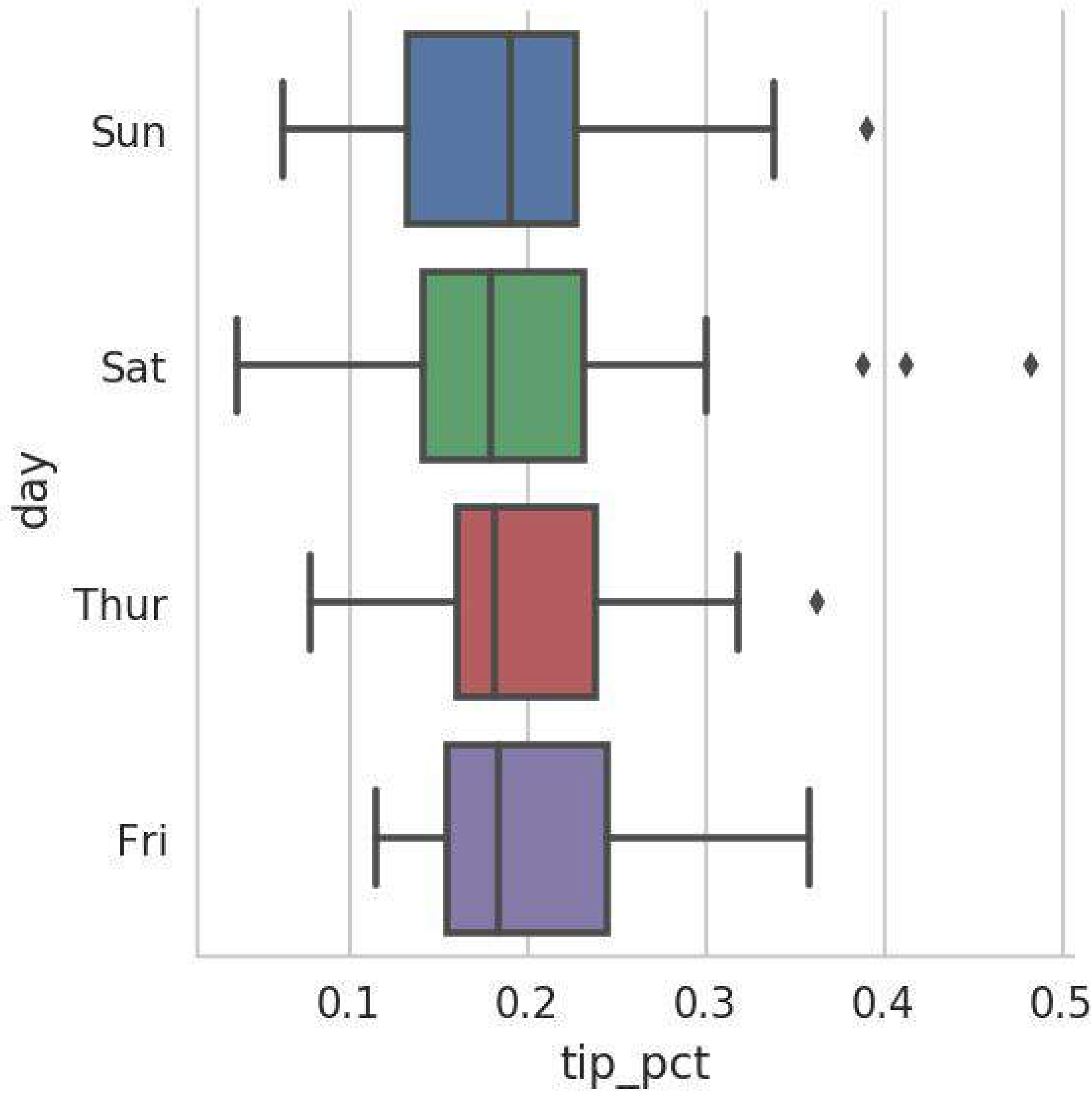


Figure 9-28. Box plot of tip_pct by day

You can create your own facet grid plots using the more general `seaborn.FacetGrid` class. See the seaborn documentation for more.

9.3 Other Python Visualization Tools

As is common with open source, there are a plethora of options for creating graphics in Python (too many to list). Since 2010, much development effort has been focused on creating interactive graphics for publication on the web. With tools like Bokeh and Plotly, it's now possible to specify dynamic, interactive graphics in Python that are destined for a web browser.

For creating static graphics for print or web, I recommend defaulting to matplotlib and add-on libraries like pandas and seaborn for your needs. For other data visualization requirements, it may be useful to learn one of the other available tools out there. I encourage you to explore the ecosystem as it continues to involve and innovate into the future.

9.4 Conclusion

The goal of this chapter was to get your feet wet with some basic data visualization using pandas, matplotlib, and seaborn. If visually communicating the results of data analysis is important in your work, I encourage you to seek out resources to learn more about effective data visualization. It is an active field of research and you can practice with many excellent learning resources available online and in print form.

In the next chapter, we turn our attention to data aggregation and group operations with pandas.

Chapter 10. Data Aggregation and Group Operations

Categorizing a dataset and applying a function to each group, whether an aggregation or transformation, is often a critical component of a data analysis workflow. After loading, merging, and preparing a dataset, you may need to compute group statistics or possibly *pivot tables* for reporting or visualization purposes. pandas provides a flexible `groupby` interface, enabling you to slice, dice, and summarize datasets in a natural way.

One reason for the popularity of relational databases and SQL (which stands for "structured query language") is the ease with which data can be joined, filtered, transformed, and aggregated. However, query languages like SQL are somewhat constrained in the kinds of group operations that can be performed. As you will see, with the expressiveness of Python and pandas, we can perform quite complex group operations by utilizing any function that accepts a pandas object or NumPy array. In this chapter, you will learn how to:

- Split a pandas object into pieces using one or more keys (in the form of functions, arrays, or DataFrame column names)
- Calculate group summary statistics, like count, mean, or standard deviation, or a user-defined function
- Apply within-group transformations or other manipulations, like normalization, linear regression, rank, or subset selection
- Compute pivot tables and cross-tabulations
- Perform quantile analysis and other statistical group analyses

NOTE

Aggregation of time series data, a special use case of `groupby`, is referred to as *resampling* in this book and will receive separate treatment in Chapter 11.

10.1 GroupBy Mechanics

Hadley Wickham, an author of many popular packages for the R programming language, coined the term *split-apply-combine* for describing group operations. In the first stage of the process, data contained in a pandas object, whether a Series, DataFrame, or otherwise, is *split* into groups based on one or more *keys* that you provide. The splitting is performed on a particular axis of an object. For example, a DataFrame can be grouped on its rows (`axis=0`) or its columns (`axis=1`). Once this is done, a function is *applied* to each group, producing a new value. Finally, the results of all those function applications are *combined* into a result object. The form of the resulting object will usually depend on what's being done to the data. See Figure 10-1 for a mockup of a simple group aggregation.

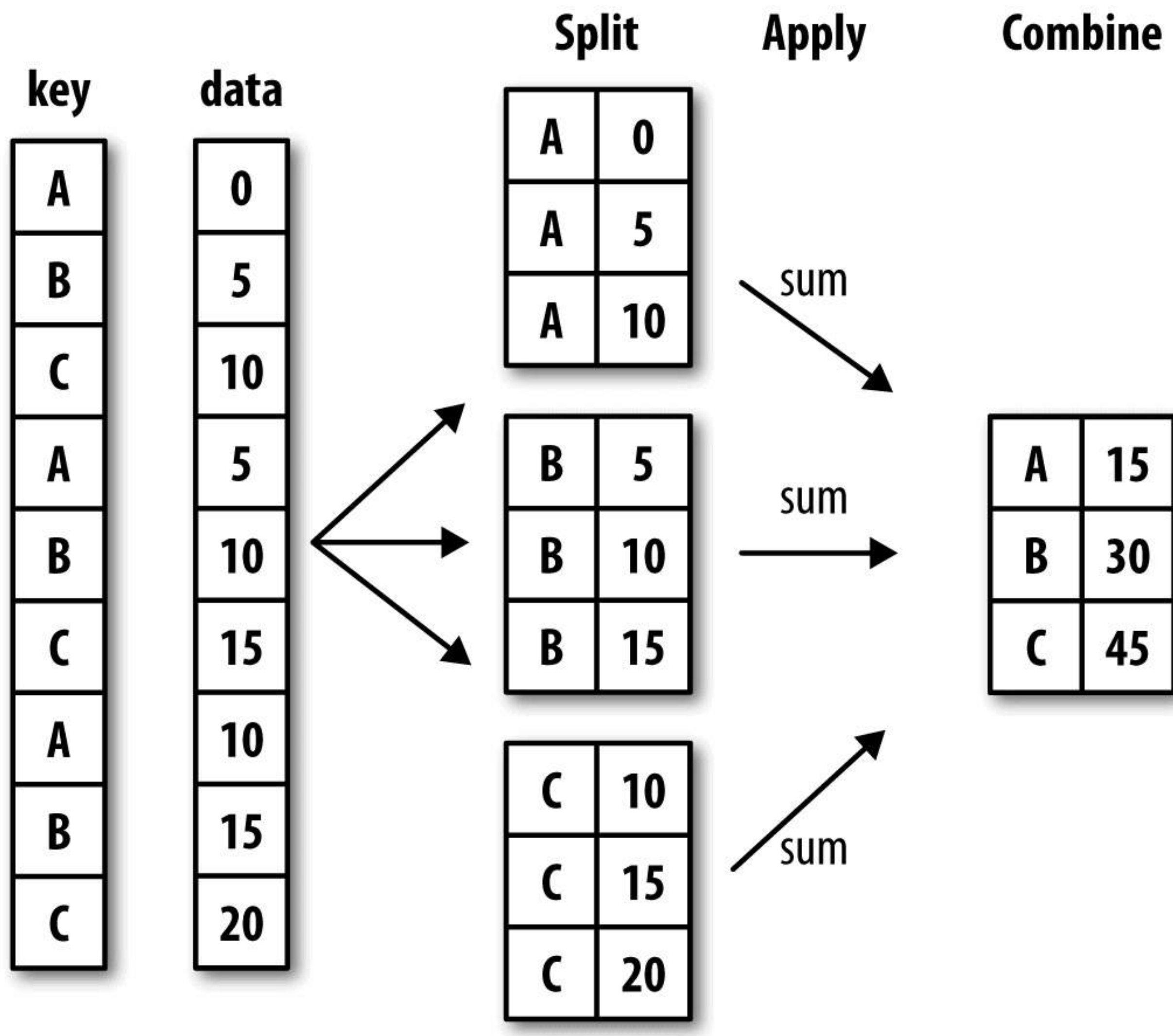


Figure 10-1. Illustration of a group aggregation

Each grouping key can take many forms, and the keys do not have to be all of the same type:

- A list or array of values that is the same length as the axis being grouped
- A value indicating a column name in a DataFrame
- A dict or Series giving a correspondence between the values on the axis being grouped and the group names
- A function to be invoked on the axis index or the individual labels in the index

Note that the latter three methods are shortcuts for producing an array of values to be used to split up the object. Don't worry if this all seems abstract. Throughout this chapter, I will give many examples of all these methods. To get started, here is a small tabular dataset as a DataFrame:

```
In [10]: df = pd.DataFrame({'key1' : ['a', 'a', 'b', 'b', 'a'],
   ....:                    'key2' : ['one', 'two', 'one', 'two', 'one'],
   ....:                    'data1' : np.random.randn(5),
   ....:                    'data2' : np.random.randn(5)})

In [11]: df
Out[11]:
      data1     data2 key1 key2
0 -0.204708  1.393406    a  one
1  0.478943  0.092908    a  two
2 -0.519439  0.281746    b  one
3 -0.555730  0.769023    b  two
4  1.965781  1.246435    a  one
```

Suppose you wanted to compute the mean of the `data1` column using the labels from `key1`. There are a number of ways to do this. One is to access `data1` and call `groupby` with the column (a Series) at `key1`:

```
In [12]: grouped = df['data1'].groupby(df['key1'])

In [13]: grouped
Out[13]: <pandas.core.groupby.SeriesGroupBy object at 0x7faa31537390>
```

This `grouped` variable is now a *GroupBy* object. It has not actually computed anything yet except for some intermediate data about the group key `df['key1']`. The idea is that this object has all of the information needed to then apply some operation to each of the groups. For example, to compute group means we can call the GroupBy's `mean` method:

```
In [14]: grouped.mean()
Out[14]:
key1
a    0.746672
b   -0.537585
Name: data1, dtype: float64
```

Later, I'll explain more about what happens when you call `.mean()`. The important thing here is that the data (a Series) has been aggregated according to the group key, producing a new Series that is now indexed by the unique values in the `key1` column. The result index has the name `'key1'` because the DataFrame column `df['key1']` did.

If instead we had passed multiple arrays as a list, we'd get something different:

```
In [15]: means = df['data1'].groupby([df['key1'], df['key2']]).mean()

In [16]: means
Out[16]:
key1  key2
a     one     0.880536
      two     0.478943
b     one    -0.519439
      two    -0.555730
Name: data1, dtype: float64
```

Here we grouped the data using two keys, and the resulting Series now has a hierarchical index consisting of the unique pairs of keys observed:

```
In [17]: means.unstack()
Out[17]:
key2       one       two
key1
a     0.880536  0.478943
b    -0.519439 -0.555730
```

In this example, the group keys are all Series, though they could be any arrays of the right length:

```
In [18]: states = np.array(['Ohio', 'California', 'California', 'Ohio',
'Ohio'])

In [19]: years = np.array([2005, 2005, 2006, 2005, 2006])

In [20]: df['data1'].groupby([states, years]).mean()
Out[20]:
California  2005    0.478943
            2006   -0.519439
Ohio        2005   -0.380219
            2006    1.965781
Name: data1, dtype: float64
```

Frequently the grouping information is found in the same DataFrame as the data you want to work on. In that case, you can pass column names (whether those are strings, numbers, or other Python objects) as the group keys:

```
In [21]: df.groupby('key1').mean()
Out[21]:
         data1     data2
key1
a     0.746672  0.910916
b    -0.537585  0.525384

In [22]: df.groupby(['key1', 'key2']).mean()
Out[22]:
              data1     data2
key1 key2
a    one   0.880536  1.319920
     two   0.478943  0.092908
b    one  -0.519439  0.281746
     two  -0.555730  0.769023
```

You may have noticed in the first case `df.groupby('key1').mean()` that there is no `key2` column in the result. Because `df['key2']` is not numeric data, it is said to be a *nuisance column*, which is therefore excluded from the result. By default, all of the numeric columns are aggregated, though it is possible to filter down to a subset, as you'll see soon.

Regardless of the objective in using `groupby`, a generally useful GroupBy method is `size`, which returns a Series containing group sizes:

```
In [23]: df.groupby(['key1', 'key2']).size()
Out[23]:
key1  key2
a     one     2
      two     1
b     one     1
      two     1
dtype: int64
```

Take note that any missing values in a group key will be excluded from the result.

Iterating Over Groups

The GroupBy object supports iteration, generating a sequence of 2-tuples containing the group name along with the chunk of data. Consider the following:

```
In [24]: for name, group in df.groupby('key1'):
   ....:     print(name)
   ....:     print(group)
   ....:
a
      data1     data2 key1 key2
0 -0.204708  1.393406    a  one
1  0.478943  0.092908    a  two
4  1.965781  1.246435    a  one
b
      data1     data2 key1 key2
2 -0.519439  0.281746    b  one
3 -0.555730  0.769023    b  two
```

In the case of multiple keys, the first element in the tuple will be a tuple of key values:

```
In [25]: for (k1, k2), group in df.groupby(['key1', 'key2']):
   ....:     print((k1, k2))
   ....:     print(group)
   ....:
('a', 'one')
      data1     data2 key1 key2
0 -0.204708  1.393406    a  one
4  1.965781  1.246435    a  one
('a', 'two')
      data1     data2 key1 key2
1  0.478943  0.092908    a  two
('b', 'one')
      data1     data2 key1 key2
2 -0.519439  0.281746    b  one
('b', 'two')
     data1     data2 key1 key2
3 -0.55573  0.769023    b  two
```

Of course, you can choose to do whatever you want with the pieces of data. A recipe you may find useful is computing a dict of the data pieces as a one-liner:

```
In [26]: pieces = dict(list(df.groupby('key1')))
```

```
In [27]: pieces['b']
Out[27]:
      data1     data2 key1 key2
2 -0.519439  0.281746    b  one
3 -0.555730  0.769023    b  two
```

By default `groupby` groups on `axis=0`, but you can group on any of the other axes. For example, we could group the columns of our example `df` here by `dtype` like so:

```
In [28]: df.dtypes
Out[28]:
data1    float64
data2    float64
key1      object
key2      object
dtype: object

In [29]: grouped = df.groupby(df.dtypes, axis=1)
```

We can print out the groups like so:

```
In [30]: for dtype, group in grouped:
   ....:     print(dtype)
   ....:     print(group)
   ....:
float64
      data1     data2
0 -0.204708  1.393406
1  0.478943  0.092908
2 -0.519439  0.281746
3 -0.555730  0.769023
4  1.965781  1.246435
object
  key1 key2
0    a  one
1    a  two
2    b  one
3    b  two
4    a  one
```

Selecting a Column or Subset of Columns

Indexing a GroupBy object created from a DataFrame with a column name or array of column names has the effect of column subsetting for aggregation. This means that:

```
df.groupby('key1')['data1']
df.groupby('key1')[['data2']]
```

are syntactic sugar for:

```
df['data1'].groupby(df['key1'])
df[['data2']].groupby(df['key1'])
```

Especially for large datasets, it may be desirable to aggregate only a few columns. For example, in the preceding dataset, to compute means for just the `data2` column and get the result as a DataFrame, we could write:

```
In [31]: df.groupby(['key1', 'key2'])[['data2']].mean()
Out[31]:
              data2
key1 key2
a    one   1.319920
     two   0.092908
b    one   0.281746
     two   0.769023
```

The object returned by this indexing operation is a grouped DataFrame if a list or array is passed or a grouped Series if only a single column name is passed as a scalar:

```
In [32]: s_grouped = df.groupby(['key1', 'key2'])['data2']

In [33]: s_grouped
Out[33]: <pandas.core.groupby.SeriesGroupBy object at 0x7faa30c78da0>

In [34]: s_grouped.mean()
Out[34]:
key1  key2
a     one     1.319920
      two     0.092908
b     one     0.281746
      two     0.769023
```

```
Name: data2, dtype: float64
```

Grouping with Dicts and Series

Grouping information may exist in a form other than an array. Let's consider another example DataFrame:

```
In [35]: people = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(5, 5),
   ....:                       columns=['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'],
   ....:                       index=['Joe', 'Steve', 'Wes', 'Jim',
'Travis'])

In [36]: people.iloc[2:3, [1, 2]] = np.nan # Add a few NA values

In [37]: people
Out[37]:
               a         b         c         d         e
Joe     1.007189 -1.296221  0.274992  0.228913  1.352917
Steve   0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843  1.669025 -0.438570
Wes    -0.539741       NaN       NaN -1.021228 -0.577087
Jim     0.124121  0.302614  0.523772  0.000940  1.343810
Travis -0.713544 -0.831154 -2.370232 -1.860761 -0.860757
```

Now, suppose I have a group correspondence for the columns and want to sum together the columns by group:

```
In [38]: mapping = {'a': 'red', 'b': 'red', 'c': 'blue',
   ....:            'd': 'blue', 'e': 'red', 'f' : 'orange'}
```

Now, you could construct an array from this dict to pass to `groupby`, but instead we can just pass the dict (I included the key `'f'` to highlight that unused grouping keys are OK):

```
In [39]: by_column = people.groupby(mapping, axis=1)

In [40]: by_column.sum()
Out[40]:
            blue       red
Joe     0.503905  1.063885
Steve   1.297183 -1.553778
Wes    -1.021228 -1.116829
Jim     0.524712  1.770545
Travis -4.230992 -2.405455
```

The same functionality holds for Series, which can be viewed as a fixed-size mapping:

```
In [41]: map_series = pd.Series(mapping)

In [42]: map_series
Out[42]:
a       red
b       red
c      blue
d      blue
e       red
f    orange
dtype: object

In [43]: people.groupby(map_series, axis=1).count()
Out[43]:
        blue  red
Joe        2    3
Steve      2    3
Wes        1    2
Jim        2    3
Travis     2    3
```

Grouping with Functions

Using Python functions is a more generic way of defining a group mapping compared with a dict or Series. Any function passed as a group key will be called once per index value, with the return values being used as the group names. More concretely, consider the example DataFrame from the previous section, which has people's first names as index values. Suppose you wanted to group by the length of the names; while you could compute an array of string lengths, it's simpler to just pass the `len` function:

```
In [44]: people.groupby(len).sum()
Out[44]:
          a         b         c         d         e
3  0.591569 -0.993608  0.798764 -0.791374  2.119639
5  0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843  1.669025 -0.438570
6 -0.713544 -0.831154 -2.370232 -1.860761 -0.860757
```

Mixing functions with arrays, dicts, or Series is not a problem as everything gets converted to arrays internally:

```
In [45]: key_list = ['one', 'one', 'one', 'two', 'two']

In [46]: people.groupby([len, key_list]).min()
Out[46]:
              a         b         c         d         e
3 one -0.539741 -1.296221  0.274992 -1.021228 -0.577087
  two  0.124121  0.302614  0.523772  0.000940  1.343810
5 one  0.886429 -2.001637 -0.371843  1.669025 -0.438570
6 two -0.713544 -0.831154 -2.370232 -1.860761 -0.860757
```

Grouping by Index Levels

A final convenience for hierarchically indexed datasets is the ability to aggregate using one of the levels of an axis index. Let's look at an example:

```
In [47]: columns = pd.MultiIndex.from_arrays([['US', 'US', 'US', 'JP', 'JP'],
   ....:                                     [1, 3, 5, 1, 3]],
   ....:                                     names=['cty', 'tenor'])

In [48]: hier_df = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(4, 5), columns=columns)

In [49]: hier_df
Out[49]:
cty          US                            JP          
tenor         1         3         5         1         3
0      0.560145 -1.265934  0.119827 -1.063512  0.332883
1     -2.359419 -0.199543 -1.541996 -0.970736 -1.307030
2      0.286350  0.377984 -0.753887  0.331286  1.349742
3      0.069877  0.246674 -0.011862  1.004812  1.327195
```

To group by level, pass the level number or name using the `level` keyword:

```
In [50]: hier_df.groupby(level='cty', axis=1).count()
Out[50]:
cty  JP  US
0     2   3
1     2   3
2     2   3
3     2   3
```

10.2 Data Aggregation

Aggregations refer to any data transformation that produces scalar values from arrays. The preceding examples have used several of them, including `mean`, `count`, `min`, and `sum`. You may wonder what is going on when you invoke `mean()` on a GroupBy object. Many common aggregations, such as those found in Table 10-1, have optimized implementations. However, you are not limited to only this set of methods.

Table 10-1. Optimized groupby methods

Function name	Description
`count`	Number of non-NA values in the group
`sum`	Sum of non-NA values
`mean`	Mean of non-NA values
`median`	Arithmetic median of non-NA values
`std, var`	Unbiased (n – 1 denominator) standard deviation and variance
`min, max`	Minimum and maximum of non-NA values
`prod`	Product of non-NA values
`first, last`	First and last non-NA values

You can use aggregations of your own devising and additionally call any method that is also defined on the grouped object. For example, you might recall that `quantile` computes sample quantiles of a Series or a DataFrame's columns.

While `quantile` is not explicitly implemented for GroupBy, it is a Series method and thus available for use. Internally, GroupBy efficiently slices up the Series, calls `piece.quantile(0.9)` for each piece, and then assembles those results together into the result object:

```
In [51]: df
Out[51]:
```

```
      data1     data2 key1 key2
0 -0.204708  1.393406    a  one
1  0.478943  0.092908    a  two
2 -0.519439  0.281746    b  one
3 -0.555730  0.769023    b  two
4  1.965781  1.246435    a  one

In [52]: grouped = df.groupby('key1')

In [53]: grouped['data1'].quantile(0.9)
Out[53]:
key1
a    1.668413
b   -0.523068
Name: data1, dtype: float64
```

To use your own aggregation functions, pass any function that aggregates an array to the `aggregate` or `agg` method:

```
In [54]: def peak_to_peak(arr):
   ....:     return arr.max() - arr.min()

In [55]: grouped.agg(peak_to_peak)
Out[55]:
         data1     data2
key1
a     2.170488  1.300498
b     0.036292  0.487276
```

You may notice that some methods like `describe` also work, even though they are not aggregations, strictly speaking:

```
In [56]: grouped.describe()
Out[56]:
     data1                                                                   \
     count       mean       std       min       25%       50%       75%
key1
a      3.0  0.746672  1.109736 -0.204708  0.137118  0.478943  1.222362
b      2.0 -0.537585  0.025662 -0.555730 -0.546657 -0.537585 -0.528512
               data2                                                         \
           max count       mean       std       min       25%       50%
key1
a     1.965781   3.0  0.910916  0.712217  0.092908  0.669671  1.246435
b    -0.519439   2.0  0.525384  0.344556  0.281746  0.403565  0.525384

           75%       max
key1
a     1.319920  1.393406
b     0.647203  0.769023
```

I will explain in more detail what has happened here in Section 10.3, “Apply: General split-apply-combine,”.

> **NOTE**
>
> Custom aggregation functions are generally much slower than the optimized functions found in Table 10-1. This is because there is some extra overhead (function calls, data rearrangement) in constructing the intermediate group data chunks.

Column-Wise and Multiple Function Application

Let’s return to the tipping dataset from earlier examples. After loading it with `read_csv`, we add a tipping percentage column `tip_pct`:

```
In [57]: tips = pd.read_csv('examples/tips.csv')

# Add tip percentage of total bill
In [58]: tips['tip_pct'] = tips['tip'] / tips['total_bill']

In [59]: tips[:6]
Out[59]:
   total_bill   tip smoker  day    time  size   tip_pct
0       16.99  1.01     No  Sun  Dinner     2  0.059447
1       10.34  1.66     No  Sun  Dinner     3  0.160542
2       21.01  3.50     No  Sun  Dinner     3  0.166587
3       23.68  3.31     No  Sun  Dinner     2  0.139780
4       24.59  3.61     No  Sun  Dinner     4  0.146808
5       25.29  4.71     No  Sun  Dinner     4  0.186240
```

As you’ve already seen, aggregating a Series or all of the columns of a DataFrame is a matter of using `aggregate` with the desired function or calling a method like `mean` or `std`. However, you may want to aggregate using a different function depending on the column, or multiple functions at once. Fortunately, this is possible to do, which I’ll illustrate through a number of examples. First, I’ll group the `tips` by `day` and `smoker`:

```
In [60]: grouped = tips.groupby(['day', 'smoker'])
```

Note that for descriptive statistics like those in Table 10-1, you can pass the name of the function as a string:

```
In [61]: grouped_pct = grouped['tip_pct']

In [62]: grouped_pct.agg('mean')
Out[62]:
day   smoker
Fri   No        0.151650
      Yes       0.174783
Sat   No        0.158048
      Yes       0.147906
Sun   No        0.160113
      Yes       0.187250
Thur  No        0.160298
```

```
       Yes       0.163863
Name: tip_pct, dtype: float64
```

If you pass a list of functions or function names instead, you get back a DataFrame with column names taken from the functions:

```
In [63]: grouped_pct.agg(['mean', 'std', peak_to_peak])
Out[63]:
                 mean       std  peak_to_peak
day  smoker
Fri  No      0.151650  0.028123      0.067349
     Yes     0.174783  0.051293      0.159925
Sat  No      0.158048  0.039767      0.235193
     Yes     0.147906  0.061375      0.290095
Sun  No      0.160113  0.042347      0.193226
     Yes     0.187250  0.154134      0.644685
Thur No      0.160298  0.038774      0.193350
     Yes     0.163863  0.039389      0.151240
```

Here we passed a list of aggregation functions to `agg` to evaluate indepedently on the data groups.

You don't need to accept the names that GroupBy gives to the columns; notably, `lambda` functions have the name `'<lambda>'`, which makes them hard to identify (you can see for yourself by looking at a function's `__name__` attribute). Thus, if you pass a list of `(name, function)` tuples, the first element of each tuple will be used as the DataFrame column names (you can think of a list of 2-tuples as an ordered mapping):

```
In [64]: grouped_pct.agg([('foo', 'mean'), ('bar', np.std)])
Out[64]:
                  foo       bar
day  smoker
Fri  No      0.151650  0.028123
     Yes     0.174783  0.051293
Sat  No      0.158048  0.039767
     Yes     0.147906  0.061375
Sun  No      0.160113  0.042347
     Yes     0.187250  0.154134
Thur No      0.160298  0.038774
     Yes     0.163863  0.039389
```

With a DataFrame you have more options, as you can specify a list of functions to apply to all of the columns or different functions per column. To start, suppose we wanted to compute the same three statistics for the `tip_pct` and `total_bill` columns:

```
In [65]: functions = ['count', 'mean', 'max']

In [66]: result = grouped['tip_pct', 'total_bill'].agg(functions)

In [67]: result
Out[67]:
            tip_pct                          total_bill
              count      mean       max          count       mean    max
day  smoker
Fri  No           4  0.151650  0.187735              4  18.420000  22.75
     Yes         15  0.174783  0.263480             15  16.813333  40.17
Sat  No          45  0.158048  0.291990             45  19.661778  48.33
     Yes         42  0.147906  0.325733             42  21.276667  50.81
Sun  No          57  0.160113  0.252672             57  20.506667  48.17
     Yes         19  0.187250  0.710345             19  24.120000  45.35
Thur No          45  0.160298  0.266312             45  17.113111  41.19
     Yes         17  0.163863  0.241255             17  19.190588  43.11
```

As you can see, the resulting DataFrame has hierarchical columns, the same as you would get aggregating each column separately and using `concat` to glue the results together using the column names as the `keys` argument:

```
In [68]: result['tip_pct']
Out[68]:
             count      mean       max
day  smoker
Fri  No          4  0.151650  0.187735
     Yes        15  0.174783  0.263480
Sat  No         45  0.158048  0.291990
     Yes        42  0.147906  0.325733
Sun  No         57  0.160113  0.252672
     Yes        19  0.187250  0.710345
Thur No         45  0.160298  0.266312
     Yes        17  0.163863  0.241255
```

As before, a list of tuples with custom names can be passed:

```
In [69]: ftuples = [('Durchschnitt', 'mean'), ('Abweichung', np.var)]

In [70]: grouped['tip_pct', 'total_bill'].agg(ftuples)
Out[70]:
                 tip_pct                  total_bill
            Durchschnitt Abweichung Durchschnitt  Abweichung
day  smoker
Fri  No         0.151650   0.000791    18.420000   25.596333
     Yes        0.174783   0.002631    16.813333   82.562438
Sat  No         0.158048   0.001581    19.661778   79.908965
     Yes        0.147906   0.003767    21.276667  101.387535
```

```
Sun  No         0.160113   0.001793    20.506667   66.099980
     Yes        0.187250   0.023757    24.120000  109.046044
Thur No         0.160298   0.001503    17.113111   59.625081
     Yes        0.163863   0.001551    19.190588   69.808518
```

Now, suppose you wanted to apply potentially different functions to one or more of the columns. To do this, pass a dict to `agg` that contains a mapping of column names to any of the function specifications listed so far:

```
In [71]: grouped.agg({'tip' : np.max, 'size' : 'sum'})
Out[71]:
               tip  size
day  smoker
Fri  No       3.50     9
     Yes      4.73    31
Sat  No       9.00   115
     Yes     10.00   104
Sun  No       6.00   167
     Yes      6.50    49
Thur No       6.70   112
     Yes      5.00    40

In [72]: grouped.agg({'tip_pct' : ['min', 'max', 'mean', 'std'],
   ....:              'size' : 'sum'})
Out[72]:
              tip_pct                                     size
                  min       max      mean       std  sum
day  smoker
Fri  No      0.120385  0.187735  0.151650  0.028123    9
     Yes     0.103555  0.263480  0.174783  0.051293   31
Sat  No      0.056797  0.291990  0.158048  0.039767  115
     Yes     0.035638  0.325733  0.147906  0.061375  104
Sun  No      0.059447  0.252672  0.160113  0.042347  167
     Yes     0.065660  0.710345  0.187250  0.154134   49
Thur No      0.072961  0.266312  0.160298  0.038774  112
     Yes     0.090014  0.241255  0.163863  0.039389   40
```

A DataFrame will have hierarchical columns only if multiple functions are applied to at least one column.

Returning Aggregated Data Without Row Indexes

In all of the examples up until now, the aggregated data comes back with an index, potentially hierarchical, composed from the unique group key combinations. Since this isn't always desirable, you can disable this behavior in most cases by passing `as_index=False` to `groupby`:

```
In [73]: tips.groupby(['day', 'smoker'], as_index=False).mean()
Out[73]:
    day smoker  total_bill       tip      size   tip_pct
0   Fri     No   18.420000  2.812500  2.250000  0.151650
1   Fri    Yes   16.813333  2.714000  2.066667  0.174783
2   Sat     No   19.661778  3.102889  2.555556  0.158048
3   Sat    Yes   21.276667  2.875476  2.476190  0.147906
4   Sun     No   20.506667  3.167895  2.929825  0.160113
5   Sun    Yes   24.120000  3.516842  2.578947  0.187250
6  Thur     No   17.113111  2.673778  2.488889  0.160298
7  Thur    Yes   19.190588  3.030000  2.352941  0.163863
```

Of course, it's always possible to obtain the result in this format by calling `reset_index` on the result. Using the `as_index=False` method avoids some unnecessary computations.

10.3 Apply: General split-apply-combine

The most general-purpose GroupBy method is `apply`, which is the subject of the rest of this section. As illustrated in Figure 10-2, `apply` splits the object being manipulated into pieces, invokes the passed function on each piece, and then attempts to concatenate the pieces together.

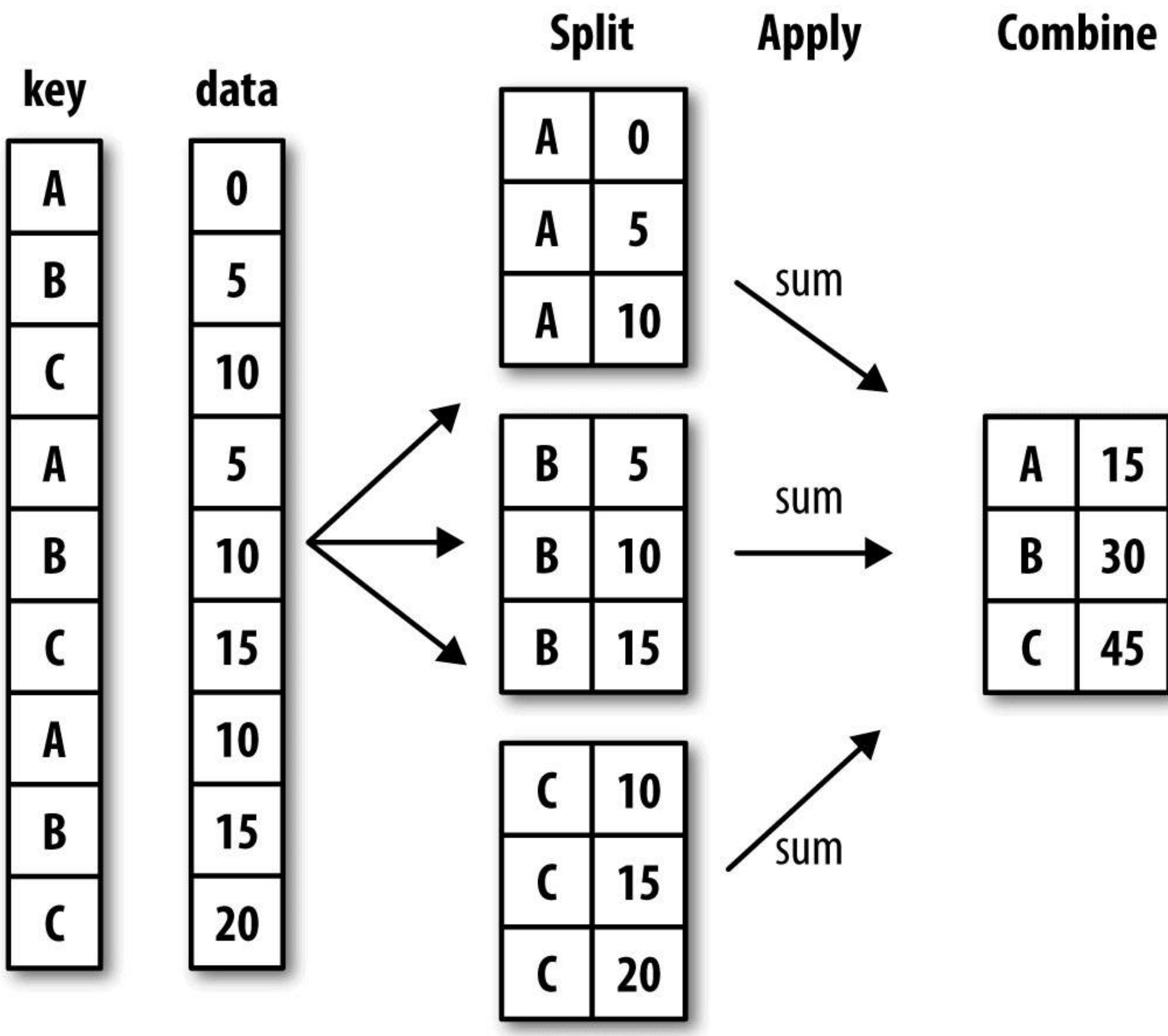


Figure 10-2. Illustration of a group aggregation

Returning to the tipping dataset from before, suppose you wanted to select the top five `tip_pct` values by group. First, write a function that selects the rows with the largest values in a particular column:

```
In [74]: def top(df, n=5, column='tip_pct'):
   ....:     return df.sort_values(by=column)[-n:]

In [75]: top(tips, n=6)
Out[75]:
     total_bill   tip smoker  day    time  size   tip_pct
109       14.31  4.00    Yes  Sat  Dinner     2  0.279525
183       23.17  6.50    Yes  Sun  Dinner     4  0.280535
232       11.61  3.39     No  Sat  Dinner     2  0.291990
67         3.07  1.00    Yes  Sat  Dinner     1  0.325733
```

```
178          9.60   4.00     Yes   Sun   Dinner     2   0.416667
172          7.25   5.15     Yes   Sun   Dinner     2   0.710345
```

Now, if we group by `smoker`, say, and call `apply` with this function, we get the following:

```
In [76]: tips.groupby('smoker').apply(top)
Out[76]:
            total_bill   tip smoker   day    time  size   tip_pct
smoker
No     88        24.71  5.85     No  Thur   Lunch     2  0.236746
       185       20.69  5.00     No   Sun  Dinner     5  0.241663
       51        10.29  2.60     No   Sun  Dinner     2  0.252672
       149        7.51  2.00     No  Thur   Lunch     2  0.266312
       232       11.61  3.39     No   Sat  Dinner     2  0.291990
Yes    109       14.31  4.00    Yes   Sat  Dinner     2  0.279525
       183       23.17  6.50    Yes   Sun  Dinner     4  0.280535
       67         3.07  1.00    Yes   Sat  Dinner     1  0.325733
       178        9.60  4.00    Yes   Sun  Dinner     2  0.416667
       172        7.25  5.15    Yes   Sun  Dinner     2  0.710345
```

What has happened here? The `top` function is called on each row group from the DataFrame, and then the results are glued together using `pandas.concat`, labeling the pieces with the group names. The result therefore has a hierarchical index whose inner level contains index values from the original DataFrame.

If you pass a function to `apply` that takes other arguments or keywords, you can pass these after the function:

```
In [77]: tips.groupby(['smoker', 'day']).apply(top, n=1, column='total_bill')
Out[77]:
                 total_bill    tip smoker   day    time  size   tip_pct
smoker day
No     Fri  94        22.75   3.25     No   Fri  Dinner     2  0.142857
       Sat  212       48.33   9.00     No   Sat  Dinner     4  0.186220
       Sun  156       48.17   5.00     No   Sun  Dinner     6  0.103799
       Thur 142       41.19   5.00     No  Thur   Lunch     5  0.121389
Yes    Fri  95        40.17   4.73    Yes   Fri  Dinner     4  0.117750
       Sat  170       50.81  10.00    Yes   Sat  Dinner     3  0.196812
       Sun  182       45.35   3.50    Yes   Sun  Dinner     3  0.077178
       Thur 197       43.11   5.00    Yes  Thur   Lunch     4  0.115982
```

NOTE

Beyond these basic usage mechanics, getting the most out of `apply` may require some creativity. What occurs inside the function passed is up to you; it only needs to return a pandas object or a scalar value. The rest of this chapter will mainly consist of examples showing you how to solve various problems using `groupby`.

You may recall that I earlier called `describe` on a GroupBy object:

```
In [78]: result = tips.groupby('smoker')['tip_pct'].describe()

In [79]: result
Out[79]:
        count      mean       std       min       25%       50%       75%  \
smoker
No      151.0  0.159328  0.039910  0.056797  0.136906  0.155625  0.185014
Yes      93.0  0.163196  0.085119  0.035638  0.106771  0.153846  0.195059
             max
smoker
No      0.291990
Yes     0.710345

In [80]: result.unstack('smoker')
Out[80]:
       smoker
count  No        151.000000
       Yes        93.000000
mean   No          0.159328
       Yes         0.163196
std    No          0.039910
       Yes         0.085119
min    No          0.056797
       Yes         0.035638
25%    No          0.136906
       Yes         0.106771
50%    No          0.155625
       Yes         0.153846
75%    No          0.185014
       Yes         0.195059
max    No          0.291990
       Yes         0.710345
dtype: float64
```

Inside GroupBy, when you invoke a method like `describe`, it is actually just a shortcut for:

```
f = lambda x: x.describe()
grouped.apply(f)
```

Suppressing the Group Keys

In the preceding examples, you see that the resulting object has a hierarchical index formed from the group keys along with the indexes of each piece of the original object. You can disable this by passing `group_keys=False` to `groupby`:

```
In [81]: tips.groupby('smoker', group_keys=False).apply(top)
Out[81]:
     total_bill   tip smoker   day    time  size   tip_pct
88        24.71  5.85     No  Thur   Lunch     2  0.236746
185       20.69  5.00     No   Sun  Dinner     5  0.241663
51        10.29  2.60     No   Sun  Dinner     2  0.252672
149        7.51  2.00     No  Thur   Lunch     2  0.266312
232       11.61  3.39     No   Sat  Dinner     2  0.291990
109       14.31  4.00    Yes   Sat  Dinner     2  0.279525
183       23.17  6.50    Yes   Sun  Dinner     4  0.280535
67         3.07  1.00    Yes   Sat  Dinner     1  0.325733
178        9.60  4.00    Yes   Sun  Dinner     2  0.416667
172        7.25  5.15    Yes   Sun  Dinner     2  0.710345
```

Quantile and Bucket Analysis

As you may recall from Chapter 8, pandas has some tools, in particular cut and qcut, for slicing data up into buckets with bins of your choosing or by sample quantiles. Combining these functions with groupby makes it convenient to perform bucket or quantile analysis on a dataset. Consider a simple random dataset and an equal-length bucket categorization using cut:

```
In [82]: frame = pd.DataFrame({'data1': np.random.randn(1000),
   ....:                       'data2': np.random.randn(1000)})

In [83]: quartiles = pd.cut(frame.data1, 4)

In [84]: quartiles[:10]
Out[84]:
0     (-1.23, 0.489]
1    (-2.956, -1.23]
2     (-1.23, 0.489]
3     (0.489, 2.208]
4     (-1.23, 0.489]
5     (0.489, 2.208]
6     (-1.23, 0.489]
7     (-1.23, 0.489]
8     (0.489, 2.208]
9     (0.489, 2.208]
Name: data1, dtype: category
Categories (4, interval[float64]): [(-2.956, -1.23] < (-1.23, 0.489] <
(0.489, 2.
208] < (2.208, 3.928]]
```

The Categorical object returned by cut can be passed directly to groupby. So we could compute a set of statistics for the data2 column like so:

```
In [85]: def get_stats(group):
   ....:     return {'min': group.min(), 'max': group.max(),
   ....:             'count': group.count(), 'mean': group.mean()}

In [86]: grouped = frame.data2.groupby(quartiles)

In [87]: grouped.apply(get_stats).unstack()
Out[87]:
                 count       max      mean       min
data1
(-2.956, -1.23]   95.0  1.670835 -0.039521 -3.399312
(-1.23, 0.489]   598.0  3.260383 -0.002051 -2.989741
(0.489, 2.208]   297.0  2.954439  0.081822 -3.745356
(2.208, 3.928]    10.0  1.765640  0.024750 -1.929776
```

These were equal-length buckets; to compute equal-size buckets based on sample quantiles, use `qcut`. I'll pass `labels=False` to just get quantile numbers:

```
# Return quantile numbers
In [88]: grouping = pd.qcut(frame.data1, 10, labels=False)

In [89]: grouped = frame.data2.groupby(grouping)

In [90]: grouped.apply(get_stats).unstack()
Out[90]:
       count       max      mean       min
data1
0      100.0  1.670835 -0.049902 -3.399312
1      100.0  2.628441  0.030989 -1.950098
2      100.0  2.527939 -0.067179 -2.925113
3      100.0  3.260383  0.065713 -2.315555
4      100.0  2.074345 -0.111653 -2.047939
5      100.0  2.184810  0.052130 -2.989741
6      100.0  2.458842 -0.021489 -2.223506
7      100.0  2.954439 -0.026459 -3.056990
8      100.0  2.735527  0.103406 -3.745356
9      100.0  2.377020  0.220122 -2.064111
```

We will take a closer look at pandas's `Categorical` type in Chapter 12.

Example: Filling Missing Values with Group-Specific Values

When cleaning up missing data, in some cases you will replace data observations using `dropna`, but in others you may want to impute (fill in) the null (NA) values using a fixed value or some value derived from the data. `fillna` is the right tool to use; for example, here I fill in NA values with the mean:

```
In [91]: s = pd.Series(np.random.randn(6))

In [92]: s[::2] = np.nan

In [93]: s
Out[93]:
0         NaN
1   -0.125921
2         NaN
3   -0.884475
4         NaN
5    0.227290
dtype: float64

In [94]: s.fillna(s.mean())
Out[94]:
0   -0.261035
1   -0.125921
2   -0.261035
3   -0.884475
4   -0.261035
5    0.227290
dtype: float64
```

Suppose you need the fill value to vary by group. One way to do this is to group the data and use `apply` with a function that calls `fillna` on each data chunk. Here is some sample data on US states divided into eastern and western regions:

```
In [95]: states = ['Ohio', 'New York', 'Vermont', 'Florida',
   ....:           'Oregon', 'Nevada', 'California', 'Idaho']

In [96]: group_key = ['East'] * 4 + ['West'] * 4

In [97]: data = pd.Series(np.random.randn(8), index=states)
```

```
In [98]: data
Out[98]:
Ohio          0.922264
New York     -2.153545
Vermont      -0.365757
Florida      -0.375842
Oregon        0.329939
Nevada        0.981994
California    1.105913
Idaho        -1.613716
dtype: float64
```

Note that the syntax `['East'] * 4` produces a list containing four copies of the elements in `['East']`. Adding lists together concatenates them.

Let's set some values in the data to be missing:

```
In [99]: data[['Vermont', 'Nevada', 'Idaho']] = np.nan

In [100]: data
Out[100]:
Ohio          0.922264
New York     -2.153545
Vermont            NaN
Florida      -0.375842
Oregon        0.329939
Nevada             NaN
California    1.105913
Idaho              NaN
dtype: float64

In [101]: data.groupby(group_key).mean()
Out[101]:
East   -0.535707
West    0.717926
dtype: float64
```

We can fill the NA values using the group means like so:

```
In [102]: fill_mean = lambda g: g.fillna(g.mean())

In [103]: data.groupby(group_key).apply(fill_mean)
Out[103]:
Ohio          0.922264
New York     -2.153545
Vermont      -0.535707
Florida      -0.375842
Oregon        0.329939
Nevada        0.717926
California    1.105913
Idaho         0.717926
dtype: float64
```

In another case, you might have predefined fill values in your code that vary by group. Since the groups have a `name` attribute set internally, we can use that:

```
In [104]: fill_values = {'East': 0.5, 'West': -1}

In [105]: fill_func = lambda g: g.fillna(fill_values[g.name])

In [106]: data.groupby(group_key).apply(fill_func)
Out[106]:
Ohio          0.922264
New York     -2.153545
Vermont       0.500000
Florida      -0.375842
Oregon        0.329939
Nevada       -1.000000
California    1.105913
Idaho        -1.000000
dtype: float64
```

Example: Random Sampling and Permutation

Suppose you wanted to draw a random sample (with or without replacement) from a large dataset for Monte Carlo simulation purposes or some other application. There are a number of ways to perform the “draws”; here we use the `sample` method for Series.

To demonstrate, here’s a way to construct a deck of English-style playing cards:

```
# Hearts, Spades, Clubs, Diamonds
suits = ['H', 'S', 'C', 'D']
card_val = (list(range(1, 11)) + [10] * 3) * 4
base_names = ['A'] + list(range(2, 11)) + ['J', 'K', 'Q']
cards = []
for suit in ['H', 'S', 'C', 'D']:
    cards.extend(str(num) + suit for num in base_names)

deck = pd.Series(card_val, index=cards)
```

So now we have a Series of length 52 whose index contains card names and values are the ones used in Blackjack and other games (to keep things simple, I just let the ace `'A'` be 1):

```
In [108]: deck[:13]
Out[108]:
AH      1
2H      2
3H      3
4H      4
5H      5
6H      6
7H      7
8H      8
9H      9
10H    10
JH     10
KH     10
QH     10
dtype: int64
```

Now, based on what I said before, drawing a hand of five cards from the deck could be written as:

```
In [109]: def draw(deck, n=5):
   .....:     return deck.sample(n)

In [110]: draw(deck)
Out[110]:
AD     1
8C     8
5H     5
KC    10
2C     2
dtype: int64
```

Suppose you wanted two random cards from each suit. Because the suit is the last character of each card name, we can group based on this and use `apply`:

```
In [111]: get_suit = lambda card: card[-1] # last letter is suit

In [112]: deck.groupby(get_suit).apply(draw, n=2)
Out[112]:
C  2C     2
   3C     3
D  KD    10
   8D     8
H  KH    10
   3H     3
S  2S     2
   4S     4
dtype: int64
```

Alternatively, we could write:

```
In [113]: deck.groupby(get_suit, group_keys=False).apply(draw, n=2)
Out[113]:
KC    10
JC    10
AD     1
5D     5
5H     5
6H     6
7S     7
KS    10
dtype: int64
```

Example: Group Weighted Average and Correlation

Under the split-apply-combine paradigm of `groupby`, operations between columns in a DataFrame or two Series, such as a group weighted average, are possible. As an example, take this dataset containing group keys, values, and some weights:

```
In [114]: df = pd.DataFrame({'category': ['a', 'a', 'a', 'a',
   .....:                                 'b', 'b', 'b', 'b'],
   .....:                    'data': np.random.randn(8),
   .....:                    'weights': np.random.rand(8)})

In [115]: df
Out[115]:
  category      data   weights
0        a  1.561587  0.957515
1        a  1.219984  0.347267
2        a -0.482239  0.581362
3        a  0.315667  0.217091
4        b -0.047852  0.894406
5        b -0.454145  0.918564
6        b -0.556774  0.277825
7        b  0.253321  0.955905
```

The group weighted average by `category` would then be:

```
In [116]: grouped = df.groupby('category')

In [117]: get_wavg = lambda g: np.average(g['data'], weights=g['weights'])

In [118]: grouped.apply(get_wavg)
Out[118]:
category
a    0.811643
b   -0.122262
dtype: float64
```

As another example, consider a financial dataset originally obtained from Yahoo! Finance containing end-of-day prices for a few stocks and the S&P 500 index (the `SPX` symbol):

```
In [119]: close_px = pd.read_csv('examples/stock_px_2.csv', parse_dates=True,
   .....:                        index_col=0)

In [120]: close_px.info()
```

```
<class 'pandas.core.frame.DataFrame'>
DatetimeIndex: 2214 entries, 2003-01-02 to 2011-10-14
Data columns (total 4 columns):
AAPL    2214 non-null float64
MSFT    2214 non-null float64
XOM     2214 non-null float64
SPX     2214 non-null float64
dtypes: float64(4)
memory usage: 86.5 KB

In [121]: close_px[-4:]
Out[121]:
              AAPL   MSFT    XOM      SPX
2011-10-11  400.29  27.00  76.27  1195.54
2011-10-12  402.19  26.96  77.16  1207.25
2011-10-13  408.43  27.18  76.37  1203.66
2011-10-14  422.00  27.27  78.11  1224.58
```

One task of interest might be to compute a DataFrame consisting of the yearly correlations of daily returns (computed from percent changes) with `SPX`. As one way to do this, we first create a function that computes the pairwise correlation of each column with the `'SPX'` column:

```
In [122]: spx_corr = lambda x: x.corrwith(x['SPX'])
```

Next, we compute percent change on `close_px` using `pct_change`:

```
In [123]: rets = close_px.pct_change().dropna()
```

Lastly, we group these percent changes by year, which can be extracted from each row label with a one-line function that returns the `year` attribute of each `datetime` label:

```
In [124]: get_year = lambda x: x.year

In [125]: by_year = rets.groupby(get_year)

In [126]: by_year.apply(spx_corr)
Out[126]:
          AAPL      MSFT       XOM  SPX
2003  0.541124  0.745174  0.661265  1.0
2004  0.374283  0.588531  0.557742  1.0
2005  0.467540  0.562374  0.631010  1.0
2006  0.428267  0.406126  0.518514  1.0
2007  0.508118  0.658770  0.786264  1.0
2008  0.681434  0.804626  0.828303  1.0
2009  0.707103  0.654902  0.797921  1.0
```

```
2010  0.710105  0.730118  0.839057  1.0
2011  0.691931  0.800996  0.859975  1.0
```

You could also compute inter-column correlations. Here we compute the annual correlation between Apple and Microsoft:

```
In [127]: by_year.apply(lambda g: g['AAPL'].corr(g['MSFT']))
Out[127]:
2003    0.480868
2004    0.259024
2005    0.300093
2006    0.161735
2007    0.417738
2008    0.611901
2009    0.432738
2010    0.571946
2011    0.581987
dtype: float64
```

Example: Group-Wise Linear Regression

In the same theme as the previous example, you can use `groupby` to perform more complex group-wise statistical analysis, as long as the function returns a pandas object or scalar value. For example, I can define the following `regress` function (using the `statsmodels` econometrics library), which executes an ordinary least squares (OLS) regression on each chunk of data:

```
import statsmodels.api as sm
def regress(data, yvar, xvars):
    Y = data[yvar]
    X = data[xvars]
    X['intercept'] = 1.
    result = sm.OLS(Y, X).fit()
    return result.params
```

Now, to run a yearly linear regression of `AAPL` on `SPX` returns, execute:

```
In [129]: by_year.apply(regress, 'AAPL', ['SPX'])
Out[129]:
           SPX  intercept
2003  1.195406   0.000710
2004  1.363463   0.004201
2005  1.766415   0.003246
2006  1.645496   0.000080
2007  1.198761   0.003438
2008  0.968016  -0.001110
2009  0.879103   0.002954
2010  1.052608   0.001261
2011  0.806605   0.001514
```

10.4 Pivot Tables and Cross-Tabulation

A *pivot table* is a data summarization tool frequently found in spreadsheet programs and other data analysis software. It aggregates a table of data by one or more keys, arranging the data in a rectangle with some of the group keys along the rows and some along the columns. Pivot tables in Python with pandas are made possible through the `groupby` facility described in this chapter combined with reshape operations utilizing hierarchical indexing. DataFrame has a `pivot_table` method, and there is also a top-level `pandas.pivot_table` function. In addition to providing a convenience interface to `groupby`, `pivot_table` can add partial totals, also known as *margins*.

Returning to the tipping dataset, suppose you wanted to compute a table of group means (the default `pivot_table` aggregation type) arranged by `day` and `smoker` on the rows:

```
In [130]: tips.pivot_table(index=['day', 'smoker'])
Out[130]:
                 size       tip   tip_pct  total_bill
day  smoker
Fri  No      2.250000  2.812500  0.151650   18.420000
     Yes     2.066667  2.714000  0.174783   16.813333
Sat  No      2.555556  3.102889  0.158048   19.661778
     Yes     2.476190  2.875476  0.147906   21.276667
Sun  No      2.929825  3.167895  0.160113   20.506667
     Yes     2.578947  3.516842  0.187250   24.120000
Thur No      2.488889  2.673778  0.160298   17.113111
     Yes     2.352941  3.030000  0.163863   19.190588
```

This could have been produced with `groupby` directly. Now, suppose we want to aggregate only `tip_pct` and `size`, and additionally group by `time`. I'll put `smoker` in the table columns and `day` in the rows:

```
In [131]: tips.pivot_table(['tip_pct', 'size'], index=['time', 'day'],
   .....:                  columns='smoker')
Out[131]:
                 size             tip_pct
smoker             No       Yes        No       Yes
time   day
```

```
Dinner Fri    2.000000  2.222222  0.139622  0.165347
       Sat    2.555556  2.476190  0.158048  0.147906
       Sun    2.929825  2.578947  0.160113  0.187250
       Thur   2.000000       NaN  0.159744       NaN
Lunch  Fri    3.000000  1.833333  0.187735  0.188937
       Thur   2.500000  2.352941  0.160311  0.163863
```

We could augment this table to include partial totals by passing `margins=True`. This has the effect of adding `All` row and column labels, with corresponding values being the group statistics for all the data within a single tier:

```
In [132]: tips.pivot_table(['tip_pct', 'size'], index=['time', 'day'],
   .....:                  columns='smoker', margins=True)
Out[132]:
                 size                          tip_pct
smoker             No       Yes       All        No       Yes       All
time   day
Dinner Fri    2.000000  2.222222  2.166667  0.139622  0.165347  0.158916
       Sat    2.555556  2.476190  2.517241  0.158048  0.147906  0.153152
       Sun    2.929825  2.578947  2.842105  0.160113  0.187250  0.166897
       Thur   2.000000       NaN  2.000000  0.159744       NaN  0.159744
Lunch  Fri    3.000000  1.833333  2.000000  0.187735  0.188937  0.188765
       Thur   2.500000  2.352941  2.459016  0.160311  0.163863  0.161301
All           2.668874  2.408602  2.569672  0.159328  0.163196  0.160803
```

Here, the `All` values are means without taking into account smoker versus non-smoker (the `All` columns) or any of the two levels of grouping on the rows (the `All` row).

To use a different aggregation function, pass it to `aggfunc`. For example, `'count'` or `len` will give you a cross-tabulation (count or frequency) of group sizes:

```
In [133]: tips.pivot_table('tip_pct', index=['time', 'smoker'],
columns='day',
   .....:                  aggfunc=len, margins=True)
Out[133]:
day             Fri   Sat   Sun  Thur    All
time   smoker
Dinner No       3.0  45.0  57.0   1.0  106.0
       Yes      9.0  42.0  19.0   NaN   70.0
Lunch  No       1.0   NaN   NaN  44.0   45.0
       Yes      6.0   NaN   NaN  17.0   23.0
All            19.0  87.0  76.0  62.0  244.0
```

If some combinations are empty (or otherwise NA), you may wish to pass a `fill_value`:

```
In [134]: tips.pivot_table('tip_pct', index=['time', 'size', 'smoker'],
   .....:                  columns='day', aggfunc='mean', fill_value=0)
Out[134]:
day                      Fri       Sat       Sun      Thur
time   size smoker
Dinner 1    No      0.000000  0.137931  0.000000  0.000000
            Yes     0.000000  0.325733  0.000000  0.000000
       2    No      0.139622  0.162705  0.168859  0.159744
            Yes     0.171297  0.148668  0.207893  0.000000
       3    No      0.000000  0.154661  0.152663  0.000000
            Yes     0.000000  0.144995  0.152660  0.000000
       4    No      0.000000  0.150096  0.148143  0.000000
            Yes     0.117750  0.124515  0.193370  0.000000
       5    No      0.000000  0.000000  0.206928  0.000000
            Yes     0.000000  0.106572  0.065660  0.000000
...                      ...       ...       ...       ...
Lunch  1    No      0.000000  0.000000  0.000000  0.181728
            Yes     0.223776  0.000000  0.000000  0.000000
       2    No      0.000000  0.000000  0.000000  0.166005
            Yes     0.181969  0.000000  0.000000  0.158843
       3    No      0.187735  0.000000  0.000000  0.084246
            Yes     0.000000  0.000000  0.000000  0.204952
       4    No      0.000000  0.000000  0.000000  0.138919
            Yes     0.000000  0.000000  0.000000  0.155410
       5    No      0.000000  0.000000  0.000000  0.121389
       6    No      0.000000  0.000000  0.000000  0.173706
[21 rows x 4 columns]
```

See Table 10-2 for a summary of `pivot_table` methods.

Table 10-2. pivot_table options

Function name	Description
`values`	Column name or names to aggregate; by default aggregates all numeric columns
`index`	Column names or other group keys to group on the rows of the resulting pivot table
`columns`	Column names or other group keys to group on the columns of the resulting pivot table
`aggfunc`	Aggregation function or list of functions (`'mean'` by default); can be any function valid in a groupby context
`fill_value`	Replace missing values in result table

`dropna`	If `True`, do not include columns whose entries are all `NA`
`margins`	Add row/column subtotals and grand total (`False` by default)

Cross-Tabulations: Crosstab

A cross-tabulation (or *crosstab* for short) is a special case of a pivot table that computes group frequencies. Here is an example:

```
In [138]: data
Out[138]:
   Sample Nationality    Handedness
0       1         USA  Right-handed
1       2       Japan   Left-handed
2       3         USA  Right-handed
3       4       Japan  Right-handed
4       5       Japan   Left-handed
5       6       Japan  Right-handed
6       7         USA  Right-handed
7       8         USA   Left-handed
8       9       Japan  Right-handed
9      10         USA  Right-handed
```

As part of some survey analysis, we might want to summarize this data by nationality and handedness. You could use `pivot_table` to do this, but the `pandas.crosstab` function can be more convenient:

```
In [139]: pd.crosstab(data.Nationality, data.Handedness, margins=True)
Out[139]:
Handedness   Left-handed  Right-handed  All
Nationality
Japan                  2             3    5
USA                    1             4    5
All                    3             7   10
```

The first two arguments to `crosstab` can each either be an array or Series or a list of arrays. As in the tips data:

```
In [140]: pd.crosstab([tips.time, tips.day], tips.smoker, margins=True)
Out[140]:
smoker        No  Yes  All
time   day
Dinner Fri     3    9   12
       Sat    45   42   87
       Sun    57   19   76
       Thur    1    0    1
Lunch  Fri     1    6    7
       Thur   44   17   61
All          151   93  244
```

10.5 Conclusion

Mastering pandas's data grouping tools can help both with data cleaning as well as modeling or statistical analysis work. In Chapter 14 we will look at several more example use cases for `groupby` on real data.

In the next chapter, we turn our attention to time series data.

Chapter 11. Time Series

Time series data is an important form of structured data in many different fields, such as finance, economics, ecology, neuroscience, and physics. Anything that is observed or measured at many points in time forms a time series. Many time series are *fixed frequency*, which is to say that data points occur at regular intervals according to some rule, such as every 15 seconds, every 5 minutes, or once per month. Time series can also be *irregular* without a fixed unit of time or offset between units. How you mark and refer to time series data depends on the application, and you may have one of the following:

- *Timestamps*, specific instants in time
- Fixed *periods*, such as the month January 2007 or the full year 2010
- *Intervals* of time, indicated by a start and end timestamp. Periods can be thought of as special cases of intervals
- Experiment or elapsed time; each timestamp is a measure of time relative to a particular start time (e.g., the diameter of a cookie baking each second since being placed in the oven)

In this chapter, I am mainly concerned with time series in the first three categories, though many of the techniques can be applied to experimental time series where the index may be an integer or floating-point number indicating elapsed time from the start of the experiment. The simplest and most widely used kind of time series are those indexed by timestamp.

TIP

pandas also supports indexes based on timedeltas, which can be a useful way of representing experiment or elapsed time. We do not explore timedelta indexes in this book, but you can learn more in the pandas documentation.

pandas provides many built-in time series tools and data algorithms. You can efficiently work with very large time series and easily slice and dice, aggregate, and resample irregular- and fixed-frequency time series. Some of these tools are especially useful for financial and economics applications, but you could certainly use them to analyze server log data, too.

11.1 Date and Time Data Types and Tools

The Python standard library includes data types for date and time data, as well as calendar-related functionality. The `datetime`, `time`, and `calendar` modules are the main places to start. The `datetime.datetime` type, or simply `datetime`, is widely used:

```
In [10]: from datetime import datetime

In [11]: now = datetime.now()

In [12]: now
Out[12]: datetime.datetime(2017, 9, 25, 14, 5, 52, 72973)

In [13]: now.year, now.month, now.day
Out[13]: (2017, 9, 25)
```

`datetime` stores both the date and time down to the microsecond. `timedelta` represents the temporal difference between two `datetime` objects:

```
In [14]: delta = datetime(2011, 1, 7) - datetime(2008, 6, 24, 8, 15)

In [15]: delta
Out[15]: datetime.timedelta(926, 56700)

In [16]: delta.days
Out[16]: 926

In [17]: delta.seconds
Out[17]: 56700
```

You can add (or subtract) a `timedelta` or multiple thereof to a `datetime` object to yield a new shifted object:

```
In [18]: from datetime import timedelta

In [19]: start = datetime(2011, 1, 7)

In [20]: start + timedelta(12)
Out[20]: datetime.datetime(2011, 1, 19, 0, 0)

In [21]: start - 2 * timedelta(12)
Out[21]: datetime.datetime(2010, 12, 14, 0, 0)
```

Table 11-1 summarizes the data types in the `datetime` module. While this chapter is mainly concerned with the data types in pandas and higher-level time series manipulation, you may encounter the `datetime`-based types in many other places in Python in the wild.

Table 11-1. Types in datetime module

Type	Description
`date`	Store calendar date (year, month, day) using the Gregorian calendar
`time`	Store time of day as hours, minutes, seconds, and microseconds
`datetime`	Stores both date and time
`timedelta`	Represents the difference between two `datetime` values (as days, seconds, and microseconds)
`tzinfo`	Base type for storing time zone information

Converting Between String and Datetime

You can format datetime objects and pandas Timestamp objects, which I'll introduce later, as strings using str or the strftime method, passing a format specification:

```
In [22]: stamp = datetime(2011, 1, 3)

In [23]: str(stamp)
Out[23]: '2011-01-03 00:00:00'

In [24]: stamp.strftime('%Y-%m-%d')
Out[24]: '2011-01-03'
```

See Table 11-2 for a complete list of the format codes (reproduced from Chapter 2).

Table 11-2. Datetime format specification (ISO C89 compatible)

Type	Description
%Y	Four-digit year
%y	Two-digit year
%m	Two-digit month [01, 12]
%d	Two-digit day [01, 31]
%H	Hour (24-hour clock) [00, 23]
%I	Hour (12-hour clock) [01, 12]
%M	Two-digit minute [00, 59]
%S	Second [00, 61] (seconds 60, 61 account for leap seconds)
%w	Weekday as integer [0 (Sunday), 6]
%U	Week number of the year [00, 53]; Sunday is considered the first day of the week, and days before the first Sunday of the year are "week 0"
%W	Week number of the year [00, 53]; Monday is considered the first day of the week, and days before the first Monday of the year are "week 0"
%z	UTC time zone offset as +HHMM or -HHMM; empty if time zone naive
%F	Shortcut for %Y-%m-%d (e.g., 2012-4-18)

`%D`	Shortcut for `%m/%d/%y` (e.g., `04/18/12`)

You can use these same format codes to convert strings to dates using `datetime.strptime`:

```
In [25]: value = '2011-01-03'

In [26]: datetime.strptime(value, '%Y-%m-%d')
Out[26]: datetime.datetime(2011, 1, 3, 0, 0)

In [27]: datestrs = ['7/6/2011', '8/6/2011']

In [28]: [datetime.strptime(x, '%m/%d/%Y') for x in datestrs]
Out[28]:
[datetime.datetime(2011, 7, 6, 0, 0),
 datetime.datetime(2011, 8, 6, 0, 0)]
```

`datetime.strptime` is a good way to parse a date with a known format. However, it can be a bit annoying to have to write a format spec each time, especially for common date formats. In this case, you can use the `parser.parse` method in the third-party `dateutil` package (this is installed automatically when you install pandas):

```
In [29]: from dateutil.parser import parse

In [30]: parse('2011-01-03')
Out[30]: datetime.datetime(2011, 1, 3, 0, 0)
```

`dateutil` is capable of parsing most human-intelligible date representations:

```
In [31]: parse('Jan 31, 1997 10:45 PM')
Out[31]: datetime.datetime(1997, 1, 31, 22, 45)
```

In international locales, day appearing before month is very common, so you can pass `dayfirst=True` to indicate this:

```
In [32]: parse('6/12/2011', dayfirst=True)
Out[32]: datetime.datetime(2011, 12, 6, 0, 0)
```

pandas is generally oriented toward working with arrays of dates, whether used as an axis index or a column in a DataFrame. The `to_datetime` method parses many different kinds of date representations. Standard date formats like ISO 8601 can be parsed very quickly:

```
In [33]: datestrs = ['2011-07-06 12:00:00', '2011-08-06 00:00:00']

In [34]: pd.to_datetime(datestrs)
Out[34]: DatetimeIndex(['2011-07-06 12:00:00', '2011-08-06 00:00:00'],
dtype='dat
etime64[ns]', freq=None)
```

It also handles values that should be considered missing (`None`, empty string, etc.):

```
In [35]: idx = pd.to_datetime(datestrs + [None])

In [36]: idx
Out[36]: DatetimeIndex(['2011-07-06 12:00:00', '2011-08-06 00:00:00', 'NaT'],
dty
pe='datetime64[ns]', freq=None)

In [37]: idx[2]
Out[37]: NaT

In [38]: pd.isnull(idx)
Out[38]: array([False, False,  True], dtype=bool)
```

`NaT` (Not a Time) is pandas's null value for timestamp data.

> **CAUTION**
>
> `dateutil.parser` is a useful but imperfect tool. Notably, it will recognize some strings as dates that you might prefer that it didn't — for example, `'42'` will be parsed as the year `2042` with today's calendar date.

`datetime` objects also have a number of locale-specific formatting options for systems in other countries or languages. For example, the abbreviated month names will be different on German or French systems compared with English systems. See Table 11-3 for a listing.

Table 11-3. Locale-specific date formatting

Type	Description
`%a`	Abbreviated weekday name
`%A`	Full weekday name
`%b`	Abbreviated month name
`%B`	Full month name
`%c`	Full date and time (e.g., ‘Tue 01 May 2012 04:20:57 PM’)
`%p`	Locale equivalent of AM or PM
`%x`	Locale-appropriate formatted date (e.g., in the United States, May 1, 2012 yields ’05/01/2012’)
`%X`	Locale-appropriate time (e.g., ’04:24:12 PM’)

11.2 Time Series Basics

A basic kind of time series object in pandas is a Series indexed by timestamps, which is often represented external to pandas as Python strings or `datetime` objects:

```
In [39]: from datetime import datetime

In [40]: dates = [datetime(2011, 1, 2), datetime(2011, 1, 5),
   ....:          datetime(2011, 1, 7), datetime(2011, 1, 8),
   ....:          datetime(2011, 1, 10), datetime(2011, 1, 12)]

In [41]: ts = pd.Series(np.random.randn(6), index=dates)

In [42]: ts
Out[42]:
2011-01-02   -0.204708
2011-01-05    0.478943
2011-01-07   -0.519439
2011-01-08   -0.555730
2011-01-10    1.965781
2011-01-12    1.393406
dtype: float64
```

Under the hood, these `datetime` objects have been put in a `DatetimeIndex`:

```
In [43]: ts.index
Out[43]:
DatetimeIndex(['2011-01-02', '2011-01-05', '2011-01-07', '2011-01-08',
               '2011-01-10', '2011-01-12'],
              dtype='datetime64[ns]', freq=None)
```

Like other Series, arithmetic operations between differently indexed time series automatically align on the dates:

```
In [44]: ts + ts[::2]
Out[44]:
2011-01-02   -0.409415
2011-01-05         NaN
2011-01-07   -1.038877
2011-01-08         NaN
2011-01-10    3.931561
2011-01-12         NaN
dtype: float64
```

Recall that `ts[::2]` selects every second element in `ts`.

pandas stores timestamps using NumPy's `datetime64` data type at the nanosecond resolution:

```
In [45]: ts.index.dtype
Out[45]: dtype('<M8[ns]')
```

Scalar values from a `DatetimeIndex` are pandas `Timestamp` objects:

```
In [46]: stamp = ts.index[0]

In [47]: stamp
Out[47]: Timestamp('2011-01-02 00:00:00')
```

A `Timestamp` can be substituted anywhere you would use a `datetime` object. Additionally, it can store frequency information (if any) and understands how to do time zone conversions and other kinds of manipulations. More on both of these things later.

Indexing, Selection, Subsetting

Time series behaves like any other `pandas.Series` when you are indexing and selecting data based on label:

```
In [48]: stamp = ts.index[2]

In [49]: ts[stamp]
Out[49]: -0.51943871505673811
```

As a convenience, you can also pass a string that is interpretable as a date:

```
In [50]: ts['1/10/2011']
Out[50]: 1.9657805725027142

In [51]: ts['20110110']
Out[51]: 1.9657805725027142
```

For longer time series, a year or only a year and month can be passed to easily select slices of data:

```
In [52]: longer_ts = pd.Series(np.random.randn(1000),
   ....:                       index=pd.date_range('1/1/2000', periods=1000))

In [53]: longer_ts
Out[53]:
2000-01-01    0.092908
2000-01-02    0.281746
2000-01-03    0.769023
2000-01-04    1.246435
2000-01-05    1.007189
2000-01-06   -1.296221
2000-01-07    0.274992
2000-01-08    0.228913
2000-01-09    1.352917
2000-01-10    0.886429
                ...
2002-09-17   -0.139298
2002-09-18   -1.159926
2002-09-19    0.618965
2002-09-20    1.373890
2002-09-21   -0.983505
2002-09-22    0.930944
2002-09-23   -0.811676
2002-09-24   -1.830156
2002-09-25   -0.138730
2002-09-26    0.334088
Freq: D, Length: 1000, dtype: float64
```

```
In [54]: longer_ts['2001']
Out[54]:
2001-01-01    1.599534
2001-01-02    0.474071
2001-01-03    0.151326
2001-01-04   -0.542173
2001-01-05   -0.475496
2001-01-06    0.106403
2001-01-07   -1.308228
2001-01-08    2.173185
2001-01-09    0.564561
2001-01-10   -0.190481
                 ...
2001-12-22    0.000369
2001-12-23    0.900885
2001-12-24   -0.454869
2001-12-25   -0.864547
2001-12-26    1.129120
2001-12-27    0.057874
2001-12-28   -0.433739
2001-12-29    0.092698
2001-12-30   -1.397820
2001-12-31    1.457823
Freq: D, Length: 365, dtype: float64
```

Here, the string `'2001'` is interpreted as a year and selects that time period. This also works if you specify the month:

```
In [55]: longer_ts['2001-05']
Out[55]:
2001-05-01   -0.622547
2001-05-02    0.936289
2001-05-03    0.750018
2001-05-04   -0.056715
2001-05-05    2.300675
2001-05-06    0.569497
2001-05-07    1.489410
2001-05-08    1.264250
2001-05-09   -0.761837
2001-05-10   -0.331617
                 ...
2001-05-22    0.503699
2001-05-23   -1.387874
2001-05-24    0.204851
2001-05-25    0.603705
2001-05-26    0.545680
2001-05-27    0.235477
2001-05-28    0.111835
2001-05-29   -1.251504
2001-05-30   -2.949343
2001-05-31    0.634634
Freq: D, Length: 31, dtype: float64
```

Slicing with `datetime` objects works as well:

```
In [56]: ts[datetime(2011, 1, 7):]
Out[56]:
2011-01-07   -0.519439
2011-01-08   -0.555730
2011-01-10    1.965781
2011-01-12    1.393406
dtype: float64
```

Because most time series data is ordered chronologically, you can slice with timestamps not contained in a time series to perform a range query:

```
In [57]: ts
Out[57]:
2011-01-02   -0.204708
2011-01-05    0.478943
2011-01-07   -0.519439
2011-01-08   -0.555730
2011-01-10    1.965781
2011-01-12    1.393406
dtype: float64

In [58]: ts['1/6/2011':'1/11/2011']
Out[58]:
2011-01-07   -0.519439
2011-01-08   -0.555730
2011-01-10    1.965781
dtype: float64
```

As before, you can pass either a string date, `datetime`, or timestamp. Remember that slicing in this manner produces views on the source time series like slicing NumPy arrays. This means that no data is copied and modifications on the slice will be reflected in the original data.

There is an equivalent instance method, `truncate`, that slices a Series between two dates:

```
In [59]: ts.truncate(after='1/9/2011')
Out[59]:
2011-01-02   -0.204708
2011-01-05    0.478943
2011-01-07   -0.519439
2011-01-08   -0.555730
dtype: float64
```

All of this holds true for DataFrame as well, indexing on its rows:

```
In [60]: dates = pd.date_range('1/1/2000', periods=100, freq='W-WED')

In [61]: long_df = pd.DataFrame(np.random.randn(100, 4),
   ....:                         index=dates,
   ....:                         columns=['Colorado', 'Texas',
   ....:                                  'New York', 'Ohio'])

In [62]: long_df.loc['5-2001']
Out[62]:
            Colorado     Texas  New York      Ohio
2001-05-02 -0.006045  0.490094 -0.277186 -0.707213
2001-05-09 -0.560107  2.735527  0.927335  1.513906
2001-05-16  0.538600  1.273768  0.667876 -0.969206
2001-05-23  1.676091 -0.817649  0.050188  1.951312
2001-05-30  3.260383  0.963301  1.201206 -1.852001
```

Time Series with Duplicate Indices

In some applications, there may be multiple data observations falling on a particular timestamp. Here is an example:

```
In [63]: dates = pd.DatetimeIndex(['1/1/2000', '1/2/2000', '1/2/2000',
   ....:                           '1/2/2000', '1/3/2000'])

In [64]: dup_ts = pd.Series(np.arange(5), index=dates)

In [65]: dup_ts
Out[65]:
2000-01-01    0
2000-01-02    1
2000-01-02    2
2000-01-02    3
2000-01-03    4
dtype: int64
```

We can tell that the index is not unique by checking its `is_unique` property:

```
In [66]: dup_ts.index.is_unique
Out[66]: False
```

Indexing into this time series will now either produce scalar values or slices depending on whether a timestamp is duplicated:

```
In [67]: dup_ts['1/3/2000']  # not duplicated
Out[67]: 4

In [68]: dup_ts['1/2/2000']  # duplicated
Out[68]:
2000-01-02    1
2000-01-02    2
2000-01-02    3
dtype: int64
```

Suppose you wanted to aggregate the data having non-unique timestamps. One way to do this is to use `groupby` and pass `level=0`:

```
In [69]: grouped = dup_ts.groupby(level=0)

In [70]: grouped.mean()
Out[70]:
2000-01-01    0
```

```
2000-01-02    2
2000-01-03    4
dtype: int64

In [71]: grouped.count()
Out[71]:
2000-01-01    1
2000-01-02    3
2000-01-03    1
dtype: int64
```

11.3 Date Ranges, Frequencies, and Shifting

Generic time series in pandas are assumed to be irregular; that is, they have no fixed frequency. For many applications this is sufficient. However, it's often desirable to work relative to a fixed frequency, such as daily, monthly, or every 15 minutes, even if that means introducing missing values into a time series. Fortunately pandas has a full suite of standard time series frequencies and tools for resampling, inferring frequencies, and generating fixed-frequency date ranges. For example, you can convert the sample time series to be fixed daily frequency by calling `resample`:

```
In [72]: ts
Out[72]:
2011-01-02   -0.204708
2011-01-05    0.478943
2011-01-07   -0.519439
2011-01-08   -0.555730
2011-01-10    1.965781
2011-01-12    1.393406
dtype: float64

In [73]: resampler = ts.resample('D')
```

The string `'D'` is interpreted as daily frequency.

Conversion between frequencies or *resampling* is a big enough topic to have its own section later (Section 11.6, "Resampling and Frequency Conversion,"). Here I'll show you how to use the base frequencies and multiples thereof.

Generating Date Ranges

While I used it previously without explanation, `pandas.date_range` is responsible for generating a `DatetimeIndex` with an indicated length according to a particular frequency:

```
In [74]: index = pd.date_range('2012-04-01', '2012-06-01')

In [75]: index
Out[75]:
DatetimeIndex(['2012-04-01', '2012-04-02', '2012-04-03', '2012-04-04',
               '2012-04-05', '2012-04-06', '2012-04-07', '2012-04-08',
               '2012-04-09', '2012-04-10', '2012-04-11', '2012-04-12',
               '2012-04-13', '2012-04-14', '2012-04-15', '2012-04-16',
               '2012-04-17', '2012-04-18', '2012-04-19', '2012-04-20',
               '2012-04-21', '2012-04-22', '2012-04-23', '2012-04-24',
               '2012-04-25', '2012-04-26', '2012-04-27', '2012-04-28',
               '2012-04-29', '2012-04-30', '2012-05-01', '2012-05-02',
               '2012-05-03', '2012-05-04', '2012-05-05', '2012-05-06',
               '2012-05-07', '2012-05-08', '2012-05-09', '2012-05-10',
               '2012-05-11', '2012-05-12', '2012-05-13', '2012-05-14',
               '2012-05-15', '2012-05-16', '2012-05-17', '2012-05-18',
               '2012-05-19', '2012-05-20', '2012-05-21', '2012-05-22',
               '2012-05-23', '2012-05-24', '2012-05-25', '2012-05-26',
               '2012-05-27', '2012-05-28', '2012-05-29', '2012-05-30',
               '2012-05-31', '2012-06-01'],
              dtype='datetime64[ns]', freq='D')
```

By default, `date_range` generates daily timestamps. If you pass only a start or end date, you must pass a number of periods to generate:

```
In [76]: pd.date_range(start='2012-04-01', periods=20)
Out[76]:
DatetimeIndex(['2012-04-01', '2012-04-02', '2012-04-03', '2012-04-04',
               '2012-04-05', '2012-04-06', '2012-04-07', '2012-04-08',
               '2012-04-09', '2012-04-10', '2012-04-11', '2012-04-12',
               '2012-04-13', '2012-04-14', '2012-04-15', '2012-04-16',
               '2012-04-17', '2012-04-18', '2012-04-19', '2012-04-20'],
              dtype='datetime64[ns]', freq='D')

In [77]: pd.date_range(end='2012-06-01', periods=20)
Out[77]:
DatetimeIndex(['2012-05-13', '2012-05-14', '2012-05-15', '2012-05-16',
               '2012-05-17', '2012-05-18', '2012-05-19', '2012-05-20',
               '2012-05-21', '2012-05-22', '2012-05-23', '2012-05-24',
               '2012-05-25', '2012-05-26', '2012-05-27', '2012-05-28',
               '2012-05-29', '2012-05-30', '2012-05-31', '2012-06-01'],
              dtype='datetime64[ns]', freq='D')
```

The start and end dates define strict boundaries for the generated date index. For example, if you wanted a date index containing the last business day of each month, you would pass the `'BM'` frequency (business end of month; see more complete listing of frequencies in Table 11-4) and only dates falling on or inside the date interval will be included:

```
In [78]: pd.date_range('2000-01-01', '2000-12-01', freq='BM')
Out[78]:
DatetimeIndex(['2000-01-31', '2000-02-29', '2000-03-31', '2000-04-28',
               '2000-05-31', '2000-06-30', '2000-07-31', '2000-08-31',
               '2000-09-29', '2000-10-31', '2000-11-30'],
              dtype='datetime64[ns]', freq='BM')
```

Table 11-4. Base time series frequencies (not comprehensive)

Alias	Offset type	Description
`D`	`Day`	Calendar daily
`B`	`BusinessDay`	Business daily
`H`	`Hour`	Hourly
`T` or `min`	`Minute`	Minutely
`S`	`Second`	Secondly
`L` or `ms`	`Milli`	Millisecond (1/1,000 of 1 second)
`U`	`Micro`	Microsecond (1/1,000,000 of 1 second)
`M`	`MonthEnd`	Last calendar day of month
`BM`	`BusinessMonthEnd`	Last business day (weekday) of month
`MS`	`MonthBegin`	First calendar day of month
`BMS`	`BusinessMonthBegin`	First weekday of month
`W-MON, W-TUE, ...`	`Week`	Weekly on given day of week (MON, TUE, WED, THU, FRI, SAT, or SUN)
`WOM-1MON, WOM-2MON, ...`	`WeekOfMonth`	Generate weekly dates in the first, second, third, or fourth week of the month (e.g., `WOM-3FRI` for the third Friday of each month)
`Q-JAN, Q-FEB, ...`	`QuarterEnd`	Quarterly dates anchored on last calendar day of each month, for year ending in indicated month (JAN, FEB, MAR, APR, MAY, JUN, JUL, AUG, SEP, OCT, NOV,

		or DEC)
BQ-JAN, BQ-FEB, ...	BusinessQuarterEnd	Quarterly dates anchored on last weekday day of each month, for year ending in indicated month
QS-JAN, QS-FEB, ...	QuarterBegin	Quarterly dates anchored on first calendar day of each month, for year ending in indicated month
BQS-JAN, BQS-FEB, ...	BusinessQuarterBegin	Quarterly dates anchored on first weekday day of each month, for year ending in indicated month
A-JAN, A-FEB, ...	YearEnd	Annual dates anchored on last calendar day of given month (JAN, FEB, MAR, APR, MAY, JUN, JUL, AUG, SEP, OCT, NOV, or DEC)
BA-JAN, BA-FEB, ...	BusinessYearEnd	Annual dates anchored on last weekday of given month
AS-JAN, AS-FEB, ...	YearBegin	Annual dates anchored on first day of given month
BAS-JAN, BAS-FEB, ...	BusinessYearBegin	Annual dates anchored on first weekday of given month

`date_range` by default preserves the time (if any) of the start or end timestamp:

```
In [79]: pd.date_range('2012-05-02 12:56:31', periods=5)
Out[79]:
DatetimeIndex(['2012-05-02 12:56:31', '2012-05-03 12:56:31',
               '2012-05-04 12:56:31', '2012-05-05 12:56:31',
               '2012-05-06 12:56:31'],
              dtype='datetime64[ns]', freq='D')
```

Sometimes you will have start or end dates with time information but want to generate a set of timestamps *normalized* to midnight as a convention. To do this, there is a `normalize` option:

```
In [80]: pd.date_range('2012-05-02 12:56:31', periods=5, normalize=True)
Out[80]:
DatetimeIndex(['2012-05-02', '2012-05-03', '2012-05-04', '2012-05-05',
               '2012-05-06'],
              dtype='datetime64[ns]', freq='D')
```